This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

WW2
Cookbook

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Cooper
VWZY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A

CONCISE SYSTEM

OF

INSTRUCTIONS AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

Militia and Volunteers of the United States,

COMPREHENDING

THE EXERCISES AND MOVEMENTS OF THE INFANTRY, LIGHT INFANTRY, AND RIFLEMEN; CAVALRY AND ARTILLERY;

TOGETHER WITH THE

MANNER OF DOING DUTY IN GARRISON AND IN CAMP,

AND THE FORMS OF

PARADES, REVIEWS, INSPECTIONS, ARRESTS AND CONFINEMENTS, COURTS MARTIAL, DUTIES OF QUARTERMASTERS AND OF COMMISSARIES OF SUBSISTENCE, MORNING REPORT, MUSTER ROLL, PAY ROLL REQUISITION FOR ORDNANCE AND ORDNANCE STORES, PROVISION RETURN, ESTIMATE OF CLOTHING,

AS ESTABLISHED BY AUTHORITY FOR THE GOVERNMENT OF THE REGULAR ARMY.

PREPARED AND ARRANGED BY

ADJUTANT-GENERAL SAMUEL COOPER,

United States Army.

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

MAJOR-GENERAL ALEXANDER MACOMB,

Commanding the Army of the United States.

NEW EDITION,

WITH ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS.

PHILADELPHIA:

CHARLES DESILVER,

1229 CHESTNUT STREET.

BALTIMORE: CUSHINGS & BAILEY.

1861.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
561281
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
R L

Entered according to the act of Congress, in the year 1843, by Major S. Cooper, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

In this country, the Militia, from the nature of the government, must be depended on principally for repelling sudden invasions, and suppressing domestic insurrections. it ought, therefore, to be properly organized and instructed in order to be effectual for those purposes. The great difficulty in the way of its becoming properly instructed, has thus far been the want of a simple and uniform system of instruction—one easily to be comprehended and readily applied. The books published for the regular army are too voluminous and diffuse to supply this want; and the various works compiled as a substitute, are all more or less objectionable.

The present volume is intended to remove the difficulty as far as practicable. It embraces the substance of all our systems of tactics, whether for the Infantry of the Line, the Light Infantry, the Riflemen, the Artil-

y, or the Cavalry, together with such parts of the regulations relative to camp and garrison duties, parades, reviews, and inspections, as may be necessary to the Militia.

As the same general principles regulate the tactics applicable to the different arms of service, those for the Infantry which constitute the main body of an army, are alone laid down at large.

Artillery and Cavalry should be instructed as Infan-

Digitized by Google

try, in order to act, when separated from their guns and horses.

The Artillery instruction in this work, embraces the service of the piece, and the manœuvres in the field and in the batteries; that for the Cavalry, from "*the mounting horse*" to the manœuvres in squadron.

The words of command given by the instructor who represents the commanding officer, are printed in capitals; those of the subordinate officers in italics.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF PART FIRST

OF THE SQUAD.

Page

Position of the soldier 9
Facings 9
The direct step 10
The oblique step 10
Manual of arms 10
Firings 21
The direct fire 21
The oblique fire 21
The fire by file 22
Alignments 23
To march to the front 23
The quick step 24
To march the back step 24
To march by the flank 24
To halt and face to the front 25
Marching by a flank, to change direction 25
Marching by the front, to march by a flank 25
Wheelings 25
Turning 27
To stack arms 27
To resume arms 28

OF THE COMPANY.

Formation of the company 33
To pass from two ranks into one rank 34
Posts of officers and others in column 35
To open ranks 36
Alignments in open ranks 36
To close ranks 37
To fire by company 37
To fire by file 37
To fire by the rear-rank 38
To advance in line 38
To halt and align the company 39
The oblique march in line 39
To retire in line 39
To halt and face to the front 40
To march by the flank 40
To change direction by file 40
To halt and face to the front 40
To form by file on right or left 41
To form by company or by platoon into line 41
Marching by the front, to march by the flank 42
Marching in column by platoons, to march by a flank in the same direction 42
To break from line into column by platoon 42
To march in column 43
To change direction 43
To halt the column and wheel it into line 44
To diminish and increase front of column in marching 44
To diminish and increase front of column by files 45
To march in column of route 46
Countermarch 47
Marching in column by platoons, to form on right or left into line 48
Manual of arms for sergeants and corporals 49
Manual of the sword for officers 52
Colour-salute 53
Instructions for the drum-major 53

OF THE BATTALION.

Formation of a regiment or battalion in order of battle 59
To open ranks 66
To close ranks 69

Digitized by Google

Page
Manual of arms 61
Loadings and firings 61
To stack and resume arms 63
Manner of determining a line 63
Movements 64
Movements from line 65
No. 1. To break to the right into column 65
2. To break to the right to march to the left 66
3 To break to the rear into column 66
4 To ploy into close column or mass 67
5. To ploy into column doubled on the centre 68
6. Changes of front 69
7. To march by a flank 70
8. To advance in line 72
9. To halt the battalion and to align it 73
10. To retire in line 73
11. To halt the battalion and face it to the front 74
12. Passage of obstacles 74
13. To pass a defile in retreat 76
Movements from open column 78
No. 1. To march in column 78
2. To change direction in marching 78
3. To halt the column 78
4. To form to the left into line 79
5. To form line to the right, by inversion 79
6. To form on right into line 80
7. To form to the front into line 80
8. To form line faced to the rear 81
9, 10. To form line by two movements 82
11, 12. To form close column 83
13. Countermarch 84
Column in route 84
Movements from close column 85
No. 1. To form open column by the head 85
2. To form open column on the rear 86
3. To form open column on the head 86
4. To change direction in marching 87
5. To change direction from a halt 88
6. Countermarch 89
7. To form division from company 89
8. To deploy on first division 90
9. To deploy on fourth division 91
10. To deploy on an intermediate division 92
Movements from column doubled on centre 93
No. 1. To form line to the front 93
2. To form line to the right 93
Dispositions against cavalry 93
Rules for manœuvring by the rear-rank 97

LIGHT INFANTRY AND RIFLE.

OF THE COMPANY.

Deployments 109
1. To deploy forward 109
2. To deploy by the flank 111
3. To extend intervals 112
4. To close intervals 113
5. To relieve skirmishers 114
To march in advance 114
To march in retreat 115
To march by a flank 115
The firings 116
Rallying and assembling 117

OF THE BATTALION.

To deploy a battalion as skirmishers 119
To rally the battalion deployed as skirmishers 121

Digitized by Google

PART I.

INFANTRY TACTICS.

Digitized by Google

The words of command given by the Instructor, (who represents the commander,) are printed in CAPITAL *letters.*

When the Captain is the Instructor, the First Lieutenant takes the place of the Captain in the company, the Second Lieutenant replaces the First Lieutenant, and the Third Lieutenant the Second, &c. The Instructor moves wherever his presence may be most needed.

Some additions having been made to this work since the publication of the first edition, duplicate folios will be found in several places, each duplicate, however, being marked with an asterisk, (thus *) to prevent any confusion which might otherwise arise.

Digitized by Google

PART I.

OF THE SQUAD.

Position of the Soldier.

HEELS on the same line and as close together as the con formation of the man will permit; toes turned out equally, so as to form nearly a right angle; knees straight but not stiff; body inclined a little forward; shoulders square; arms hanging naturally; elbows near the body; palms of the hands turned a little to the front; the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons; face direct to the front; chin a little drawn in without constraint; eyes looking to the front so as to meet the ground at a distance of fifteen paces.

EYES–RIGHT.—At the word RIGHT, turn the head gently to the right, so as to bring the corner of the left eye nearest the nose, in a line with the junction of the heels, the eyes directed in a line with the eyes of the men in the same rank.

FRONT.—Resume the position to the front.

EYES–LEFT—Will be executed by inverse means.

REST.—Stand at ease, without moving the left foot from its position.

ATTENTION–SQUAD.—At the word SQUAD, resume the prescribed position and steadiness.

Facings.

SQUAD, BY THE RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK. RIGHT (or LEFT) FACE.—At the word FACE, turn on the left heel, by raising a little the left toe, at the same time bring the right heel to the side of the left, and on the same line, so that the line of the heels shall be exactly at right angles with the former line.

SQUAD–ABOUT.—At the word ABOUT, turn on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and three inches from the left heel, the feet square to each other; seize at the same time the inner corner of the cartridge-box with the right hand

Digitized by Google

FACE.—Turn on both heels, by raising the toes a little, extend the thighs and face to the rear; bring the righ heel by the side of the left, and quit the hold of the cartridge-box.

If under arms, turn the left hand at the word ABOUT, as in the first motion of PRESENT—ARMS, and replace the hand and piece at the instant of bringing the right heel to the side of the left.

The Direct Step.

The direct step, in common time, is twenty-eight inches, reckoning from heel to heel, and at the rate of ninety in a minute.

SQUAD—FORWARD.—Throw the weight of the body on the right leg, without bending the left knee.

MARCH.—Step off with the left foot, the knees straight, the toes pointed a little downwards and turned slightly out; the body inclined a little forward, and the foot planted flat at the prescribed distance; the right foot next passed to the front in the same manner.

SQUAD—HALT.—At the word HALT, stop short on the foot advanced, and bring up the other without stamping.

The Oblique Step.

Marching in the direct step in common time.

RIGHT OBLIQUE—MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given at the instant the left foot comes to the ground, carry the right foot obliquely to the right and front, twenty-six inches from the left, and eighteen inches on that side, turning the toes a little inward; next advance the left foot, by the shortest line, eighteen inches in front of the right heel: continue to march in this way, keeping the head and shoulders square to the front.*

To resume the Direct March.

FORWARD—MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given at the instant either foot comes to the ground, resume the direct march.

Manual of Arms.

This is taught to two men, placed at first side by side in one rank, elbow to elbow, and next in a single file, that is one behind the other.

* The oblique march to the left is executed according to the same principles: the word *march* being given at the instant the right foot comes to the ground

Digitized by Google

Each command is executed in one time (or pause) and is divided into motions.

The celerity of each motion, with the exception of the motions relative to the cartridge, to the rammer, and to the fixing and unfixing of the bayonet, is fixed at the ninetieth part of a minute. As the motions here excepted cannot be executed at the rate prescribed, they are notwithstanding to be executed with promptness and regularity.

The last syllable of the command decides the brisk execution of the first motion of each time. The commands TWO, THREE, and FOUR, decide the brisk execution of the other motions. The men are taught to execute the time without resting in its different motions, as soon as they comprehend the positions of the several motions of a time.

Before proceeding to the manual of arms, the men, at shouldered arms, repeat the movements of EYES-RIGHT, LEFT, and FRONT, and the facings.

Position of shoulder-arms.

(FIG. 1.) The musket in the left hand, the arm very little bent, the elbow back, near the body, the palm of the hand pressing on the outer flat of the butt, the outer edge of the latter on the upper joints of the fingers, the heel of the butt between the fore and middle fingers, the thumb on the front screw of the butt-plate, the remaining fingers under the butt, the butt more or less kept back, according to the conformation of the soldier, so that the piece seen from the front may appear to be perpendicular, and also that the movement of the thigh, in marching, may not raise it, or cause it to waver, the stock below the tail-band, resting against the hollow of the shoulder, just within the joint, the right arm hanging naturally, as prescribed for the soldier without arms.

SUPPORT-ARMS.—(FIG. 2.) 1st mo. With the right hand seize briskly the handle, or small, of the stock, four inches below the lock, raising a little, but not turning the piece.

2d mo. Take the left hand from the butt, extend the left fore-arm upwards across the body, under the cock, the hand flat on the right breast.

3d mo. Drop the right arm smartly into its position.

REST.—Bring up smartly the right hand to the small of the stock and stand at ease.

Digitized by Google

ATTENTION–SQUAD.—Resume the position of the third motion of SUPPORT–ARMS, at the word SQUAD.

CARRY–ARMS.—1st mo. Carry quickly the right hand to the small.

2d mo. Place quickly the left hand upon the butt.

3d mo. Let fall smartly the right hand into its position, and drop with the left, at the same time, the piece into the position of SHOULDER–ARMS.

ARMS–PORT.—(FIG. 3.) Throw the piece diagonally across the body, the lock to the front, seize it smartly at the same instant, with both hands, the right at the handle, the left at the tail-band, the two thumbs pointing towards the muzzle, the barrel sloping upwards and crossing opposite to the point of the left shoulder, the butt proportionally lowered. The palm of the right hand above, that of the left, under the piece, and the nails of both next to the body, to which the elbows are closed.

SHOULDER–ARMS.—1st mo. Bring the piece smartly to the left shoulder, placing the left hand under the butt.

2d mo. Drop the right hand smartly by the side.

PRESENT–ARMS.—(FIG. 4.) 1st mo. Turn the piece with the left hand, the lock out, and seize the small at the same time with the right hand, the piece perpendicular, and detached from the shoulder, the left hand remaining under the butt.

2d mo. Complete the turning inward of the piece, so as to bring it erect before the centre of the body, the rammer to the front, the right hand under and against the guard, seize it smartly at the same time with the left hand above the lock, the little finger against the feather-spring, the thumb extended along the barrel and on the stock, the fore-arm resting on the body without constraint, and the hand at the height of the elbow.

SHOULDER–ARMS.—1st mo. Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel out; raise and support it against the left shoulder with the right hand, drop the left under the butt, the right hand resting on, without grasping, the handle

2d mo. Drop quickly the right hand into its position.

ORDER–ARMS.—1st mo. Drop the piece smartly, by extending the left arm; seize it at the same time with the right hand above and near the tail-band; quit the hold of the left hand, and carry the piece opposite the right shoulder,

Digitized by Google

the rammer in front, the little finger behind the barrel, the right hand supported against the hip, the butt three inches from the ground, the piece erect, the left hand hanging by the side.

2d mo. Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground without shock, and take the position about to be described.

Position of order-arms.

(FIG. 5.) The hand low the barrel between the thumb and fore-finger extended along the stock; the other fingers extended and joined; the muzzle about two inches from the right shoulder; the rammer in front; the toe, or beak, of the butt, against, and in a line with the toe of the right foot, the barrel perpendicular.

REST.—Stand at ease.

ATTENTION-SQUAD.—At the word SQUAD, resume the position of ORDER-ARMS.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Raise smartly the piece with the right hand, carry it against the left shoulder, turning it, so as to bring the barrel to the front; place at the same time the left hand under the butt, and slip the right hand down to the lock.

2d mo. Let fall smartly the right hand into its position.

CHARGE-BAYONET.—(FIG. 6.) 1st mo. Make a half face to the right on the left heel, place at the same time the right foot behind, and at right angles with the left, the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and about three inches from the left heel: turn the piece with the left hand, the lock outwards, and seize the handle at the same time with the right hand, the musket perpendicular and detached from the shoulder; leave the left hand under the butt.

2d mo. Bring down the piece with the right hand into the left, the latter seizing it a little in advance of the tail-band, the barrel up, the left elbow near the body, the right hand supported against the hip, the point of the bayonet at the height of the eye.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Face to the front by turning on the left heel, bring up the right by the side of the left heel; at the same time, spring up the piece with the right

Digitized by Google

hand to the left shoulder, and place the left hand under the butt.

2d mo. Let fall smartly the right hand into its position

LOAD IN TWELVE TIMES.—LOAD.—(FIG. 7.) 1s mo. As the first motion of CHARGE-BAYONET, except that the hollow of the right foot is brought up against the left heel

2d mo. Bring down the piece with the right hand into the left, which, at the instant, seizes it at the tail-band, the thumb extended on the stock, the butt under the right fore-arm, the handle against the body and about two inches under the right breast, the muzzle at the height of the eye, the guard turned a little out, the left elbow supported against the side. At the instant the piece falls into the left hand, the right thumb is placed on the steel above the flint, the fore-fingers closed, the right fore-arm along the butt.

2. OPEN-PAN.—Open the pan, by pushing forward the steel with the right thumb, the left hand resisting and holding the piece firm; draw back immediately the right elbow, carry the hand to the cartridge-box, passing it between the butt and the body, and open the box.

3. HANDLE-CARTRIDGE.—Seize a cartridge with a thumb and the two next fingers, and place it between the teeth, the right hand passing between the butt and the body.

4. TEAR-CARTRIDGE.—Tear the paper down to the powder, holding the cartridge upright between the thumb and next two fingers; in this position place it against the pan, the palm of the right hand turned towards the body, the right elbow supported on the butt.

5. PRIME.—Drop the head a little, fix the eyes on the pan, fill it with powder, press together the top of the cartridge with the thumb and fore-finger, raise the head, and place the two last fingers of the right hand firmly behind and against the steel.

6. SHUT-PAN.—Resisting the motion with the left hand, shut the pan smartly with the fingers behind the steel, holding carefully the cartridge with the two next fingers and the thumb; seize immediately the handle with the two remaining fingers and the palm of the right hand, the right wrist touching the body, the elbow back, and a little detached from the body.

7. CAST-ABOUT.—(FIG. 8.) 1st mo. Pass the piece

Digitized by Google

along the left thigh, after bringing it upright near the body; to effect this, press the butt strongly, extending smartly the right arm, without lowering the shoulder; turn at the same time the rammer towards the body, open the left hand to let the piece slide through it towards and near the middle band, the elbow remaining near the body, the cock bearing on the right thumb; at the same time face to the front, turning on the left heel, and carry the right foot forward, the heel against the hollow of the left foot.

2d mo. Quit the hold of the right hand; through the left, let the piece descend to the ground, without shock, along and near the body; raise at the same time the right hand to the height of, and near the muzzle, holding the top of the cartridge up, the left hand against the body, the piece touching the left thigh, the muzzle opposite to the centre of the body.

8. CHARGE-CARTRIDGE.—(Fig. 8.) Fix the eye on the muzzle, turn quickly the back of the right hand towards the body, in order to discharge the powder into the barrel; raise the elbow to the height of the wrist, shake the cartridge, force it into the muzzle, and leave the hand reversed, the fingers closed but not clenched.

9. DRAW-RAMMER.—1st mo. Drop smartly the right elbow and seize the rammer between the thumb and fore finger bent, the other fingers shut; draw it smartly extending the arm; seize the rammer again at the middle, between the thumb and fore-finger, the hand reversed, the palm to the front, the nails up, the eyes following the movement of the hand; clear the rammer from the pipes by again extending the arm.

2d mo. Turn rapidly the rammer between the bayonet and the face, closing the fingers, the rammer of the rear-rank man grazing the right shoulder of the man in front the rammer parallel to the bayonet, the arm extended, the butt of the rammer opposite to the muzzle, but not yet inserted, the eyes fixed on the muzzle.

3d mo. Insert the butt of the rammer and force it down low as the hand.

10. RAM-CARTRIDGE.—(Fig. 9.) Extend the arm to its full length to seize the rammer between the right thumb extended and the fore-finger bent, the other fingers closed; with force ram down twice seize the rammer at the

Digitized by Google

little end, between the thumb and fore-finger bent, the other fingers closed, the right elbow touching the body.

11. RETURN-RAMMER.—1st mo. Draw briskly the rammer, seize it at the middle between the thumb and fore-finger, the hand reversed, the palm to the front, the nails up, the eyes following the movement of the hand; clear the rammer from the barrel by extending the arm.

2d mo. Turn rapidly the rammer between the bayonet and the face, closing the fingers, the rammer of the rear-rank man grazing the right shoulder of the man in front, the rammer parallel to the bayonet, the arm extended, the little end of the rammer opposite the first pipe, but not yet inserted; the eyes fixed on that pipe.

3d mo. Insert the little end, and with the thumb force it as low as the middle band; raise quickly the hand a little bent, place the little finger on the butt of the rammer, and force it down; lower the left hand on the barrel to the extent of the arm, without depressing the shoulder.

12. SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Raise the piece with the left hand along the left side, the hand at the height of the chin, the fore-arm touching the piece, the barrel to the front; drop at the same time, the right hand to seize the piece a little above the handle, the fore-fingers touching the cock, and the thumb on the counter-plate.

2d mo. Raise the piece with the right hand, drop the left, and place it under the butt, bring back the right heel to the side of the left, and on the same line; support the piece with the right hand against the shoulder, in the position prescribed for SHOULDER-ARMS, the right hand resting on without grasping the piece.

3d mo. Let fall smartly the right hand into its position, by the side of the thigh.

READY.—(Fig. 10.) 1st mo. As the first motion of the first time of load.

2d mo. Bring the piece with the right hand to the middle of the body, place the left hand, the little finger touching the feather-spring, the thumb extended on the stock at the height of the chin, the counter-plate almost turned towards the body, the rammer obliquely to the left and front.

3d mo. Place the thumb on the head of the cock, the fore-finger under and on the guard, the other three fingers joined to the first, the elbow at the height of the hand.

Digitized by Google

4th mo. Close the right elbow smartly to the body in cocking; seize the piece at the handle, let it descend along the body in the left hand to the tail-band, which remains at the height of the shoulder.

AIM.—(Fig. 11, 12.) Drop smartly the muzzle, the left hand remaining at the tail-band; support the butt against the right shoulder, the left elbow a little down; shut the left eye, direct the right along the barrel, drop the head upon the butt to catch the object, and place the fore-finger on the trigger. The rear-rank at the same time places the right foot about eight inches towards the left heel of the man next on the right.

FIRE.—Apply the fore-finger with force to the trigger, without lowering or turning the head, and remain in that position.

LOAD.—1st mo. Bring back the piece quickly and take the position of the second motion of the first time of LOAD, except that the right thumb, instead of being placed against the steel, seizes the head of the cock, with the fore-finger bent, and the other fingers closed.

2d mo. Half-cock, carry the right hand immediately to the cartridge-box, passing it between the butt and the body, and open the box.

If, after firing, it be intended to bring the squad to the shoulder, instead of loading, the command is given:

SHOULDER-ARMS.—At the word SHOULDER, take the position of the second motion of the first time of LOAD, half-cock, shut pan, and seize the handle of the piece. At the word ARMS, come to the shoulder and face to the front.

The squad being in the position of *aim*, to habituate the men to wait for the word *fire*, the command is sometimes given:

RECOVER-ARMS.—Withdraw the finger from the trigger, throw up smartly the muzzle, and retake the position of the fourth motion of *ready*.

If from this position the squad is to be brought to a shoulder, the command is given:

SHOULDER-ARMS.—At the word SHOULDER, face to the front, bring the piece to the middle of the body, the left thumb at the height of the chin, the little finger touching the feather-spring; next place the right thumb on the head of the cock, support the fore-finger on the trigger, sustain at

Digitized by Google

the same time the cock in its descent till the flint nearly touches the steel, raise the cock to the half-cock notch, and seize the handle of the piece with the right hand. At the word *arms*, carry the piece smartly to the shoulder, and take the position of SHOULDER–ARMS.

UNFIX–BAYONET.—1st mo. Drop the piece by a smart extension of the left arm, seize it with the right hand bove, and near the tail-band.

2d mo. Drop the piece with the right hand along the left thigh, seize it with the left hand above the right, lengthen out the left arm, rest the butt on the ground, without shock, and carry, at the same time, the right hand to the bayonet, seize it at the socket and shank, so that the lower end of the socket may be about an inch below the heel of the palm, and that in wresting off the bayonet, the thumb may be extended on the blade.

3d mo. Wrest off the bayonet, return it to the scabbard, place immediately the right little finger on the butt of the rammer, lower the left hand along the barrel, in extending the arm, without depressing the shoulder.

SHOULDER–ARMS.—As the twelfth time of LOAD.

SECURE–ARMS.—(FIG. 13.) 1st mo. Seize quickly the piece with the right hand, the thumb on the counter-plate, and the fore-finger against the cock; detach the piece from the shoulder at the same time, the barrel to the front, seize it at the tail-band with the left hand, the thumb extended on the rammer, the piece erect, opposite to the shoulder, the left elbow on the piece.

2d mo. Reverse the piece, pass it under the left arm, the left hand remaining at the tail-band, the thumb on the rammer, to prevent it from sliding out, the little finger resting against the thigh, the point of the bayonet six or eight inches from the ground, the right hand falling at the same time into its position.

SHOULDER–ARMS.—1st mo. Raise the piece with the left hand, but not too suddenly; seize the handle with the right hand to support it against the shoulder; quit the hold of the left hand, and place it quickly under the butt.

2d mo. Let fall smartly the right hand to its position drop at the same time the piece into the position of SHOULDER–ARMS.

FIX–BAYONET.—1st and 2d mos. As the first and second motions of UNFIX–BAYONET, except at the end of the second motion, the right hand goes to seize the bayonet by

Digitized by Google

the socket and shank, so that the lower (now upper) end of the socket shall extend about an inch above the heel of the palm.

3d mo. Draw the bayonet from the scabbard, carry and fix it on the muzzle; place the right little finger on the butt of the rammer.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—As the twelfth time of LOAD.

TRAIL-ARMS.—(FIG. 14.) 1st mo. As the first motio of ORDER-ARMS.

2d mo. Incline a little the muzzle to the front, the butt to the rear, and about three inches from the ground; the right hand supported at the hip, sustains the piece so that the man in the rear-rank may not touch with the bayonet, the man in his front.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—At the word SHOULDER, raise the piece perpendicularly in the right hand: at the word ARMS, execute what is prescribed for the shoulder, from ORDER-ARMS.

TO RIGHT SHOULDER, SHIFT-ARMS.—(FIG. 15.) Turn the piece with the left hand, lock to the front, seize it at the same time at the handle with the right hand, place it on the right shoulder, the left hand not quitting the butt, the cock above and resting on the shoulder, the muzzle up; sustain the piece in this position by placing the right hand on the flat of the butt, so that the toe of the butt may be between the first two fingers, the other two on the butt-plate; let fall the left hand by the side.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—Raise the piece by extending the right arm, seize it with the left hand above the lock, carry it against the left shoulder, turning the barrel to the front the right hand being at the handle; place the left hand under the butt, and let the right fall into its position.

ARMS-AT WILL.—Carry the piece at pleasure on either shoulder with one or both hands, the muzzle always up.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—Retake smartly the position of SHOULDER-ARMS.

The squad being at order-arms with bayonets in the scabbards, to cause an inspection of arms, the command is given:

INSPECTION OF-ARMS.—1st mo. Face to the right once and a half on the left heel, carrying the right foot perpendicularly to the rear of the alignment, about six inches from and at right angles with the left foot; seize promptly the piece with the left hand a little above the middle band, incline the muzzle to the rear without displacing the heel of

Digitized by Google

the butt, the rammer turned towards the body; carry at the same time the right hand to the bayonet and seize it as prescribed in the second motion of FIX-BAYONET.

2d mo Draw the bayonet from the scabbard, carry and fix it on the muzzle; seize next the rammer, draw it as explained in loading, in twelve times, and let it glide to the bottom of the bore.

3d mo. Face promptly to the front, seize the piece with the right hand, and retake the position of ORDER-ARMS.

The inspector inspects, in succession, the piece of each man, in passing along the front of the rank. Each, as the inspector reaches him, raises smartly his piece with his righ hand, seizes it with the left between the tail-band, and the feather-spring, the lock to the front, the left hand at the height of the chin, the piece opposite to the left eye: the inspector takes it with the right hand at the handle, and after inspecting it, returns it to the man, who receives it back with the right hand and replaces it in the position of ORDER-ARMS.

When the inspector has passed him, each man retakes the position prescribed in the command INSPECTION OF ARMS, and returns the rammer; after which he faces to the front.

If, instead of inspection of arms, bayonets only are to be fixed, the command is given:

FIX-BAYONET.—Take the position prescribed in the first motion of INSPECTION OF ARMS; fix the bayonet and face to the front.

If, after fixing bayonets, rammers are to be sprung, the following command is given:

SPRING-RAMMERS.—Put the rammer in the barrel as explained above and face to the front.

To load in four times.

The squad being at a shoulder.

LOAD IN FOUR TIMES.—LOAD.—Execute the first time of LOAD, open pan, handle cartridge, tear cartridge, and prime.

TWO.—Shut pan, cast about, and charge cartridge.

THREE.—Draw rammer, and ram cartridge.

FOUR.—Return rammer, and shoulder arms.

To load at will.

LOAD AT WILL-LOAD.—Execute the loading as in four times, but without resting on the times.

Digitized by Google

FIRINGS.

The firings are direct or oblique.

The Direct Fire.

This is executed as prescribed in the manual of arms, and by the following commands. FIRE BY SQUAD—SQUAD—READY.—AIM—FIRE—LOAD.

The Oblique Fire.

This is executed to the right and left, by the same command as the fire direct, the command AIM, being always preceded by the caution RIGHT (or LEFT) OBLIQUE, after the word READY.

Position of the ranks in the oblique fire to the right.

At the word READY, both ranks execute what is prescribed for the fire direct.

At the words RIGHT-OBLIQUE, both ranks throw back the right shoulder and look at the object at which they are to fire, the rear-rank holding itself ready to take aim through the same interval as in the fire direct, though in an oblique direction.

At the word AIM, the front-rank takes aim to the right without stirring the feet. The rear-rank advances the left foot about six inches towards the right toe of the man of the front-rank in the same file, incline the upper part of the body forward, in bending a little the knee, and takes aim to the right.

At the word LOAD, both ranks resume the position prescribed for the fire direct; the rear-rank brings back the left heel against the hollow of the right foot, at the instant the piece is brought to the priming position.

Position of the ranks in the oblique fire to the left.

At the word READY, both ranks execute what is prescribed for the fire direct.

At the words LEFT OBLIQUE, both ranks throw back the left shoulder, and look at the object at which they are to fire the rear-rank holding itself ready to take aim to the left of the men of the same file in front, and in an oblique direction.

At the word AIM, the front-rank takes aim to the left without moving the feet. The rear-rank men advance the left

Digitized by Google

foot six inches towards the right heel of the front-rank men of their files; they also advance the upper part of the body, in bending a little the left knee, and take aim through the intervals to the left of their file-leaders.

At the word LOAD, both ranks come to the priming position, the pieces still obliqued to the left, and prime; the rear-rank brings back the left heel to the hollow of the right foot. In casting about both ranks take the same position as in the fire direct.

The fire by file.

FIRE BY FILE.—SQUAD-READY—COMMENCE FIRING.—At the word READY, both ranks take the position prescribed for the direct fire. At the words COMMENCE FIRING, the right file aims and fires, the two men together; the next file aims at the instant the first has fired, and so on successively to the left: after the first fire every man loads and fires without waiting for the others. Each man faces to the front in casting about, and after returning rammer, springs up his piece with the left hand which places itself on the feather-spring, and at the height of the chin; at the same time he makes a half face to the right, taking the position of ready.

To arrest the fire.

ROLL.—At this word, the firing ceases; each man half cocks, if his piece be cocked; loads or finishes loading, if not already loaded; and shoulders arms.

To Mark Time.

Marching in the direct step in common time.

MARK TIME-MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given the instant either foot is coming to the ground, make a semblance of marching, by advancing first one foot, and then the other, always bringing back the advanced foot, and placing its heel by the side of the heel of the other.

To resume the direct step.

FORWARD-MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given the instant either foot is coming to the ground, resume the direct step.

Digitized by Google

To change step.

CHANGE STEP–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given the instant either foot is coming to the ground, bring up quickly the foot in the rear to the side of that just placed on the ground, and step off with the latter.

Alignments.

Four or eight men are now united in one rank, elbow t elbow, and numbered from right to left.

The men are first taught to align themselves man by man; to effect which the two on the right are marched two paces to the front and aligned, after which the remainder are cautioned tc move up one by one according to their numbers and are aligned successively on the line of the two first. Each as designated, turns his head and eyes to the right, marches in common time, two paces forward, shortening the last, so as to be about six inches behind the new alignment; he then moves up steadily by steps of two or three inches, o the side of the man next to him on the alignment, so that without deranging the head, the line of the eyes, or that of the shoulders, he may find himself in the exact line of his right-hand man, whose elbow he touches without opening his own.

Alignments to the left are executed on the same principles.

When the men have learned to align themselves in this manner, the whole rank will be aligned at once as follows:

RIGHT (or LEFT)–DRESS.—At the word DRESS, the rank, except the two men placed as a basis, moves up in common time, each man placing himself on the line in the manner just prescribed.

The rank being aligned, the word FRONT is given.

Alignments to the rear are executed on the same principles, the men stepping back a little beyond the line and then dressing up, by the command RIGHT (or LEFT) BACKWARD–DRESS.

To march by the front.

A well instructed man is placed on the right or left of the squad, according to the side on which the guide is to be.

SQUAD FORWARD, GUIDE LEFT (or RIGHT)–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the squad steps off with

Digitized by Google

ine left foot, the guide marching straight to the front and keeping his shoulders square with that line.

The following rules are to be observed:—Touch lightly the elbow towards the guide, without opening the left elbow, or the right arm; yield to pressure from the side to the guide, and resist that from the opposite side; avoid lapping elbows, and swinging the arms; keep the head to the front, the eyes cast on the ground about fifteen paces in front.

The squad is next exercised in the oblique march to the right, and left, observing always to keep the touch of the elbow towards the guide. It is also taught to pass from common to quick time, and the reverse; but the oblique march in quick time should not be practised until the squad is well established in the cadence.

The Quick Step.

This step is at the rate of one hundred and ten in a minute; its length conforms to the step in common time, whether direct or oblique.

Marching in the direct step in common time.

QUICK TIME–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given as either foot is coming to the ground, the squad steps off in quick time.

To resume the direct step in common time.

COMMON TIME–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given on either foot as above, the squad retakes the step in common time.

To march the back step.

SQUAD BACKWARD, GUIDE LEFT (or RIGHT)–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the squad steps off smartly with the left foot to the rear, carrying it about fourteen inches, or half the common step, and so on with the feet in succession, until the word SQUAD, HALT, when the foot in front is brought back to the side of the other.

To march by the flank.

Being at a halt and aligned.

SQUAD, BY RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK, RIGHT (or LEFT) FACE.—At the word FACE, the squad faces to the right (or left).

Digitized by Google

SQUAD, FORWARD–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the squad steps off with the left foot in common time. A well instructed soldier is placed by the side of the leading man to conduct him and regulate the step; this man marches elbow to elbow with the soldier. The men cover each other accurately. At each step, the advancing heel of every following man is planted about six inches in advance of the opposite heel (yet on the ground) of the man immediately preceding. The knees should not be bent, in order to avoid treading on the heels of the men preceding.

To halt the squad and face it to the front.

SQUAD–HALT.—At the word HALT, the squad halts, each man standing fast, though he may have lost distance.

FRONT–FACE.—At the word FACE, each man faces to the left, if marching by the right flank, and to the right, if marching by the left flank.

To change direction while marching by a flank.

BY FILE, LEFT (or RIGHT) MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the leading man changes direction to the left (or right), and then marches straight forward; the others change direction as they successively arrive on the ground where the first changed.

Marching by the front, to march by a flank.

SQUAD BY LEFT (or RIGHT) FLANK–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given a little before either foot comes to the ground, each man turns his body, plants the foot that is raised in the new direction, and steps off with the other foot, without altering the cadence of the step.

Flank marching will be executed first in common time, afterwards in quick time.

Wheelings.

Wheelings are of two kinds; from a halt or on fixed pivots, and in marching, or on moveable pivots. In the latter case the wheel will be made to the side opposite the guide, or reverse flank.

To wheel from a halt, or on a fixed pivot.

A well instructed man is placed on the wheeling flank.

Digitized by Google

BY SQUAD, RIGHT WHEEL—MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the squad steps off with the left foot, turning at the same time, the head a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men to the left, the pivot man marks time in turning, in order to conform to the movement of the marching flank; the man who conducts this flank, takes steps of twenty-eight inches, and from the first step, advances a little the left shoulder, casts his eyes, from time to time, along the rank, and feels constantly the elbow of the next man lightly, without pushing. The other men, each feels lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot, resists pressure from the opposite side, and conforms to the marching flank, lengthening or shortening the step according to his greater or less distance from the pivot.

The squad wheels round the circle, once or twice before halting.

The wheel to the left is executed according to the same principles.

To halt the wheel.

SQUAD—HALT.—At the word HALT, each man stands fast. The two outer men opposite to the pivot flank are then placed in the direction to be given to the squad, leaving between them and the pivot only space necessary to contain the other men.

LEFT—DRESS.—At the word DRESS, the squad places itself on the alignment of the two men established as a basis in the manner already prescribed.

The squad being aligned, the word FRONT is given.

Wheeling to the left is executed on the same principles.

To wheel in marching, or on a moveable pivot.

RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL—MARCH. At the word MARCH, given the instant the squad arrives at the wheeling point, the wheel is executed in the same manner as from a halt, except that the touch of the elbow remains toward the marching flank, or side of the guide, instead of the side of the pivot; the pivot man, instead of turning in his place, conforms to the movement of the marching flank, feels lightly the elbow of the next man, takes steps of nine inches, and gains ground forward, in describing the arc of a small circle to clear the point of the wheel. The middle of the

Digitized by Google

rank bends slightly to the rear. As soon as the movement commences, the man who conducts the marching flank casts his eyes on the ground over which he will have to pass.

FORWARD–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given at the instant of completing the wheel, the squad moves forward, taking the step of twenty-eight inches—head direct to the front.

Turning or change of direction to the side of the guide.

This takes place only when the change of direction is to be made to the side of the guide.

LEFT (or RIGHT) TURN—MARCH.—At the word MARCH, given the instant the turn is to be made, the guide faces to the left (or right) in marching, and moves forward in the new direction, without altering the step or pace. The whole squad promptly conforms itself, without running, to the new direction: each man advances the shoulder opposite to the guide, takes the quick step to carry himself in the new direction, turn his head and eyes to the side of the guide, and retakes the touch of the elbow on that side, in placing himself on the alignment of the guide, from whom he takes the step, and then turns his head to the front. Each man thus arrives successively on the alignment of the guide.

To stack Arms.

The squad being in two ranks at order–arms.

STACK–ARMS.—At this command the front-rank man of every even numbered file passes his piece before him, seizing it with the left hand above the middle band, and places the butt behind and near the right foot of the man next on the left, the barrel turned to the front. At the same time the front-rank man of every odd numbered file passes his piece before him, seizing it with the left hand below the middle band, and hands it to the man next on the left; the latter receives it with the right hand two inches above the middle band, throws the butt about thirty-two inches to the front, opposite to his right shoulder, inclining the muzzle towards him, and locks the shanks of the two bayonets: the lock of this second piece towards the right, and its shank above that of the first piece. The rear-rank man of every even file projects his bayonet forward, and introduces it (using both hands) between and under the shanks of the two

Digitized by Google

other bayonets. He then abandons the piece to his file leader who receives it with the right hand under the middle band, brings the butt to the front, holding up his own piece and the stack with the left hand, and places the butt of this third piece between the feet of the man next on the right, the S plate to the rear. The stack thus formed, the rear-rank man of every odd file passes his piece into his left hand, the barrel turned to the front, and, sloping the bayonet forward, rests it on the stack.

To disperse, the command is given: BREAK RANKS—MARCH.

To resume Arms.

The squad, on a signal, or order to fall in, re-forms in two ranks.

TAKE–ARMS.—At this command the rear-rank man of every odd file withdraws his piece from the stack; the front rank man of every even file seizes his own piece with the left hand, and that of the man on his right with the right hand; the rear-rank man of every even file seizes his piece with the right hand at the middle band, advancing for the purpose, the hollow of his right foot as far as the right heel of his file leader; these two men raise up the stack to loosen the shanks; the front-rank man of every odd file receives his piece from the hand of the man next on the left, and the four men retake the position of order–arms.

When companies stack arms, the sergeants, and also corporals, if in the rank of file closers, rest their pieces against the stacks nearest to them respectively, *after* ranks are broken, and resume their pieces on the signal to re-form ranks.

The colour-guard forms a separate stack.

Digitized by Google

FIG. 1.

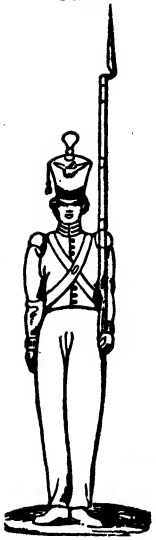


FIG. 2.

FIG. 3.

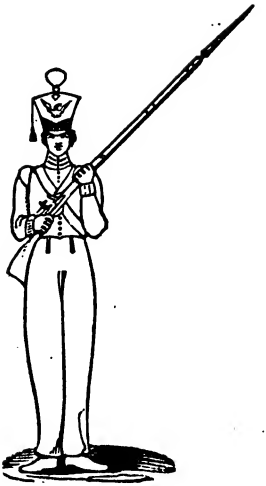
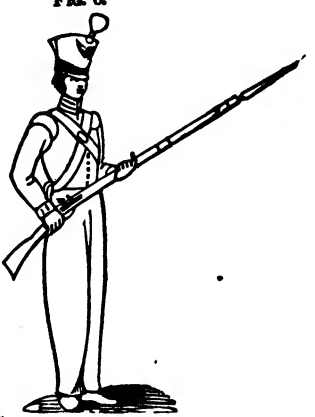


FIG. 4.

FIG. 5.

FIG. 6.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 7.

FIG. 8.

FIG. 9.

FIG. 10.

FIG. 11.

FIG. 12.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 13.

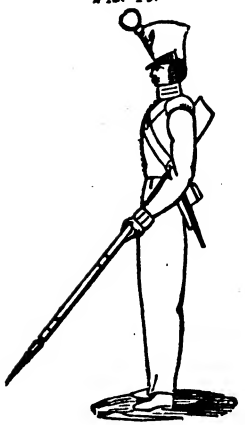
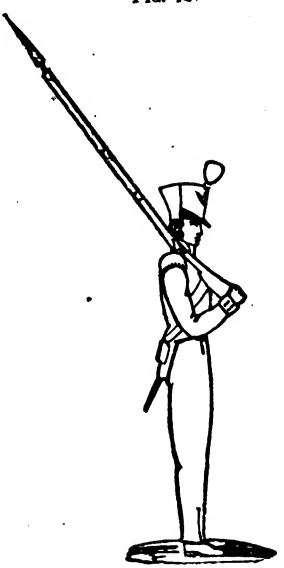


Fig. 14.

Fig. 15.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PART I.

OF THE COMPANY.

Formation of the Company. (FIG. 1.)

THE company being assembled on its ground, the sergeants, by the command *fall in*, cause the rank and file (corporals and privates) to form in one rank, faced to the right, and in the order of height from right to left, the tallest man on the right, (now head of the rank), the next tallest immediately covering the first, and so on to the left, or rear of the rank.

The first sergeant then gives the words:

FRONT–FACE.—At the word FACE, the company faces to the front, and the second sergeant places himself on the left of the rank.

IN TWO RANKS, FORM COMPANY. } At the
BY THE LEFT FLANK. LEFT–FACE. } word FACE,

the company faces to the left, except the sergeant and man on the left, who stand fast.

MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the men who have faced to the left, step off together; the second man, counting from the left, places himself behind the man next to the sergeant, and faces to the front; the two following men, in like manner, on closing up, form the next file, and all the other men come successively to form files two deep, to the right of those already formed. The distance between the ranks is thirteen inches, measured from the breasts of the rear-rank men to the backs, or knapsacks, (if they be on), of the front-rank men.

The captain now divides the company into two equal platoons, and each platoon into two equal sections. The platoon on the right is called the *first platoon*, and that on the left the *second platoon*. The sections are numbered from right to left, *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*. The corporals (four in number) are then placed on the right and left of each platoon, in the front rank according to height, and the files are numbered from right to left.

The officers and sergeants now take their posts as follows:

The captain, in the front rank on the right of the company

The first lieutenant, two paces in rear of the rear-rank, and equidistant between the centre of the second platoon and the second file from the left of the company

Digitized by Google

The second lieutenant, opposite the centre of the first platoon, and two paces in rear of the rear-rank.

The third lieutenant opposite the centre of the second platoon, and two paces in rear of the rear-rank.

The first sergeant, on the right of the rear-rank covering the captain: he is denominated *covering sergeant*, or *right guide* of the company.

The second sergeant, two paces in rear of the second file from the left of the company; he is denominated the *left guide* of the company. In the left company of a battalion, this sergeant is on the left of the front-rank, and is covered by a corporal in the rear-rank; he is designated as *the closing sergeant*, and the corporal, *the covering corporal*.

The third sergeant, two paces in rear of the second file from the left of the first platoon.

The fourth sergeant, two paces in rear of the second file from the right of the second platoon.

The fifth sergeant, two paces in rear of the rear-rank, and equidistant between the second lieutenant and the third sergeant.

The officers and sergeants thus posted in rear of the company, constitute the rank of file-closers; this rank is two paces in rear of the rear-rank.

The pioneer is posted in the line of file-closers on the right; and the music in a line with the front-rank, four paces in its right, the drummer on the right of the fifer, or bugler.

Absent officers and sergeants may be replaced, officers by sergeants, and sergeants by corporals, according to rank and the necessity of the case.

To pass from two ranks, into one rank.

IN ONE RANK FORM COMPANY.—The left guide faces to the left.

MARCH.—The left guide steps off and marches in the prolongation of the front-rank; the next file steps off at the same time with the guide; the front-rank man turns to the left at the first step, follows the guide, and is himself followed by the rear-rank man of his file, who turns on the spot where his file leader turned. The second file, counting from the left, and successively all the other files, march as prescribed for the first; the front-rank man of each, immediately following the rear-rank man of the file next on the left. The captain halts the company as the last man on the right turns into the rank. The file closers extend themselves with the movement.

Digitized by Google

Posts of Officers and others in column.

*In column by Division.**

Two companies united, constitute a division, and are commanded by the senior captain of those companies, who places himself two paces in front of the centre of the division; the junior captain in the front-rank, on the right of the left company of the division, covered by the covering sergeant of that company; the covering sergeant of the right company, is the right guide of the division, and is on the right of the front-rank; the left guide of the left company is the left guide of the division, and is on the left of the front-rank.

When the division faces by a flank, the senior captain places himself by the side of the leading guide who is in the front-rank; the junior captain by the side of the covering sergeant of the left company, who steps in the front-rank.

In column by Company.

The captain is two paces in front of the centre of his company; the first sergeant on the right of the front-rank, and is the right guide of the company; the second sergeant on the left of the same rank, and is the left guide of the company

In column by Platoon.

The captain commands the first platoon, the first lieutenant the second platoon; each takes post two paces in front of the centre of his platoon; the first sergeant is the guide of the first platoon; the second sergeant is the guide of the second platoon; they are on the left of the front-rank of their respective platoons, if the column be right in front, and on the right if the left be in front.

If the column be marching in the route step, the chiefs of platoon take the place of the guides on the directing flank, and are covered by the latter in the rear-rank.

In column by Section.

This column takes place only in column of route, and then only when platoons have a front of ten or more files. The captain commands the first section; the first lieutenant the third, the second lieutenant the second; and the third lieutenant the fourth section; each taking post on the directing flank in the front-rank of his section; the two guides who are thus displaced, each falls back to the rear-rank of his section and covers its chief; the remaining file-closers place themselves in the rear-rank of their respective sections, all on the side of direction

* In column the lieut.-colonel and major are on the directing flank, the first abreast with the leading subdivision, the other abreast with the last, and both six paces from the flank. The adjutant is near the lieut.-colonel, the sergeant

Digitized by Google

In column, except in column by sections, the file-closers, not otherwise provided for, are in their proper places behind the rear-rank of their respective subdivisions. In close column or in column at half distance, they close up to within one pace of the rear-rank.

In column right in front, the left flank is the directing flank (except under peculiar circumstances or manœuvres) the reverse is the case in column left in front.

In column, each chief of subdivision always briskly repeats the commands *march*, and *halt*, the instant he hears them given.

To open ranks.

The company being at shoulder-arms, the left guide is placed on the left of the rear-rank.

TO THE REAR, OPEN ORDER.—The covering sergeant and the left guide, step off to the rear, in the back step, four paces, and align themselves parallel to the rear-rank.

MARCH.—The front rank stands fast; the rear-rank steps off in the back step, in common time, without counting steps, places itself on the alignment, marked out for it, and is aligned by the right on the left guide, by the covering sergeant. The file-closers step off at the same time with the rear rank, and place themselves two paces in the rear of that rank.

The ranks being aligned the word FRONT, is given, when the left guide returns to the left of the front rank.

Alignments in open ranks.

The ranks are first aligned man by man, as in the squad , three men being placed three paces in advance of the right or left of each rank, to serve as a basis, and the words given, BY FILE RIGHT (or LEFT)–DRESS.—The men of each rank move up successively on the alignment, each man being preceded two paces, by his neighbour.

The ranks are next aligned at once, forward and backward, in both parallel and oblique directions, by the commands RIGHT (or LEFT)–DRESS, or RIGHT (or LEFT) BACKWARD–DRESS; three men in each case being placed as a basis.

Before closing the ranks the company is exercised in the *manual of arms and the loadings in twelve times.*

major near the major. The colonel has no fixed place, but is habitually on the directing flank, 15 or 20 paces from the guides, and abreast with the centre of the column.

Digitized by Google

To close ranks.

CLOSE ORDER–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the rear-rank closes to the front, each man covering his file-leader.

The company is next instructed in the alignments, and the manual of arms in closed ranks, and then proceeds to the loadings and firings.

Loading in *four times* and *at will*, are commanded and executed as prescribed in the squad drill. The captain and covering sergeant make a half-face to the right with the men, and face to the front when the man next to them respectively casts about.

To fire by company.

FIRE BY COMPANY.—At this command the captain places himself opposite to the centre of his company, four paces in rear of the rank of file-closers; and the covering sergeant places himself in that rank opposite to his interval. This rule is general for the captain and covering sergeant in all the different firings.

COMMENCE FIRING.—At this command, the captain gives the words, *company—ready—aim—fire—load.* At the word LOAD, each man brings back his piece, loads and comes to the shoulder, when the captain recommences the fire by the same commands, and thus continues it till the *roll* of the drum. The captain may sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right and left, by giving the words, *right* (or *left*) *oblique*, between the words *ready* and *aim.*

To fire by file.

FIRE BY FILE. COMPANY. READY–COMMENCE FIRING. The fire is executed as prescribed in the squad drill.

The firing ceases by a *roll* of the drum, when each man loads and comes to the shoulder. In actual firing, at the roll of the drum, the captain and file-closers give the words *cease firing.* The roll is always followed by a *tap* on the drum, when the captain and covering sergeant resume their places in line, and rectify, if necessary, the alignment of the ranks.

Digitized by Google

To fire by the rear-rank.

FACE BY THE REAR-RANK.—At this command, the captain steps out and places himself near to, and facing the right file of the company; the covering sergeant and file-closers pass quickly through the captain's interval, and place themselves, faced to the rear, the covering sergeant a pace behind the captain, and the file-closers two paces from the front-rank opposite to their places in line.

COMPANY ABOUT–FACE.—At the word FACE, given the instant the last file-closer has passed through the interval, the company faces about; the captain places himself in his interval in the rear-rank, now front, and the covering sergeant covers him in the front-rank, now rear.

The different firings are now executed in the manner already prescribed The fire by file commences on the left now the right flank.

To resume the proper front.

FACE BY THE FRONT RANK.—This is executed as prescribed in the command FACE BY THE REAR-RANK.

COMPANY ABOUT–FACE.—The company, having faced about, the captain and covering sergeant resume their places in line.

To advance in line.

COMPANY, FORWARD.—At this command, a sergeant, previously selected, moves six paces in advance of the captain, and is correctly aligned on the prolongation of the captain and covering sergeant. This advanced sergeant is charged with the direction, and will take two points on the ground in the direct line to the front.

MARCH.—The company steps off with life. The directing sergeant observes, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, marching on the two points he has chosen; he takes in succession, and a little before arriving at the point nearest to him, new points in advance, exactly in the same line with the two first, and at a distance of fifteen or twenty paces from each other. The captain marches in the trace of the directing sergeant, keeping always six paces from him. The men march with the head and shoulders square to the front, touch lightly the elbow towards the

Digitized by Google

captain, and resist pressure from the opposite side. The file-closers march in their places, two paces behind the rear-rank.

To halt the company advancing in line, and to align it.

COMPANY–HALT.—The company halts at the word HALT, the directing sergeant returns to his place as a file-closer, and the captain rectifies the alignment.

Advancing in line, to oblique to the right or left.

RIGHT (or LEFT) OBLIQUE–MARCH.—The word MARCH, is given, and the movement executed as prescribed in the squad drill; the men maintaining the touch of the elbow towards the captain, who conforms his march to that of the directing sergeant.

To resume the Direct March.

FORWARD–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the direct march is resumed.

The company is next instructed to mark time by the command MARK TIME–MARCH; to resume the march by the command FORWARD–MARCH; to march in quick time by the command QUICK TIME–MARCH; and to resume the common time by the command COMMON TIME–MARCH; the word MARCH, being given as either foot is coming to the ground.

To retire in line.

COMPANY, ABOUT–FACE.—At the word FACE, the company faces about.

COMPANY, FORWARD.—At the word FORWARD, the covering sergeant moves up, opposite to his interval, into the rank of file-closers, now leading; the captain replaces the covering sergeant in the rear-rank, now front, and the directing sergeant places himself in front of the captain, six paces in advance of the rank of file-closers, and in the manner prescribed for the advance in line.

MARCH.—The company steps off in the manner prescribed for the advance in line.

The company retiring in line, executes all that is prescribed for advancing in line

Digitized by Google

To halt the company retiring in line, and to face it to the front.

COMPANY, HALT. ABOUT–FACE.—As soon as the company faces about, the captain, the covering sergeant, and the directing sergeant, resume their proper places in line.

To march by the flank. (FIG. 2.)

COMPANY BY THE RIGHT FLANK, RIGHT–FACE —At the word FACE, the company faces to the right, and the covering sergeant places himself at the head of the front-rank, the captain on his left.

COMPANY FORWARD–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the company steps off in common time, the captain and covering sergeant directing their march straight forward; the men of the rear-rank march abreast of their respective front-rank men, and the file-closers opposite to their places in line.

The march by the left flank is executed by the same commands, substituting LEFT for RIGHT. As soon as the company faces to the left, the left guide places himself at the head of the front-rank, the captain on his right. The covering sergeant replaces the captain in the front-rank.

To change direction by file. (FIG. 2.)

The company being faced to a flank, and either in march or at a halt

BY FILE LEFT (or RIGHT) MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the first file wheels; if to the side of the front-rank man, this man describes the short arc of a circle, shortening a little the first three or four steps, to give the rear-rank man time to conform to the movement. If the wheel be to the side of the rear-rank man, this man conforms himself to the movement of the front-rank man, by describing a short arc of a circle. Each file wheels on the same spot where the first wheeled.

To halt the company, marching by a flank, and to face it to the front.

COMPANY, HALT. FRONT–FACE.—At the word FACE, the company faces to the left, if marching by the right flank, and to the right if marching by the left flank: and the captain, covering sergeant, and the left guide, return to their places in line.

Digitized by Google

Marching by a flank, to form on right (or left) by file into line. (FIG. 3.)

The march being supposed to be by the right flank.

ON RIGHT, BY FILE INTO LINE–MARCH. — At the word MARCH, the rear-rank marks time; the captain and covering sergeant turn to the right, march six paces forward, and halt; the captain places himself on the line to direct the alignment as the men of the front-rank successively arrive on it; the covering sergeant places himself behind the captain, at the distance of the rear-rank; the first man of the front-rank continues to march, passes behind the covering sergeant, turns to the right, and places himself by the left side of the captain; the second man of the same rank passes behind the first, turns to the right, and places himself on the left of the first, and thus in succession to the last man of this rank: the rear-rank marks time until two men of the front-rank are formed, when it executes the movement in like manner, each man covering his file-leader.

In marching by the left flank, the movement is executed by inverse means, substituting in the command the word LEFT, for RIGHT. The captain and the left guide return to their places in line as soon as the company is formed and aligned.

Marching by the flank to form by company or by platoon into line. (FIG. 4.)

The march being supposed by the right flank.

BY COMPANY INTO LINE–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the covering sergeant continues to march straight forward; the men advance the right shoulder and march in quick time, diagonally, into line with the covering sergeant, taking the step from him as they successively arrive in line one after the other. The rear-rank men conform to the movement of their file-leaders. The captain superintends the execution of the movement, and, when the company is formed, gives the words *guide left*, and places himself two paces in front of the centre, taking the step of the company.

Marching by the flank to form platoon.

BY PLATOON INTO LINE–MARCH.—The movement is executed by each platoon according to the above principles,

Digitized by Google

the captain and first lieutenant, as their respective platoons are formed, giving the words *guide left.*

In marching by the left flank, these movements are executed by the same commands and according to the same principles, the words *guide right* being substituted for *guide left*, the moment the formation is ended.

Marching by the front, to march by a flank.

COMPANY, BY RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK–MARCH —The movement is executed in the manner prescribed in the squad drill.

The company marching by a flank, may be marched by the front by the same commands and means.

Marching in column by platoon, to march by the flank in the same direction.

COLUMN. BY RIGHT FLANK—Each chief of platoon goes to its right to conduct it.

BY FILE LEFT–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, each platoon faces to the right in marching, wheels by file to the left and marches forward: the leading file of the second platoon unites with the rear-file of the first, the chief and guide of the second passing through the interval to their places as file-closers.

With the left in front, the movement is executed by inverse means, substituting in the commands LEFT for RIGHT, and RIGHT for LEFT. The captain conducts the left flank and the covering sergeant returns to his place in rear of the last file.

To break from line into column by platoon (Fig. 5.)

The company being at a halt.

BY PLATOON, RIGHT WHEEL. The chiefs of platoon place themselves in front of their platoons; the covering sergeant replacing the captain in the front-rank.

MARCH.—The right front-rank man of each platoon faces to the right, the covering sergeant standing fast; the chief of each platoon moves a little beyond the point at which the marching flank will rest when the wheel is completed, faces to the late rear, and places himself so that the line which he forms with the man on the right, who has faced shall be perpendicular to that occupied by the company in

Digitized by Google

line. Each platoon wheels according to the principles prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot, and when the man who conducts the marching flank, arrives within three paces of the perpendicular, the chief gives the words *platoon halt.* The covering sergeant, and the second sergeant then move to the point where the left of their respective platoons is to rest, and are aligned by their chiefs on the man of their respective platoons who had faced to the right. Each chief aligns his platoon by the left, giving the words *left–dress,* followed by *front,* and takes his place in column.

To break by platoon to the left, is executed according the same principles, and by inverse means.

To march in column.

The guide of the leading platoon takes two points on the ground in a straight line to the front.

COLUMN FORWARD. GUIDE LEFT–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the whole steps off together; the guide of the second platoon marching exactly in the trace of the guide of the first, and preserving between the latter and himself a distance precisely equal to the front of his platoon.

A column, left in front, is put in march according to the same principles, substituting in the commands GUIDE RIGHT for GUIDE LEFT.

To change direction, marching in column. FIG. 6, 7.

A marker is placed on the direction of the guide, at the point at which the change is to take place, presenting his breast to that flank of the column.

The leading guide directs his march, so that in coming up his left arm may graze the breast of the marker. When the leading platoon arrives within four paces of the marker, its chief gives the words *left turn,* and adds *march,* the moment the left guide is opposite the marker. The guide and the platoon turn to the left, conforming to what is prescribed in the squad drill; the guide, the moment he has turned, takes points on the ground in the new direction. The second platoon continues to march forward until up with the marker, when it turns by the same commands and according to the same principles which governed the first.

To change direction to the side opposite the guide; when

Digitized by Google

the guide of the first platoon is within four paces of the marker, its chief gives the words *right–wheel*, followed by *march*, the instant the guide is opposite the marker. The wheel being nearly ended the chief gives the word *forward*, and when completed *march*, when the platoon moves forward. The second platoon wheels on the same ground where the first had wheeled, and by the same commands from its chief.

With the left in front, changes of direction are made according to the same principles and by inverse means.

To halt the column, and wheel it into line. (FIG. 8.)

COLUMN–HALT.—At the word HALT, the column halts and the guides stand fast: their position is next rectified, if necessary.

LEFT–DRESS.—Each chief of platoon, placing himself two paces outside of his guide, directs the alignment of his platoon perpendicularly to the direction, gives the word *front*, and returns to his place in column.

LEFT INTO LINE WHEEL–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the front-rank man on the left of each platoon, faces to the left, placing his breast against the arm of the guide by his side, who stands fast, and the platoons wheel to the left, on the principles of wheels from a halt. Each chief, when the marching flank of his platoon is three paces from the line, gives the words *platoon*, *halt*, and the chief of the second returns to his place as a file-closer. The captain then goes to the point where the right of the company will rest in line, and aligns the company by the right, giving the words *right–dress*, followed by *front*.

GUIDES–POSTS.—The covering sergeant covers the captain, and the left guide retires to his place as a file-closer.

If the left be in front, the wheel to the right into line, is executed on the same principles, and by inverse means; the captain after halting the first platoon, goes to the left of the company to align it by the left, and shifts to his proper flank at the command GUIDES–POSTS.

To diminish and increase front of column in marching.

Diminishing. (FIG. 9.)

Marching in column, supposed by company.

BREAK INTO PLATOON.—The first lieutenant passes

Digitized by Google

around the left to the centre of his platoon, and cautions it to *mark-time.*

MARCH.—The first platoon continues to march forward; the second platoon marks time until clear of the first, when its chief gives the words, *right oblique–march*, and adds *forward–march* the instant the guide of his platoon covers the guide of the first platoon; the guide of the first having placed himself on the left of his platoon the instant that flank was disengaged.

Increasing. (FIG. 10.)

FORM COMPANY.—The captain cautions the first platoon to oblique to the right.

MARCH.—The first platoon obliques to the right, (the covering sergeant shifting to the right flank,) and when it has nearly unmasked the second, the captain gives the words, *mark–time*, followed by *march*, the instant it completes the unmasking. The second platoon continues to move forward, and when nearly up with the first, the captain gives the word *forward*, followed by *march*, the instant the two platoons unite, when they move forward together.

In column, left in front, these movements are executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Diminishing and increasing front of column by files.

Files are broken off from the directing flank only; that is, from the left flank, if the right be in front, and from the right flank, if the left be in front.

The company marching and supposed to constitute part of a column right in front, the captain, on a caution to that effect, gives the words, *one file from left to rear*, *march*, when the left file marks time, and as soon as the rear-rank of the company has passed the men of that file respectively, they take post as follows: the rear-rank man of the file, behind the second file from the left, and the front-rank man, behind the first file, and thus continue the march.

If another file is to break off, the same command is given, when the file already broken off, moves the space of one file to the right, leaving room for the next file to break off, and forms in its rear.

If several files are to break off at the same time, the files named mark time, each rank advances a little the left shoul

Digitized by Google

der, as it is cleared by the rear-rank of the company, obliques in rank, and places itself behind one of the two nearest files, as already prescribed.

To cause files in rear to form into line, the captain, on a caution to that effect, gives the words, *one file into line, march*, when the front-file returns quickly into line, and the remaining files incline the space of one file to the left.

If several files are to move up into line at the same time, the files designated advance the right shoulder, and move up and form on the flank of the company by the shortest lines.

The guide of the directing flank shifts his position, so as to be always next, on that flank, to the front-rank man remaining in line. The file-closers who had been posted behind the files broken off, march abreast of their respecti files, as in other flank marches.

To march in column of route, and to execute the movements incident thereto.

The length of the route step is twenty-eight inches, and ninety in a minute.

The company supposed to constitute part of a column at a halt.

COLUMN FORWARD, GUIDE LEFT (or RIGHT) ROUTE STEP–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the ranks step off together; the rear-rank takes, in marching, a distance of one pace from the front-rank; the men carry their arms *at will*, and are not required to keep silence or to march in the cadenced step; but the ranks are not to intermix, or to open at too great a distance.

Change of direction is executed without formal commands, on a caution from the captain. The rear-rank changes direction on the same ground on which the front-rank had changed, the pivot man, on the reverse flank, taking steps of fourteen, instead of nine inches, to clear the wheeling point.

To pass to closed ranks and the cadenced step.

SHOULDER–ARMS. CLOSE ORDER–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the rear-rank regains the habitual distance, and resumes the cadenced pace.

To resume the route step.

ROUTE–STEP–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the company resumes the route march as above.

Digitized by Google

To march by a flank in the same direction.

Arms are first shouldered and ranks closed as above, when COMPANY BY RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK. BY FILE LEFT (or RIGHT) MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the company faces in marching and wheels by file, in the direction indicated. If any files are broken off to the rear, they regain their places by wheeling, and follow the movement of the company.

Marching in the route step, to diminish and increase front by platoon.

The same commands and means are observed, as if the march were in the cadenced step, except that in the platoon which obliques, each man half faces to the right or left, and thus marches diagonally till the platoon covers or unmasks the other platoon.

To diminish front by section.

The captain causes arms to be shouldered, ranks closed, and then gives the words, *break into sections—march.* The movement is executed according to the principles indicated for the same movement by platoon in the cadenced step. As soon as the sections are formed, the route step is resumed by the proper commands.

To increase front by section.

The captain causes arms to be shouldered, ranks closed, and then gives the words, *form platoons, march.* As soon as the platoons are formed, the route step is resumed by the proper commands.

Files are broken off, and formed into line, according to the principles already prescribed, the ranks being first closed and arms shouldered.

When a column, marching in the route step, halts, the rear-rank closes to its habitual distance at the word HALT, and the whole shoulder-arms.

Countermarch. (FIG. 11.)

The company being at a halt, and supposed to constitute part of a column.

COUNTERMARCH COMPANY BY RIGHT FLANK. RIGHT-FACE.—The company faces to the right, the two guides to the right-about: the captain goes to the right of his

Digitized by Google

company, causes two files to break to the rear, and places himself beside the leading front-rank man.

BY FILE LEFT–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, both guides stand fast; the company steps off; the first file, conducted by the captain, wheels round the right guide, and directs its march along the front-rank, so as to arrive behind, and two paces from, the left guide; each file wheels, in succession, around the right guide; when the leading file is opposite the left guide, the captain gives the words, *company, halt, front-face, right-dress*, aligns the company on the two guides, and adds *front:* he then places himself before the centre of his company, and the two guides shift to their proper places, passing by the front-rank.

A column by platoon is countermarched by the same commands and according to the same principles.

With the left in front, the countermarch is executed by inverse commands and means, but according to the same principles; the column facing to the left, and wheeling by file to the right, passing always by the front-rank.

Marching in column by platoon, to form on right (or left into line. (FIG. 12.)

A marker is posted at a point where the right of the company is to rest in line, presenting his left shoulder to that line. This point should be *nine* paces in advance of the firs platoon after it has turned.

ON RIGHT INTO LINE. GUIDE–RIGHT.—The guide of each platoon shifts to the right flank, and the men touch elbows to the right. When the head of the column is nearly opposite the marker, the chief of the first platoon gives the words, *right-turn*, and when exactly opposite adds—*march*. The first platoon turns to the right, its guide so directing his march, as to bring the man next on his left opposite the marker. When this platoon is near the line, its chief gives the word *platoon*, followed by *halt*, when within three paces of the line. The platoon halts, and the files not yet in line come up. The guide throws himself on the line opposite the left file of his platoon, faces to and is aligned on the marker. The chief of the platoon then places himself where the right of the company is to rest, and aligns his platoon on the guide and marker, giving the words *right-dress*. The second platoon continues to march

Digitized by Google

forward, until its guide is opposite the left file of the first when it turns to the right at the command of its chief, and is halted in the manner prescribed for the first: at the instant it halts, the guide throws himself on the line opposite its left file, and the chief giving the words *right-dress*, takes his place as file-closer, passing around the left. The captain aligns the company and gives the word *front*.

GUIDES–POSTS.—The two guides return to their places in line.

With the left in front, the line is formed on the left according to the same principles but by inverse means; the captain after halting the first platoon proceeding to the left of the company to align it, and shifting to his proper flank a the words GUIDES-POSTS.

As often as a company or battalion, marching otherwise than at carried arms, halts, it carries arms at the word *halt* this rule is general.

MANUAL OF ARMS.

For Sergeants.

The sergeants, like the rank and file, will always, under arms, appear with bayonets fixed.

All sergeants, including the sergeant-major and the quartermaster sergeant, also corporals of the colour-guard, and all corporals not in the ranks and files, will carry and handle their arms as will herein be prescribed, *for sergeants*.

Sergeants, in the manual of arms, will observe in all the *times*, the cadence prescribed for the rank and file. In the loadings and firings they will remain at the shoulder, or support arms, according to the order which they may receive.

Position of Shouldered Arms.

The piece within the right arm, the barrel to the rear, erect and resting against the hollow of the shoulder; the right arm nearly straight, the right hand embracing the cock and guard, and the left arm hanging by the side.

PRESENT–ARMS.—1st mo. With the right hand bring the piece erect, opposite to the centre of the body, the rammer to the front; at the same time seize the piece with the

Digitized by Google

left hand above the lock, the little finger against the feather-spring, the thumb extended along the barrel and on the stock, the fore-arm resting on the body without constraint, and the hand at the height of the elbow.

2d mo. Correct the position of the right hand, so as to bring it under and against the guard, as in the case of the men.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Glide the left hand, on the piece, to the height of the shoulder, and with this hand bring the piece erect against the right shoulder; embrace, with the right hand, the cock and guard, the right arm nearly straight.

2d mo. Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

ORDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Bring the left hand promptly to the middle band; detach the piece a little from the shoulder with the right hand; quit the hold of the right hand; lower the piece with the left, seizing it again with the right above the lower band, the thumb on the barrel, the four fingers extended on the stock, the piece erect, the butt about three inches from the ground, the toe (or beak) of the butt over its place, and drop the left hand by the side.

2d mo. Let the piece glide through the right hand, opening a little the thumb and fingers, so that the butt may come to the ground, without shock, its toe in a line with and against the toe of the right foot.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. With the right hand raise the piece perpendicularly, the hand to the height of the right breast opposite to the shoulder, but further out, and about two inches from the body, on which the right elbow will rest; seize the piece with the left hand under the right; drop the right hand, and with it embrace the cock and guard, supporting the piece against the right shoulder, the right arm nearly straight.

2d mo. Let the left hand fall smartly by the side.

SUPPORT-ARMS.—1st mo. With the right hand bring the piece erect between the eyes, the rammer to the front, seize the piece with the left hand at the lower band, raise this hand to the height of the chin, and grasp the piece at the same time about four inches below the lock with the right hand.

2d mo. With the right hand turn the piece, the barrel to the front, support it against the left shoulder, and bring the

Digitized by Google

left fore-arm between the cock and right hand, horizontally across the body, the cock resting on the left fore-arm, and the left hand on the right breast.

3d mo. Drop smartly the right hand by the side.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Seize the piece with the right hand, under and against the left fore-arm.

2d mo. Bring the piece erect with the right hand against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; seize it with the left hand at the height of the shoulder; correct the position of the right hand at the same time so as to embrace the cock and guard, the right arm nearly straight.

3d mo. Drop smartly the left hand by the side.

UNFIX-BAYONET.—1st mo. Bring the left hand promptly to the middle band, detach a little the piece from the shoulder with the right hand.

2d mo. Lower the piece with the left hand, seize it with the right above the lower band; rest the butt on the ground, letting the piece glide through the left hand; bring the right hand immediately to the bayonet.

3d mo. Wrest off the bayonet and return it to the scabbard; next seize the piece with the right hand a little above the lower band; drop the left hand at the same time by the side, and take the position of the soldier at ordered arms.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—As from order-arms.

FIX-BAYONET.—1st and 2d mo. As those of *unfix-bayonet*, except that at the end of the second motion the right hand will be brought to seize the bayonet by the socket and shank, so that the socket may extend about an inch above the heel of the hand.

3d mo. Draw the bayonet from the scabbard with the right hand, carry and fix it on the muzzle; next seize the piece with the right hand above the lower band, and drop smartly the left hand by the side.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—As from order-arms.

For Corporals.

To pass from the shoulder, as private, to the shoulder as sergeant.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. With the right hand seize the piece at the handle, turn it, the lock to the front, as in the first motion of *present-arms*.

2d mo. Carry the piece, with the right hand, erect against

Digitized by Google

the right shoulder, the rammer to the front, the right arm nearly straight, the right hand embracing the cock and guard seize the piece with the left hand at the height of the shoulder.

3d mo. Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

For Corporals of the Colour-guard, (or Sergeants.)

CHARGE-BAYONET.—1st mo. Raise the piece with the right hand, in half-facing to the right on the left heel and bring the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and three inches from, the left heel.

2d mo. Drop the piece forward into the left hand, which will seize it a little above the lower band, the barrel up, the left elbow supported against the body; with the right hand seize the handle below the guard, this hand supported against the hip, the point of the bayonet at the height of the eye.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. In facing to the front, raise the piece with the left hand, bring it erect against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; with the right hand at the same time embrace the cock and guard.

2d mo. Quit hold with the left hand, and drop this hand by the side; lengthen at the same time the right arm.

For Corporals returning to the Ranks.

SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st mo. Detach the piece from the shoulder, bring it erect between the eyes, seize it with the left hand at the height of the neck; grasp, with the right hand, the handle, this hand at the height of the elbow, the rammer to the front.

2d mo. Raise the piece with the right hand, the thumb extended on the counter-plate; turn the barrel to the front; support the piece against the left shoulder; at the same time drop the left hand and place it under the butt.

3d mo. Drop the right hand smartly by the side.

MANUAL OF THE SWORD OR SABRE FOR OFFICERS.

Position of the Sword or Sabre under Arms.

THE CARRY.—The gripe in the right hand, which will be supported against the right hip, the back of the blade against the shoulder.

Digitized by Google

To Salute with the Sword or Sabre.

1st. At the distance of six paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sword or sabre perpendicularly, the point up, the flat of the blade opposite to the right eye, the guard at the height of the shoulder, the elbow supported on the body.

2d. Drop the point of the sword or sabre in extending the arm, so that the right hand may be brought to the side of the right thigh, and remain in that position until the person to whom the salute is rendered shall be passed, or shall have passed six paces.

3d. Raise the sword or sabre smartly, and resume the position first prescribed.

COLOUR-SALUTE.

In the ranks, the colour-bearer, whether at a halt or in march, will always carry the heel of the colour-lance supported at the right hip, the right hand generally placed on the lance at the height of the shoulder, to hold it steady. When the colour has to render honors, the colour-bearer will salute as follows:

At the distance of six paces, glide the right hand along the lance to the height of the eye; lower the lance by straightening the arm to its full extent, the heel of the lance remaining at the hip, and bring back the lance to the habitual position when the person saluted shall be passed, or shall have passed six paces.

INSTRUCTION

FOR THE DRUM MAJOR (OR PRINCIPAL MUSICIAN.)

In column in manœuvre, the field music and band will march abreast with the left centre company on the reverse flank.

In column in route, as well as in the passage of defiles to the front or in retreat, they will march at the head of their respective battalions.

Beats of the Drum and Sounds of the Bugle.

The number of beats of the drum for the assembly, pa-

Digitized by Google

rade; and movements of the infantry, independent of mere police calls and the particular march of the regiment, is fixed at nineteen. These beats are:

1. The general.
2. The assembly.
3. To the colour.
4. The long roll.
5. Common time.
6. Quick time.
7. The reveillee.
8. The troop.
9. The retreat.
10. The tattoo.
11. To recall detachments.
12. Drummer's call.
13. Come for orders:
    First sergeant's call.
    Sergeant's call.
    Corporal's call.
14. The roll.
15. Double quick time.
16. Run.
17. Halt.
18. March in retreat.
19. Commence firing.

The number of bugle sounds is fixed at twenty-two, exclusive of the particular march of each regiment. These sounds are:

1. The general.
2. The assembly.
3. To the colour.
4. Common time.
5. Quick time.
6. The reveillee.
7. The retreat.
8. The tattoo.
9. To recall detachments.
10. Bugler's call.
11. Come for orders:
    First sergeant's call.
    Sergeant's call.
    Corporal's call.
12. Double quick march.
13. Run.
14. Forward march.
15. Halt.
16. March in retreat.
17. Commence firing.
18. Cease firing.
19. March by the right flank.
20. March by the left flank.
21. Rally on the reserve.
22. Rally on the battalion.

Signals of the Drum Major (or principal Musician) for the different beats.

1. *The general.* Extend the right arm, seize the staff at the middle, and raise the pommel to the height of the chin.
2. *The assembly.* Extend the right arm, raise the staff about a foot from the ground, and place the thumb on the pommel.

Digitized by Google

3. *To the colour.*	Raise the staff perpendicularly the ferrule upwards, the arm extended and at the height of the shoulder.
4. *The long roll.*	Put the staff on the right shoulder, the ferrule to the rear.
5. *Common time.*	Raise the arm, turn the wrist within, and place the staff horizontally across the body at the height of the chin.
6. *Quick time*	Project the ferrule of the staff direct and horizontally to the front.
7. *Double quick time.*	The same signal, with a brisk agitation of the staff.
10. *Run.*	Raise the staff perpendicularly the ferrule down, the arm extended at the height of the shoulder
12. *The roll.*	Raise the staff in the left hand in the manner of the last signal.

Signals for the movements of the Field Music and Band

1st. To march by the right flank, take the staff at the middle and extend the arm to the right.

2d. To march by the left flank, make the same signal, extending the arm to the left.

3d. To diminish front, let the ferrule fall into the left hand, held as high as the eyes.

4th. To increase front, let the pommel of the staff fall into the left hand, held as high as the eyes.

5th. To change direction, turn half round to the drummers, and indicate to them, by a movement of the staff, to which side they are to wheel or turn.

6th. To oblique to the right, extend the right arm as high as the shoulder, holding the staff slantingly, and grasp the ferrule, the left hand as high as the hip.

7th. To oblique to the left, make the contrary signal; the pommel of the staff will always indicate to which side the obliquing is to take place.

To Ground Drums, &c.

1. *To put up drumsticks.*	Grasp the staff under the pommel, and raise it as high as the eyes, extending the arm to the front.

Digitized by Google

2. *To unsling drums.*	Draw the pommel to the breast.
3. *To ground drums.*	The same signal as for putting up drumsticks.
1. *To take up drums.*	Make the same signals with the staff as for putting up drumsticks, for detaching drums, and for grounding drums.
2. *To suspend drums.*	
3. *To draw out drumsticks.*	

Instruction for the Corporal of Pioneers.

In column in manœuvre, the pioneers will be on the reverse flank, abreast with the right centre company.

In route marches, as also in passing defiles to the front or rear, the pioneers will march six paces in front of the drummers. In route marches, all the pioneers of a general column (column of several battalions) may be assembled at its head.

Pioneers and drummers may be designated as markers, and used accordingly, in the manœuvres and evolutions.

Digitized by Google

MANUAL OF ARMS.

For Rifle.

The manual of arms with the rifle is the same as that prescribed in Part I. pages 49, 50, 51, and 52, for *sergeants* with the musket, with the following in addition:

TRAIL-ARMS.—1st Mo. As the first motion of *Order-arms*. 2d Mo. Incline a little the muzzle to the front, the butt to the rear, and about three inches from the ground: the right hand supported at the hip, sustains the piece so that the man in the rear-rank may not touch with it the man in his front.

SHOULDER-ARMS. At the word *shoulder*, raise the piece perpendicularly in the right hand; at the word *arms*, execute what is prescribed for the shoulder, from *order-arms*.

LOAD IN TWELVE TIMES.—LOAD.—1st Mo. Raise the piece with the right hand, in half-facing to the right on the left heel, and bring the hollow of the right foot against the left heel.

2d Mo. Bring down the piece with the right hand into the left, which, at the instant, seizes it at the tail-pipe, the thumb extended on the stock, the butt under the right fore-arm, the handle against the body and about two inches under the right breast, the muzzle at the height of the eye, the guard turned a little out, the left elbow supported against the side. At the instant the piece falls into the left hand, the right thumb is placed on the steel above the flint, the fingers closed, the right fore-arm along the butt.

2. OPEN-PAN.—Open the pan, by pushing forward the steel with the right thumb, the left hand resisting and holding the piece firm; draw back immediately the right elbow, carry the hand to the cartridge-box, passing it between the butt and the body, and open the box.

3. HANDLE-CARTRIDGE.—Seize a cartridge with the thumb and the two next fingers, and place it between the teeth, the right hand passing between the butt of the piece and the body.

4. TEAR-CARTRIDGE.—Tear the paper down to the powder, holding the cartridge upright between the thumb and next two fingers; in this position place it against the

Digitized by Google

pan, the palm of the right hand turned towards the body, the right elbow supported on the butt.

5. PRIME.—Drop the head a little, fix the eyes on the pan, fill it with powder, press together the top of the cartridge with the thumb and fore-finger, raise the head, and place the two last fingers of the right hand firmly behind and against the steel.

6. SHUT-PAN.—Resisting the motion with the left hand, shut the pan smartly with the fingers behind the steel, holding carefully the cartridge with the two next fingers and the thumb; seize immediately the handle with the two remaining fingers and the palm of the right hand, the right wrist touching the body, the elbow back and a little detached from the body.

7. CAST-ABOUT.—Face to the front, bring the right foot to its original position, carry the piece, with the barrel outward, sliding it through the left hand, to the ground, the butt between the heels, the barrel between the knees, which must be sufficiently bent for that purpose, the right hand holding the cartridge near the muzzle, the left hand grasping the piece near the middle pipe.

8. CHARGE-CARTRIDGE.—Fix the eye on the muzzle, turn quickly the back of the right hand towards the body, in order to discharge the powder into the barrel; raise the elbow to the height of the wrist, shake the cartridge, force it into the muzzle, and leave the hand reversed, the fingers closed but not clenched.

9. DRAW-RAMMER.—Drop smartly the right elbow and seize the rammer between the thumb and fore-finger bent, the other fingers shut; draw it smartly with the right hand, with the left grasp the rammer the breadth of a hand from the bottom and sink it one inch into the barrel.

10. RAM-CARTRIDGE.—Force the rammer down with both hands; with the left hand seize the piece near the middle-pipe; with the fore-finger and thumb of the right hand seize the end of the rammer, the right elbow touching the body.

11. RETURN-RAMMER.—Draw briskly the rammer and return it with the right hand, resting the ball of the hand on the head of the rammer.

12. SHOULDER-ARMS.—1st Mo. Carry the piece, with the left hand, to the right shoulder, turning the guard

Digitized by Google

outwards, and embrace with the right hand, the cock and guard.

2d Mo. Drop the left hand smartly by the left side.

To *load in four times* and *at will*, execute what is prescribed in page 20, Part I. under those heads.

The *firings* are executed in the same manner with the rifle as with the musket.—See Part I. pages 16 and 17.

TAKING ARMS TO PIECES.

Order in which the parts of a musket should be taken off.—1. The bayonet.—2. The ramrod.—3. The side screws.—4. The side plate.—5. The lock.—6. The upper band.—7. The upper band spring.—8. The middle band.—9. The middle band spring.—10. The trigger wire.—11. Trigger.—12. The tang screw.—13. The lower band.—14. The lower band spring.—15. The barrel.—16. The guard screw.—17. The guard.—18. The butt plate screw.—19. The butt plate.

Order in which the lock is taken apart.—First let down the cock.—1. The main spring screw.—2. The main spring (after compressing it with the spring vice.)—3. The sear spring screw (before turning this screw entirely outstrike the elbow of the spring with the screw-driver, so as to dis engage the pivot from its mortice.)—4. The sear spring.—5. The sear screw.—6. The sear.—7. The bridle screw.—8. The bridle.—9. The tumbler screw.—10. The tumbler (it is driven out with a punch inserted in the screw hole.)—11. The cock.—12. The battery screw (after compressing the battery spring with the spring vice.)—13. The battery.—14. The battery spring screw.—15. The battery spring.—16. The pan screw.—17. The pan.—18. The flint screw.—19. The upper jaw.

The lock and the musket are put together in the inverse order of taking them apart.

Before replacing a screw, put a small drop of *sperm oil* in the screw hole or on the point of the screw; put a drop of oil also on the arbor and pivot of the tumbler; between the moveable branches of the springs and the lock plate; on the hook and notches of the tumbler and on the toe of the battery, after the lock is put together. Take care that the screws are not turned in too hard, so as to make the limbs

Digitized by Google

bind; to insure this, try the motion of each limb before and after its spring is mounted, and see that it moves freely and without friction. The breech screw should be taken out only by an armourer, and *never* in ordinary cleaning.

Each soldier should have a screw-driver and a wiper, and each squad of 10, a wire, and tumbler punch and a spring vice. *No other implements should be used in taking arms apart, or in setting them up.*

Cleaning and care of Arms.

For the iron and steel parts when much rusted, use fine emery, sifted, and moistened with oil; when slightly rusted, use rotten stone or brick dust, sifted very fine, moistened likewise with oil. For the brass parts, use rotten stone or fine brick dust moistened with vinegar or water; these parts should not be greased. Make use of a hand brush, or a piece of soft wood, such as white pine, or cedar. Remove the dirt from the screw holes by screwing a piece of soft wood into them. Wipe the parts clean with a linen rag, (leaving a *little oil* on the inner parts of the lock) but never *burnish* them.

To clean the exterior of the barrel, lay it flat on a bench, or table, or piece of board, in order to avoid bending it. After firing, the barrel should be always washed, when the water comes off clear, wipe the barrel dry, and then pass into it a rag moistened with oil.

To take off the barrel: after removing the bands and the tang screw, hold the stock and barrel lightly with the left hand about 6 inches from the breech, the barrel down, with the muzzle about an inch from the ground; strike with the right hand on the handle of the stock until the barrel is disengaged from the groove, supporting the barrel with the left hand, until it can be seized by the right hand and separated from the stock.

The main spring should never be heated for the purpose of either raising or lowering its temper; this destroys the elasticity of the spring, and the lock no longer gives fire. Fix the flint with care, the bevel uppermost, and the edge parallel to the face of the battery; the flint cap should not project much beyond the jaws of the cock. When the flint becomes dull, renew the edge by striking gently with the screw-driver on the upper side, supporting it underneath with the fore-finger of the left hand, to avoid breaking off too much.

Digitized by Google

Cartridges for small arms.

KIND.	Balls.		Charges of Powder.				Remarks.
	Diameter.	Number in 1 pound.	Weight.	Number in 1 pound.	Ratio to weight of ball.	Blank cartridges.	
	In.		grains			grs.	
Musket, - - - - -	0.64	18	130	54	1-3d	117	Musket powder.
Musketoon, - - - -	0.64	18	85	82	2-9ths	77	
Hall's and common rifle,	0.525	32	100	70	4-9ths	90	Rifle powder.
Pistol, - - - - -	0.525	32	50	140	2-9ths	45	

These charges include priming, about 6 grains, to 12 grains, for all arms which have not percussion locks.

Buckshot are 0.3 in. in diameter: weight about 170 to 1 pound.

Cartridges are made either with *single ball*, 1 *ball and* 3 *buckshot*, or sometimes, with 12 *buckshot*, and they are designated accordingly.

Making Balls.

Weigh the lead; fill the kettle and cover it; as the lead melts add more, until it comes within 3 inches of the edge of the kettle; then cover it with a layer of powdered charcoal 1 inch thick; push the heat until paper in contact with the lead is inflamed by it.

Immerse the ladle (having a lip on the lift side) and fill it about three-quarters full of lead covered with charcoal, which is kept back with a piece of wood, in running the lead; fill the mould; the first castings are thrown back into the kettle, being imperfect from the moulds being cold; the moulds must be carefully cleaned when it is perceived the lead sticks to them. Extract the balls and trim them.

The balls are smoothed by putting 100 pounds of them into a rolling barrel, and rolling them for three minutes. The barrel is two feet long and one foot diameter, made of hard thick staves, with but little bilge and hooped with iron; it has a small scuttle in the bilge, with hinges and a hasp and staple; the barrel has a gudgeon in each head, and is turned by a crank in a frame, to which a hopper may be attached.

Digitized by Google

Making Cartridges.

Dimensions of Paper for Cartridges.		Sheets.		Trapezoids.			
		Length.	Breadth.	Height.	Long side.	Short side.	Number in one sheet.
		In.	In.	In.	In.	In.	
Musket.	Single ball, or ball and buckshot,	16.5	13	4.33	5.25	3	12
	Blank,	20	15	4	4.75	2.75	20
	12 Buckshot,	16.5	13	5.5	5	3	9
Rifle.	Ball,	16 5	13	4	4.25	2.25	16
	Blank,	20	15	3	4.25	2.25	30
Pistol.	Ball,	16.5	13	3.3	4.25	2.25	20
	Blank,	20	15	2.5	4.25	2.25	36

The paper is first cut into strips of a width equal to the length of a trapezoid, and then into trapezoids, by means of the patterns; cut about 12 sheets at a time, on a *cutting board*, with a *laboratory* (shoe) *knife*.

Implements and utensils for making the cylinders.—*Boxes* for the empty cylinders, interior dimensions 20 inches long, 8 inches wide, and 5 inches high, without a cover, placed on the *table*, so that the opening shall face the workman; a small enclosure or *locker* for balls at the right hand of the workman; *spool of thread*, turning on a vertical iron spindle fixed in the table near the shot locker; *choking string*, made by twisting together four or five cartridge threads, fastened to the table at the right hand of the workman; *scissors* to cut the thread; *former*, cylindrical, of hard wood, six or seven inches in length, and of the diameter of the ball, one end convex, the other concave, to receive one-third of the ball.

Take the paper in the left hand, the former in the right: lay the paper on the table, with the side perpendicular to the base towards the workman, the broad end to the left; place the former with its convex end at the broad end of the paper; turn it so as to envelope it with the paper, then with the left hand laid flat upon the paper, roll all the paper upon the former; seize it with the left hand, and with the choking string in the right hand, take one turn around the cylinder at about half an inch from the end, to which distance the end of the former is withdrawn: hold

Digitized by Google

the former firmly in the left hand, and draw gently upon the choking string, pressing, at the same time, with the left forefinger, upon the projecting end of the cylinder, thus, folding it neatly, down upon the end of the former. Having choked the cylinder, carry it to the right side, and with the twine in the right hand, take two turns and a half hitch firmly around the part that has been choked; withdraw the former and introduce the ball, following it to the end of the cylinder with the former reversed; raise the whole again, and with the same thread, (which is never cut until the cartridge is finished,) take two half hitches just upon the upper side of the ball, between it and the concave end of the former; the operation is expedited by rolling the ball placed in the concave end of the former and choking the paper over it. Cut the thread and place the cartridge in the box.

For ball and buckshot cartridges.—Roll and choke the paper, put in 3 buckshot, follow them with the former, and take a half hitch of thread over them: then insert the ball as before.

Buckshot cartridges.—Have four tiers of 3 buckshot each, inserted like the first, with a half hitch between the tiers, and finishing with a double hitch.

For common rifles, the ball is prepared by being enveloped in a square piece of fine *muslin*, or of soft thin *leather*, or of *bladder*, tied over it and leaving a projecting end about half an inch long, which, after being trimmed with scissors, and the whole saturated with tallow, is introduced into the paper cylinder, which is choked over it and fastened by two turns and a double hitch.

Cylinders for blank cartridges are made by folding down the paper over the concave end of the charger, touching the fold with a little paste, and pressing it on a ball imbedded in the table for that purpose.

After the cylinders are filled, the paper is folded down by two rectangular folds, and the cartridges are bundled in wrappers, ten in each, placed in two tiers, the balls alternating.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

FIG. 1.

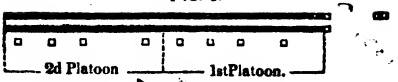


FIG. 2.

FIG. 3.

FIG. 4.

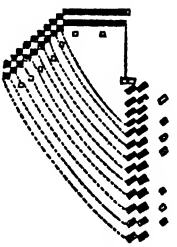


FIG 5.

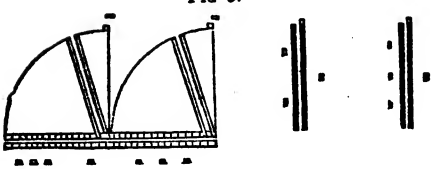
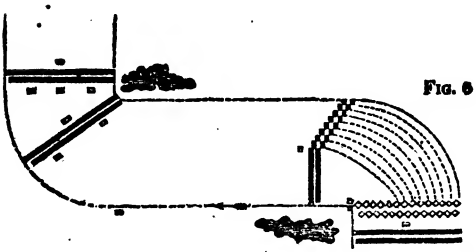


FIG. 7

FIG. 6



57 or

Digitized by Google

FIG. 8.

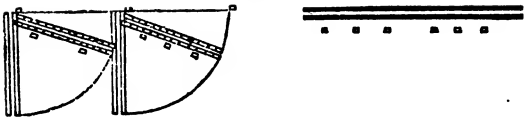


FIG. 9.

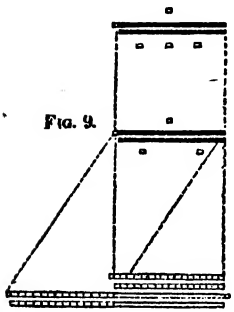


FIG. 10

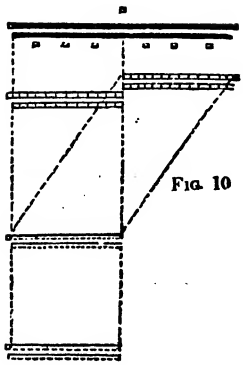
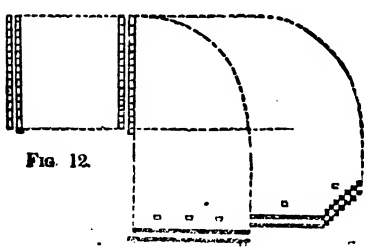


FIG. 11

FIG. 12.



Digitized by Google

PART I.

OF THE BATTALION.

Formation of a Regiment, or Battalion, in order of battle

(Fig. 1.)—The regiment or battalion is supposed to consist of ten companies, to wit: one grenadier company, one light infantry or rifle company, and eight battalion companies.

The battalion companies are drawn up according to the rank of their captains, as follows:—1st, 5th, 4th, 7th, 3d 8th, 6th, 2d, and are designated from right to left, *first* company, *second* company, *third* company, &c.

The grenadier company is posted on the right of the battalion, and the light infantry or rifle company, on the left of the battalion.

The two first companies on the right, whatever be their denomination, form the *first division:* the next two companies, the *second division;* and so on to the left.

The colour-bearer (a sergeant) and five corporals, as a colour-guard, are posted on the left of the right centre battalion company, of which they make a part. They are formed in two ranks, the colour-bearer in the front-rank, with a corporal on his right and left, and three corporals in the rear-covering. If there be two colours, then four corporals only will constitute the colour-guard. The colour-bearers will be in the front-rank, with a corporal between them, covered by three corporals in the rear.

The colour-company and all on its right are denominated the *right wing* of the battalion; the remaining companies, the *left wing*.

The colonel takes post thirty paces in rear of the file-closers, opposite to the centre of the battalion; the lieutenant-colonel and major opposite to the centres of the right and left wings respectively, and twelve paces in rear of the file-closers. The colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and major, are mounted.

Digitized by Google

The adjutant and sergeant-major are opposite to the right and left of the battalion respectively, and eight paces in rear of the file-closers; they aid the lieutenant-colonel and major respectively in the manœuvres.

The quartermaster, surgeon, and assistant-surgeon, drawn up in one rank, from right to left, in the order they are named, are posted on the left of the colonel, three paces in his rear.

The quartermaster sergeant is posted in a line with the front-rank of the field-music, and two paces on the right.

The pioneers, with the corporal of pioneers on their right, are formed in two ranks and posted on the right of the grenadiers, their left four paces from the right of that company.

The field-music is formed in two ranks, the drummers in the rear, and posted twelve paces in rear of the file-closers, the left opposite to the centre of the left centre company The senior principal musician is two paces in front of the field-music, the other two paces in the rear.

The band is formed in two ranks, and posted three paces in rear of the field-music.

Two sergeants, one denominated the *right general guide*, the other the *left general guide*, are posted in the line of file-closers, the first in the rear of the right, and the second in the rear of the left-flank of the battalion.

For manœuvring, the companies in each battalion are always equalized.

To open Ranks.

PREPARE TO OPEN RANKS.—At this command, the lieutenant-colonel and major place themselves on the right of the battalion to direct the alignment.

TO THE REAR OPEN ORDER.—The covering sergeants, and the covering corporal step off smartly four paces to the rear opposite to their places in line, and are aligned by the major on the covering corporal who inverts his piece and holds it erect between his eyes.

MARCH.—The rear-rank and file-closers step off to the rear in common time; the rear-rank passes a little in rear of its new line, halts, dresses to the right, and is aligned by the covering sergeants, superintended by the major. The file-closers fall back two paces from the rear-rank, and are

Digitized by Google

aligned by the lieutenant-colonel on the file closer of the left, who inverts his piece and holds it erect between his eyes.

FRONT.—The lieutenant-colonel and major return to their places in line.

To close Ranks.

CLOSE ORDER—MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the rear-rank closes to the front, each man covering his file leader.

Manual of Arms.

The ranks being closed, the manual of arms is executed in the following order:

Present-arms, - - -	Shoulder-arms,
Order-arms, - - -	Shoulder-arms,
Support-arms, - - -	Carry-arms,
Charge-bayonet, - - -	Shoulder-arms.

LOADINGS AT WILL AND THE FIRINGS.

Loading at will is executed by the commands and in the manner prescribed in the squad-drill; the officers and sergeants in the ranks, half face to the right with the men, and face to the front when the men next to them cast about.

The fire by company and by file, is always direct, that by battalion and by wing, is either direct or oblique; in the latter case the commanding officer gives the caution RIGHT (or LEFT) OBLIQUE, between the words READY and AIM. The colour-guard is not to fire, but to reserve itself for the defence of the colour.

The fire by Company.

FIRE BY COMPANY.—At this command, the captains and the covering sergeants place themselves in the manner prescribed for this fire in the company drill. The colour and its guard step back so as to bring the front-rank of the guard on a line with the rear-rank; these rules are general for all the different firings.

COMMENCE FIRING.—At this command, the right company of each division begins the fire, their captains giving the words (such) *company, ready, aim, fire, load*

Digitized by Google

The captains of the left companies of divisions, observe the same rule, each taking care not to give his first command, till he sees one or two pieces shouldered in the right company of his division: the captains of the right companies of divisions, after the first discharge, observe the same rule with regard to the left companies. In order that the right companies of divisions may not all fire at once, their captains, for the first discharge only, give the word *fire*, in succession from right to left.

The commanding officer causes the firing to cease by a short *roll*, when the captains and all the file-closers give the words *cease firing;* the men complete the loading and come to the shoulder: the roll is followed by a *tap* of the drum, when the captains, covering sergeants, and the colour-guard resume their places in line. These rules are general for all the firings.

The fire by Wing.

FIRE BY WING. RIGHT (or LEFT) WING. } The
READY. AIM. FIRE. LOAD. } wings

fire alternately, care being taken to see that one or two pieces are shouldered in the wing that has just fired before giving the first command for the other.

The fire by Battalion.

This is executed by the commands: FIRE BY BATTALION. BATTALION—READY. AIM. FIRE. LOAD.

The fire by File.

FIRE BY FILE. BATTALION. } At the command,
READY. COMMENCE FIRING. } COMMENCE FIRING,

the firing begins on the right of each company at the same time.

To fire by the Rear-rank.

FACE BY THE REAR-RANK.—The captains, covering sergeants, and the file-closers, conform to what is prescribed in the company drill, under this head. The colour-bearer passes into the rear-rank, the corporal of his file stepping before the corporal next on his own right, to let the colour-bearer pass, and then stepping in front of the colour-bearer to reform his file; the closing sergeant and covering

Digitized by Google

corporal change places; the lieutenant-colonel, adjutant, major, sergeant-major, field-music, and band, throw themselves before the front-rank, each opposite to his place in line, the first two passing round the right the others round the left of the battalion.

BATTALION—ABOUT-FACE.—The battalion faces about, the captains placing themselves in their intervals in the rear-rank, now front, and their covering sergeants behind them in the front-rank, now rear.

The different firings are executed by the same commands as if the battalion were faced by the front-rank. The right and left wings and companies, retain their former designations. The fire by file, commences on the left, now right, of each company. The captains, covering sergeants, and colour-guard, on the first command, take the places prescribed for them in the fires, with the front-rank leading.

To resume the proper Front.

FACE BY THE FRONT-RANK. } The battalion re-
BATTALION—ABOUT-FACE. } turns to its proper front in the manner prescribed for the FACE BY THE REAR-RANK.

To stack and resume Arms.

STACK-ARMS.—Arms are stacked in the manner prescribed in the squad-drill.

BREAK-RANKS—MARCH—At the word MARCH, the ranks disperse.

To return the battalion to the ranks, a short roll is given, during which the battalion re-forms behind the stacks of arms.

TAKE-ARMS.—This command is executed in the manner prescribed in the squad-drill.

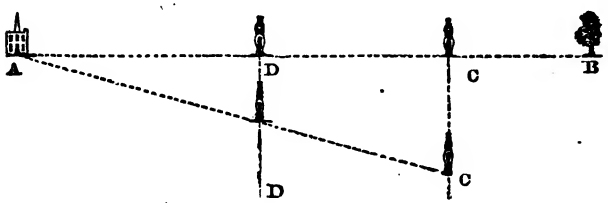
BATTALION.—At this word, the ranks fix their attention and remain immoveable.

Manner of determining a Line.

The commanding officer having determined on the direction of his line, and his points A B, sends out two officers C D, to seek two intermediate points in the same line; the officer D advances, when C finds him in the direct line between himself and the point A, he advances, taking care to

Digitized by Google

keep D always between himself and the point A, which he does by making him signals to advance or retire; when D finds C in the direct line between himself and B, he makes him the signal to halt, and they will find themselves in the intermediate points, C D.



Movements.

The following movements are arranged throughout as fo eight companies, but they are applicable to ten companies The movements are detailed as performed from the right the mode of doing them from the left is explained in eacl case.

In the successive formations, (see No.'s 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10 of *movements from open column*, No.'s 8, 9 and 10, *from close column*, and 1 and 2, *from column doubled on the centre*,) each captain causes his company to support arms the moment the captain, who follows him, commands *front.*

If the firing is to commence during the execution of the successive formations, the order to that effect is given to the captain whose company is first in line; this captain places himself behind the centre, and as soon as the next captain commands *front*, he commences *the fire by file.* At the words *fire by file*, the marker nearest the company just formed, places himself before the nearest file of that company, and the other marker retires. The captain of this last company commences the fire as soon as the captain of the next following company commands *front*; the marker retires, and the guide before the opposite flank places himself before the nearest file of the next company, and so on in continuation.

All the successive formations, except No. 8, from open column, may be formed by inversions, and they are executed

Digitized by Google

according to the same principles as formation in direct order, the first command always being, BY INVERSION. (See No. 5, from open column.)

The battalion being in line by inversion, to bring it back to the direct order, it first breaks or ploys, by company or by division, according as the column may have been, by company or by division, before it was formed in line by inversion.

When a battalion, in line by inversion, has to ploy into column, the movement is executed according to the same principles as if the line were in direct order; but observing the following rules:—If the column is to be by company or division, with the first in front, the caution, LEFT IN FRONT, is given in the command, because the battalion being in line by inversion, that subdivision is on the left. Each chief whose subdivision takes post in the column in front of the directing one, conducts his subdivision till it halts; and each chief whose subdivision takes post in rear of the directing one, halts in his own person when up with the preceding right guide, and sees his subdivision file past; and every chief aligns his subdivision by the right. When the column is to be put in march, the command GUIDE LEFT, is given, because the proper right is in front. For the same reason, if the last subdivision is to be in front, the words RIGHT IN FRONT, are given in the command; the divisions are aligned by the left; and in putting the column in march, the words GUIDE RIGHT, are given, because the proper left is in front.

In the movements, each chief of subdivision, previous to the order of execution, steps in front of his subdivision, and cautions it as to the particular movement it has to perform; the covering sergeants always replace their captains in the front rank, and the covering corporal retires to the line of file-closers.

MOVEMENTS FROM LINE.

Movement No. 1, from Line.

To break to the right into column. (FIG. 2.)

BY COMPANY. RIGHT-WHEEL. QUICK-MARCH. } At the word MARCH, each company wheels to the right on a fixed pivot, the left guide placing himself on the marching flank to conduct it; when that flank arrives within three paces of the point where it is to rest, the captain commands (such) *company-halt;* the left guide steps forward to the point where the left of the company is to rest,

Digitized by Google

and is aligned by the captain on the pivot man. Each captain aligns his company by the left, giving the words *left-dress*, followed by *front*, and takes his place in column.*

Wheeling to the left into column, is performed according to the same principles, but by inverse means.

Movement No. 2, from Line. (FIG. 3.)

When the line breaks to the right, in order to march to the left, or the reverse, the command BREAK TO THE RIGHT TO MARCH TO THE LEFT, OR BREAK TO THE LEFT TO MARCH TO THE RIGHT, precedes the command BY COMPANY-RIGHT (or LEFT)-WHEEL. The company on that flank towards which the wheel is made, marches forward twice the extent of its front, while the others are wheeling, and there halts. The lieutenant-colonel places two markers, one abreast with the leading company, the other abreast with the next company, near the directing guides. These two companies turn to the left (or right) the moment the column is put in march.

Movement No. 3, from Line.

To break to the rear into column. (FIG. 4.)

BY THE RIGHT OF COMPANIES, TO THE REAR INTO COLUMN. BATTALION—RIGHT-FACE. } The battalion faces to the right, each captain goes to the right of his company, breaks two files to the rear, and places himself so that his breast shall touch the left arm of the front-rank man of the last file of the company on his right; for this object the captain of the right company supposes a company to be on his right, and dresses on the other captains.

QUICK-MARCH.—Each company, conducted by the covering sergeant in front of the leading front-rank man, marches perpendicularly to the rear, each file wheeling on the same ground in succession. The captains stand fast let their companies file past, and when the last file has wheeled, each captain gives the words (such) *company-halt, front-face.* The left guide then places himself so that his left arm may touch the captain's breast, and the captain adds *left-dress*, followed by *front*, and takes his place in column.

Digitized by Google

The captains shifting to the left of their companies and the left guides leading.

Movement No 4, *from Line.*

To ploy into close column, or mass. (FIG. 5.)

This may be performed by company or by division.

CLOSE COLUMN BY DIVISION, ON THIRD DIVISION RIGHT IN FRONT, INTO COLUMN. BATTALION, INWARD–FACE. } At the word

FACE, the divisions on the right and left of the directing division, which stands fast, face towards that division. Each chief of those on the right goes to the left of his division, causes files to break to the front and places himself by the side of his left guide, who is in front of the leading front-rank man. Each chief of those on the left of the directing division, goes to the right of his division, causes files to break to the rear, and places himself by the side of his right guide, who is in front of the leading front-rank man.

QUICK–MARCH.—The chief of the directing division gives the words *guide left*, when its left guide places himself on its left, and the file-closers advance one pace on the rear-rank. The other divisions, each conducted by its chief, step off together at the word, and the file-closers incline to the distance of one pace from the rear-rank. Each division enters the column parallelly to the directing division, to effect which those next to that division march by file, the one on its right, to the front, the one on its left, to the rear, each five paces before it turns to enter the column; the other divisions march diagonally towards the points at which they are to enter the column. Each division that is to form in front of the directing division, is conducted by its chief till its left guide is nearly up with the left guide of the directing division, the chief then gives the words: (such) *division*, *halt*, *front–face*, and the left guide faces to the rear and covers the preceeding guide at a distance of five paces; the chief then adds *left–dress*, followed by *front*, and takes his place in column. Each chief of divisions which are to form in rear of the directing division, halts when he is up with the left guide of that division, lets his division file past, and when the last file has passed him, gives the words, (such) *division*, *halt*, *front–face*, when the left guide covers the preceding guide at a distance of five paces; the

Digitized by Google

chief then adds *left–dress*, followed by *front*, and takes his place in column.

The lieutenant-colonel rectifies the position of the guides in front, and the major, those in rear of the directing division.

If the battalion is to ploy with the left in front, it will be so expressed in the command. The chief of the directing division gives the words *guide–right* the moment the movement begins, and the formation takes place according to the same principles but by inverse means.

The battalion may ploy on any named division, with the right or left in front, according to the same principles.

The guides who have faced about will face to the front at the words GUIDES ABOUT–FACE, given by the commanding-officer, the moment the movement is complete.

The battalion may be ployed into column at full or half distance, on the same principles, by substituting in the commands, COLUMN AT FULL (or HALF) DISTANCE, for CLOSE COLUMN.

Movement No. 5, from Line.

To ploy into column doubled on the centre. (FIG. 6.)

DOUBLE COLUMN, AT HALF DISTANCE. BATTALION, INWARD–FACE. } The two centre companies (fourth and fifth) stand fast, the remaining companies face towards the centre. Each captain whose company has faced, causes two files at the head of his company to break to the rear; the left guide of each right company, and the right guide of each left company places himself at the head of the front-rank, the captain by his side.

QUICK–MARCH.—The two centre companies stand fast, their chief places himself before the centre, and gives the words *guide–right*. The remaining companies, conducted by their captains, enter the column at company distance, each behind the one preceding in the same wing, the corresponding companies of the two wings uniting; that is, the third company unites with the sixth, the second with the seventh, and the first with the eighth. An instant before the union, the left guides of the right companies pass into the rank of file-closers, and when the head of the companies arrive opposite the centre of the directing division, each cap-

Digitized by Google

tain gives the words (such) *company, halt, front–face;* the senior captain of each division then adds *right–dress*, followed by *front*, and takes his place in column.

The divisions thus formed, are denominated *first, second third, fourth*, beginning at the front.

The lieutenant-colonel in rear assures the right guides of the right companies on the direction, as they successively arrive.

The double column, closed in mass, may be formed according to the same principles, by substituting in the command, CLOSED IN MASS, for that of AT HALF DISTANCE.*

Movement No. 6, *from Line.*

Changes of Front. (FIG. 7.)

Before the caution is given for a change of front, the base company is established on the new line, and two markers are placed in front of that company opposite the right and left files; the markers face to the right, if the company belong to the right wing; and to the left, if it belong to the left wing. If the change is to be made on the fifth company, left wing forward, that company serves as the base, and the moment it is established the fourth company is faced about, wheeled to the right, halted, and faced to the front, its right guide steps out on the line at the point where its right is to rest and covers the markers, and the captain of the fifth steps into the rear-rank to give place to the captain of the fourth, who aligns his company by the left. If the change is to be made on the fourth company, right wing forward, the line is established by inverse means, the fourth company serves as the base and the fifth is aligned upon it. In these central changes, both the central companies are established before the caution is given.†

CHANGE FRONT ON FIFTH COMPANY, LEFT WING FORWARD. RIGHT WING, ABOUT–FACE. BY COMPANY, RIGHT HALF WHEEL. QUICK–MARCH. FORWARD–MARCH. GUIDE–RIGHT. } At the word FACE, the companies of the right wing face about, their captains behind the rank now in rear: the companies of both wings half-wheel to the right, and the moment they have sufficiently wheeled, the words FORWARD–MARCH are given, when they move forward in echellon towards the new line, dressing by

† This change of front on a central company is made to illustrate the general principles of changes of front—the changes are generally made on the flank companies.

* See note (*b*) end of Part I.

Digitized by Google

the right. Each company of the right wing, as it approaches the new line, turns to the right, and when it has passed the line three paces, its captain gives the words (such) *company, halt, about–face;* its right guide throws himself on the line opposite the right file and covers the preceding guides, and the captain placing himself on the right of the preceding company, gives the words *left–dress*, followed by *front.* Each company of the left wing, on approaching the line, turns to the right, and when within three paces of the line, its captain gives the words (such) *company, halt,* its left guide throws himself on the line opposite the left file and covers the preceding guides, and the captain placing himself on the left of the preceding company, gives the words *right–dress.*

GUIDES–POSTS.—The captains and guides take their places in line, and the markers retire.

In central changes, the lieutenant-colonel rectifies the position of the guides of the right wing, the major those of the left; in other cases, the lieutenant-colonel alone rectifies the position of the guides, always placing himself on their rear as they successively arrive on the line.

If the change of front is to be made forward on the right or left company, the command is given, CHANGE FRONT FORWARD ON FIRST (or EIGHTH) COMPANY. BY COMPANY, RIGHT (or LEFT) HALF WHEEL. QUICK–MARCH. FORWARD–MARCH. GUIDE–RIGHT (or LEFT,) and the movement is executed according to the principles prescribed above for the companies of the left wing.

If the change of front is to be made to the rear on either of the flank companies, the command is given, CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR ON FIRST (or EIGHTH) COMPANY. BATTALION ABOUT FACE. BY COMPANY, LEFT (or RIGHT) HALF WHEEL. QUICK–MARCH. FORWARD–MARCH. GUIDE–LEFT (or RIGHT,) and the movement is executed according to the principles prescribed above for the companies of the right wing.

Movement No. 7, from Line.

To march by a flank.

BATTALION BY THE RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK. RIGHT (or LEFT)–FACE. } The instant the battalion faces, the captains step out of the front-rank, and

Digitized by Google

are replaced by their covering sergeants. If the face be to the right, the captains place themselves on the left of their covering sergeants, and the closing sergeant, in like manner places himself on the left of the covering corporal, who steps into the front-rank. If the face be to the left, each captain goes to the left of his company, and places himself on the right of the covering sergeant of the company preceding his own; the captain of the left company, on the right of the closing sergeant, who is now in the front-rank the covering corporal in the rank of file-closers.*

BATTALION FORWARD. QUICK-MARCH—At the word MARCH, the whole step off together, the sergeant of the leading file giving the direction.

If it be necessary to change direction in marching, a marker is established at the point of change, and the commanding officer gives the words: *by file*, *right* (or *left*,) and adds *march*, the instant the leading file is abreast of the marker. Each file wheels in succession on the same ground.

If it be intended to halt and front the battalion, the commanding officer gives the words: BATTALION, HALT—FRONT—FACE. The instant the battalion faces to the front, the captains and covering sergeants resume their places in line and the former rectify the alignment.

If the battalion, marching by the right flank, is to form on the right by file, two markers are placed in advance, at points where the right and left of the leading company are to rest, presenting their right shoulders to the line: the commanding officer then gives the words: ON RIGHT BY FILE INTO LINE, and adds MARCH, the instant the leading file is opposite the first marker. The movement is executed in the manner prescribed for this formation in the company drill. Each company forms on the left of the one which precedes it. The left guide of each company, except the leading one, places himself on the direction of the markers, and opposite to the left file of his company, the moment this file arrives on the line.

The movement ended, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDES—POSTS.

The lieutenant-colonel, in succession assures the direction of the guides.

If the march be by the left flank, this movement is exe-

* The covering sergeant of the right company, by the right side of the front rank man of the rearmost file of his company, covering the captains in file.—The lieut.-colonel is abreast with the leading file, whether the face be by the

Digitized by Google

cuted according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

Movement No. 8, from Line.

To advance in line. (Fig 8.)

The commanding officer places himself forty paces in rear of the colour-file, facing to the front: the lieutenant-colonel a like distance in front of the same file, facing to the rear, and is established perpendicularly to the line by the commanding officer, who then throws himself twenty paces further to the rear and establishes two markers on the prolongation of the line passing through the colour-bearer and the lieutenant-colonel: the first marker twenty-five paces in rear of the battalion; the second, the same distance from the first, both facing to the rear. The colour-bearer takes two points on the ground in the direction of the lieutenant-colonel, the first point, twenty paces in advance.

BATTALION–FORWARD.—At the word FORWARD, the front-rank of the colour-guard advances six paces, and is re-placed by its rear-rank; the two general guides also advance abreast with the colour-bearer, opposite the right and left flanks of the battalion. The captains of the left wing shift to the left of their companies, the covering sergeant of the company next on the left of the colour-company, stepping into the front-rank, and the closing sergeant replacing the covering corporal, who steps into the rank of file-closers. The lieutenant-colonel having assured the colour-bearer on the line between himself and the corporal of the colour-file, places himself fifteen paces on the right of the captain of the colour-company, to maintain this captain, and the next one beyond him, abreast with the three centre corporals. The major places himself eight paces on either flank of the colour-rank.

QUICK–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the battalion steps off with life: the colour-bearer is charged with the step and the direction, the corporals on his right and left, and the general guides maintain themselves abreast with him, and march in the same step; the centre corporal of the colour-guard, in the front-rank, marches in the trace of the colour-bearer. The captains of the colour-company, and the company next on the left, with the three corporals in the centre of the front-rank, constitute the basis of alignment for both wings of the battalion; the other captains maintain

right or left flank, and the major abreast with the colour file, both on the side of the front rank, and six paces from it. The adjutant is between the lieut.-col. and the front rank, and the sergeant-major between the major and the colour bearer

Digitized by Google

themselves on the prolongation of this basis. The men march with the head and shoulders square to the front, feel lightly the elbow towards the centre, and resist pressure from the flanks, holding themselves always slightly behind the line of captains. If opening or crowding of files occur, or any disorder ensue, the remedy will be applied as promptly, and as gently as possible.

Pending the march, the line, determined by the two markers, is prolonged by placing, in proportion as the battalion advances, a third marker behind the first; then the second marker quits his place and throws himself behind the third; the first marker, in his turn, does the like in respect to the second, and so on in succession as long as the battalion continues to advance, each taking care to face to the rear and to cover accurately. A staff-officer, or the sergeant-major, placed twenty paces facing the marker farthest from the battalion, assures the markers on the direction, and cautions each when to shift his place.

The major throws himself, from time to time, twenty paces in front of the colour-bearer, faces to the rear and covers the markers behind the centre, in order to rectify, if necessary, the direction of the colour-bearer, who, in such case, takes new points on the ground between himself and the major.

Movement No. 9, *from Line.*

To halt the battalion and to align it.

BATTALION–HALT. COLOUR AND GENERAL GUIDES–POSTS. } At the word HALT, the battalion halts. At the word POSTS, the colour-bearer and the general guides take their places in line; the captains of the left wing shift to the right of their companies; the colour-guard falls back into the rear-rank, and the closing sergeant and covering corporal return to their places.

CAPTAINS–RECTIFY THE ALIGNMENTS.—The captains cast an eye towards the centre, align themselves under the direction of the lieutenant-colonel, and promptly dress their companies.

Movement No. 10, *from Line.*

To retire in line.

FACE TO THE REAR. BATTALION, ABOUT–FACE. } At the words ABOUT–FACE, the battalion

Digitized by Google

faces about, the colour-bearer passes into the rear-rank now leading, the corporal of his file stepping behind the corporal on his right, to let the colour-bearer pass, and then placing himself in his rear, to reform the colour-file. The commanding officer places himself behind the front-rank, now rear, and the lieutenant-colonel and major before the rear-rank, now front.

The same dispositions are then made as for the *advance in line*, except that the markers, who were then in rear, are now in front facing the battalion, the first twenty-five paces from the lieutenant-colonel.

BATTALION–FORWARD.—The colour-bearer and the corporal on his right and left, advance eight paces and are replaced by the next rank of the guard: the general guides move out abreast with the colour-rank, the covering sergeants place themselves in the line of file-closers, and the captains in the rear-rank, now front; the three file-closers nearest the colour, unite in rear of the colour-rank, to serve as a basis of alignment for the line of file-closers; the captains of the left wing, now right, shift to the left, now right, of their companies.

QUICK–MARCH.—The battalion retires in line on the same principles which governed the advance in line; the file-closer behind the colour-bearer, marches exactly in his trace, and the colour-bearer directs himself on the markers. The lieutenant-colonel, on the outside of the file-closers of the colour-company, maintains the three file-closers of the basis of alignment, in a square with the line of direction; the other file-closers keep themselves aligned on this basis.

Movement No. 11, *from Line.*

To halt the battalion and face it to the front.

BATTALION–HALT.
FACE TO THE FRONT.
BATTALION, ABOUT–FACE.

} At the words ABOUT FACE, the colour-rank, general guides, captains, and covering sergeants, retake their habitual places in in line; the colour-bearer goes into the front-rank, and the battalion is aligned as in No. 9.

Movement No. 12, *from Line.*

Passage of obstacles. (FIGS. 9, 10.)

If the obstacle should be presented before the third com

Digitized by Google

pany, while the battalion is advancing, it will be passed as follows:

THIRD COMPANY, OBSTACLE.—The captain of this company steps out and gives the words, *third company, by the left flank, to the rear into column–march*, and hastens to its left. At the word *march*, the company faces to the left in marching, the two left files disengage to the rear, and the company, quickening the step, is conducted by the left guide, at the head of the front-rank, parallelly to, and in rear of the fourth company; the captain of the third, halts opposite to the captain of the fourth, lets his company file past, and when its right file is up with him, faces his company to the right, and causes it to move forward, giving the words, *third company, by the right–flank march—guide right*, and placing himself before its centre; when the company is at wheeling distance from the fourth, the captain gives the words, *to the step*, at which it takes the step of the battalion and preserves its distance, its right guide following in the trace of the captain of the fourth. The left guide of the second company places himself on the left of the front-rank of his company as soon as the third faces to the left, and maintains between himself and the right of the fourth company, the space necessary for the return of the third.

The obstacle being passed, the company returns into line as follows:

THIRD COMPANY FORWARD INTO LINE. } The captain adds, *by company, right half–wheel, march;* the company quickening its step, makes a half-wheel to the right, and when sufficiently wheeled, the captain gives the words *forward–march—guide–left;* the company marches straight forward towards the line, and enters it by a turn to the left; as soon as it is in line, its captain, placing himself on its right, gives the words, *to the step*, and the company takes the step from the colour-bearer.

Should the obstacle cover the front of several contiguous companies (the three right for example,) it will be passed as follows:

THREE RIGHT COMPANIES, OBSTACLE. BY THE LEFT FLANK, TO THE REAR INTO COLUMN–MARCH. } At the word MARCH, each of the designated companies faces to the left, disengages files to the rear

Digitized by Google

and executes the movement in the manner prescribed for the third, each forming in rear of the one which precedes it, and as soon as it has its wheeling distance, taking the step of the battalion.

The obstacle being passed, these companies return into line as follows:

THREE RIGHT COMPANIES. FORWARD INTO LINE—MARCH. } At the words INTO LINE, the captain of each of these companies adds, *by company, right half-wheel.* At the word MARCH, each company conforms itself to what has been prescribed for the third company.

If the companies of the left wing are to pass an obstacle, they execute the movement according to the same principles and by inverse means.

In retiring in line, these movements are executed on the same principles as if the battalion were advancing.

If, when advancing in line, it become necessary to halt the battalion in order to retire, and there be companies in column in its rear, these companies face about with the battalion, precede it in march, and take their places in line by the oblique step, as they clear the obstacles.

When the colour-company is to pass an obstacle, the colour-rank returns into line the moment the company faces to the right or left: the major places himself six paces before the extremity of the company behind which the colour-company marches, in order to give the step and the direction: he himself, first taking the step from the battalion.

As soon as the colour-company returns into line, the front-rank of the colour-guard throws itself out six paces in front of the battalion and takes the step from the major, who throws himself twenty or thirty paces in front of the colour-bearer, faces the battalion, and is established on the perpendicular by the commanding officer, placed behind the centre; the colour-bearer then takes points on the ground between himself and the major.

If the obstacle cover several companies of the centre, each of these companies files into column behind that, still in line, and of the same wing which may be nearest to it.

Movement No. 13, *from Line.*

To pass a defile in retreat. (FIG. 11, 12.)

If a battalion, retiring in line encounter a defile, it is in

Digitized by Google

mediately halted and faced to the front. If the defile be in rear of the left-flank, and its width sufficient to admit a column by platoon, a marker is placed fifteen or twenty paces in rear of the file-closers, at the point around which the subdivisions are to change direction, in order to enter the defile.

TO THE REAR, BY THE RIGHT FLANK, PASS THE DEFILE. } The captain of the right company adds (such) *company, by the right flank, right-face—quick—march.* At the word *face*, this company faces to the right; at the word *march*, its leading file wheels to the right, marches to the rear four paces beyond the file-closers, wheels again to the right, and marches forward towards the left flank; the remaining files of this company wheel in succession at the same point where the first had wheeled. The next company from the right, executes in its turn, the same movement by the commands of its captain, who gives the word *march*, so that his first file, wheeling on its ground, may immediately follow the last file of the first company. The following companies, each in its turn, execute what is prescribed for the second.

When the whole of the second company is on the direction with the first, the captain of the first causes his company to form by platoon into line, and the guide of the first platoon directs himself on the marker. The other companies, each in succession, the moment the one in its rear is wholly on the direction, forms by platoon into line, in the manner prescribed for the first.

The first platoon of the leading company, when opposite the marker, turns to the left, and the following platoons execute the same movement, at the same point. As the last companies will not be able to form platoons before reaching the defile, they so direct themselves, in entering it, as to leave room to the left for this movement.

As the platoons of each company clear the defile, companies are successively formed.

A defile in rear of the right flank is passed by the left flank, the movement being executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

If the defile be too narrow to receive the front of a platoon, it is passed by a flank.

Digitized by Google

MOVEMENTS FROM OPEN COLUMN.

Movement No. 1, from Open Column.

To march in column.

COLUMN–FORWARD. } At the words GUIDE–LEFT
GUIDE LEFT–MARCH. } the leading guide takes two points on the ground in the direction to be marched. At the word MARCH, the whole step off together, the leading guide marching on the points he has chosen, and taking new points as he advances; the following guides preserve both step and distance, each marching in the trace of the guide who immediately precedes him.

The lieutenant-colonel marches abreast with the leading guide, and assures him in the direction; the major is abreast with the last subdivision, and sees that each guide marches in the trace of the one immediately preceding.

With the left in front the same commands and means are observed, substituting the words GUIDE–RIGHT for GUIDE–LEFT.*

A close column, or a column at half distance, may be put in march by the same commands and means.

Movement No. 2, from Open Column.

To change direction in marching. (FIG. 13.)

A marker is placed on the side of the directing guide, at the point at which the change is to take place, presenting his breast to that flank of the column; he remains in position till the last subdivision has passed.

HEAD OF COLUMN, } Each chief causes his
TO THE LEFT (or RIGHT.) } subdivision to change direction, the moment it arrives opposite the marker, in the manner prescribed in the company drill.

The major sees that the guides direct themselves on the marker, so as to graze his breast.

A column at half distance changes direction by the same commands and means, except that in the change of direction to the reverse flank, the pivot of each subdivision takes steps of fourteen inches, instead of nine, in order to clear in time the wheeling point, and the marching flank describes the arc of a larger circle, in order to facilitate the movement.

Movement No. 3, from Open Column.

To halt the column.

COLUMN–HALT.—At the word HALT, the column halts

* See note (c) end of Part I.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 4, from Open Column.

To form to the left into line.

The column being at a halt, the guides on the directing flank are directed to cover, each at a distance equal to the front of his company.

LEFT–DRESS.—Each captain goes to the left of his company, aligns it on the left guide, and gives the word *front.*

LEFT INTO LINE–WHEEL.—The right guide of the leading company throws himself on the line of the left guides, opposite to where the right of his company is to rest, faces to those guides, and is assured in position by the lieutenant-colonel.

QUICK–MARCH.—Each company wheels to the left on a fixed pivot, the pivot man facing so as to present his breast against the arm of the left guide, who stands fast; when the marching flank is within three paces of the line, each captain gives the words, (such) *company–halt;* places himself where the right of his company is to rest, and adds *right–dress,* followed by *front.*

GUIDES–POSTS.—The guides pass to their places in line through the nearest captain's interval.

With the left in front, the line is formed to the right, according to the same principles; the left guide of the left company places himself on the direction of the right guide, as prescribed above for the right guide of the right company, and the captains align their companies by the left. At the words GUIDES–POSTS, the captains, as well as the guides, take their places in line.

A column at half distance may form line in the same manner, first taking wheeling distance.

Movement No. 5, from Open Column.

To form line to the right by inversion.

BY INVERSION,
RIGHT INTO LINE–WHEEL.
BATTALION GUIDE RIGHT.
QUICK–MARCH.

At the words *guide–right,* the left guide of the leading company places himself on the direction of the right guides. At the word MARCH, the companies wheel to the right, and are aligned by the left according to the principles prescribed in the last number.

Digitized by Google

The lieutenant-colonel in front assures the guides on the direction.

With the left in front, the column forms line to the left by inversion, according to the same principles.

Movement No. 6, *from Open Column.*

To form on right into line. (FIG. 14.)

This is performed from the march. Two markers are established in advance by the lieutenant-colonel, at poin where the right and left files of the leading company wil rest in line; these markers are placed so as to present th right shoulder to the battalion when formed.

ON RIGHT INTO LINE. BATTALION, GUIDE–RIGHT. When the leading company is up with the first marker it turns to the right, receiving from its captain the words *right turn*, *march*, followed by (such) *company*, *halt* when within three paces of the marker, the covering sergeant then takes his place in the rear-rank, the left guide retires as file-closer, and the captain, placing himself at the point where the right of his company is to rest, gives the words *right–dress*, aligns his company on the markers and adds *front*. Each of the other companies continues to march straight forward until opposite the left flank of the one which precedes it, when it turns to the right and forms on the line in the manner prescribed for the first; the left guide, the instant his company halts, places himself on the line opposite the left file, and covers the preceding guide.

The line being formed, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDES–POSTS, and the guides and markers retire.

The lieutenant-colonel placing himself in rear of the guides, as they successively arrive on the line, assures them on the direction.

With the left in front, the line is formed on the left according to the same principles; the captains go to the left of their companies to align them, and at the words GUIDES–POSTS take their places in line.

A column at half distance, or in mass, may form line in the same manner.

Movement No. 7, *from Open Column.*

To form to the front into line, (FIG. 15.)

The column being halted, two markers are established by

Digitized by Google

.h lieutenant-colonel at company distance in front of the leading company, and at points where the right and left files of that company are to rest; these markers are placed so as to present the right shoulder to the battalion when formed.

FORWARD INTO LINE.—The captain of the leading company puts his company in march, giving the words *guide–right*, halts it three paces from the markers, and aligns it against them by the right, the left guide taking his place as file-closer.

BY COMPANY, LEFT HALF-WHEEL. QUICK–MARCH. FORWARD–MARCH. GUIDE–RIGHT. } The re mainin companie

make a half-wheel to the left, and the moment they hav sufficiently wheeled, the words FORWARD MARCH, are given when they move forward in echellon towards the line, dressing by the right. Each company, on approaching the line, turns to the right on a caution from its captain, and when within three paces of the line, the captain gives the words (such) *company halt;* the left guide then throws himself on the line opposite to the left file, facing the preceding guide, or marker, and the captain, placing himself on the left of the preceding company, gives the words *right–dress*, followed by *front.*

The line being formed, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDES–POSTS, when the guides and markers retire.

The lieutenant-colonel conforms himself to what is prescribed in the last number.

With the left in front, the line is formed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Movement No. 8, *from Open Column.*

To form line faced to the rear. (FIG. 16.)

The column is halted, and the markers are established as in the last number.

INTO LINE, FACED TO THE REAR.—At this command, the captain of the leading company faces his company to the right, puts it in march and directs the leading file towards the left marker; the leading file passes in rear of this marker, three paces beyond the line, wheels to the left, and when opposite the right marker, the captain halts his company and aligns it by the right on the two markers.

Digitized by Google

BATTALION, RIGHT–FACE. QUICK–MARCH. } The remaining companies face to the right and at the word MARCH, move off, each, conducted by its chief, towards the point where its left is to rest; this point being marked by the left guide, who precedes his company on the line by fifteen paces and faces towards the markers Each captain directs his company in rear of his left guide, passes the line three paces, wheels by file to the left, and when the leading file arrives near the left of the preceding company, gives the words (such) *company, halt, front–face;* he then places himself on the left of the preceding company, and adds *right–dress*, followed by *front.*

The line being formed, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDES–POSTS, when the guides and markers retire.

The lieutenant-colonel conforms himself to what is prescribed in No. 6.

With the left in front, the movement is executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

A column at half distance, may form line in the same manner.

Movement No. 9, *from Open Column.*

To form line by two movements.

Should a column, arriving behind the line, and prolonging itself on that line, be halted before all the companies have entered the new direction, it will form line as follows:

It is here supposed that the column has been halted just as the fifth company has entered the new direction, and that there are eight companies in the column; the guides of the first five companies are assured on the direction.

LEFT INTO LINE WHEEL, THREE REAR COMPANIES FORWARD INTO LINE. QUICK–MARCH. } At the words FORWARD INTO LINE, the chief of each of the rear companies, gives the words by company, *left half-wheel.* At the word MARCH, the first five companies form to the left into line, and the three last, forward into line, by means already prescribed: each captain of the three rear companies, when his company has sufficiently wheeled, gives the words, *forward–march, guide–right.*

Movement No. 10, *from Open Column.*

If, instead of arriving behind, the column arrive before the line, the formation will be made as follows:

Digitized by Google

LEFT INTO LINE WHEEL,
THREE REAR COMPANIES,
INTO LINE FACED TO THE
REAR. QUICK–MARCH.

At the command, FACED TO THE REAR, the captain of each of the rear companies gives the words (such) *company, right–face.* At the word MARCH, the first five companies form to the left into line, and the three last, into line faced to the rear, by means already prescribed.

With the left in front, these movements are executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Movement No. 11, *from Open Column.*

To form close column.

Marching in column by company to close on leading company.

COLUMN, CLOSE IN MASS
QUICK–MARCH.

At the word MARCH, the captain of the leading company halts his company and aligns it by the left, the file-closers closing one pace upon the rear-rank. All the other companies continue to march, and as each in succession arrives at the distance of five paces from the one preceding, its captain halts it, and its left guide places himself on the direction of the guides who precede; the captain there aligns his company by the left, and the file-closers close one pace upon the rear-rank.

The lieutenant-colonel, in front of the leading guide, assures the position of the guides as they successively place themselves on the direction. The major follows the movement abreast with the last guide.

Movement No. 12, *from Open Column.* (FIG. 17.)

The column by company being at a halt, to close on the rear company.

ON EIGHTH COMPANY,
COLUMN CLOSE IN MASS.
BATTALION, ABOUT–FACE.
COLUMN FORWARD,
GUIDE RIGHT. QUICK–MARCH.

At the word FACE, all the companies, except the designated one, face about, their guides remaining in the front-rank, now rear. At the words GUIDE–RIGHT, all the captains place themselves two paces outside of their companies, on the directing flank.

Digitized by Google

At the word MARCH, the designated company stands fast and its captain aligns it by the left. The other companies step off at the word MARCH, and as each arrives at the distance of five paces from the one before it, its captain halts it, and faces it to the front; at the instant of halting, its left guide places himself on the direction of the guides already established, and the captain aligns his company by the left, the file-closers closing one pace upon the rear-rank.

GUIDES, ABOUT–FACE.—The guides who are faced to the rear, face to the front.

The lieutenant-colonel, in rear of the guide of the designated company, assures the position of the guides as they come up; the major is abreast of the rearmost company.

A column by division is closed in mass by the same commands and means.

A column by company or division, at full distance, may be closed to half distance, by the same means and commands, substituting TO HALF DISTANCE, CLOSE COLUMN, for COLUMN CLOSE IN MASS. Each subdivision halts at platoon distance from the subdivision immediately preceding.

With the left in front, these two last movements are executed according to the same principles.

Movement No. 13, *from Open Column.*

Countermarch.

COUNTERMARCH.
BATTALION, RIGHT–FACE.
BY FILE LEFT. QUICK–MARCH.

At the word FACE, all the companies face to the right, and the movement is executed in the manner prescribed in the company drill.

With the left in front, the countermarch is executed by the same commands, substituting LEFT for RIGHT, and RIGHT for LEFT, and by inverse means, the companies facing to the left and wheeling by file to the right.

A column at half distance is countermarched in the same manner and by the same commands.

Column in Route.

This column, like a column in manœuvre, ought never to have a depth greater than the front it occupied in line, less the front of a subdivision. It is put in march, or, being in march, takes the route step, and passes from the route to the

Digitized by Google

cadenced step, by the command prescribed in the company drill. It is habitually formed by company, but it may be broken into platoons or sections, according to the width of the defile; this may be done by all the companies at once, or by each in succession, before entering the defile. In like manner, files may be broken off, or subdivisions may be successively marched by a flank in double or single file.

Each company, as soon as the breadth of the way permits, is formed into column by section, by platoon, or by company, by commands of the captains.

In marching by a flank in double or single file, where the pass is so narrow as to oblige it to defile with a front of two men, or man by man, the captain and leading guide precede the leading file of such company, and the file-closers pass between the files corresponding with their usual positions; the whole follow closely and without loss of time. In passing from double to single file, the rear-rank man of each file covers his front-rank man.

If the head of the column encounter an obstacle which may oblige it to relax its march, all the following subdivisions preserve the habitual step, and close up in mass, if necessary, on the subdivision nearest to the obstacle, in order not to increase the usual depth of the column. Distances are afterwards recovered as each subdivision has successively passed the obstacle. If this cannot be done without running, the leading subdivision is halted beyond the obstacle, at a distance sufficient to contain the whole column closed in mass, until the rear subdivision has closed; the column is then put in march, and the subdivisions take their proper distances.

The commanding officer, at the head of the column, regulates the step of the leading subdivision, and indicates to its chief, the time for executing the various movements which the nature of the route may render necessary.

MOVEMENTS FROM CLOSE COLUMN.

Movement No. 1, from Close Column.

To form open column by the head.

BY THE HEAD OF COLUMN, TAKE WHEELING DISTANCE. } At this command the captain of the leading company puts it in march. The instant the second

Digitized by Google

company has its wheeling distance from the first, its captain puts it in march, and so with the other companies in succession.

The lieutenant-colonel, at the head of the column, directs the march of the leading guide; the major is abreast with the rearmost guide.

Movement No. 2, from Close Column.

To form open column on the rear.

Two markers are established on the direction to be given to the line, the first opposite to the rearmost company, the second towards the head of the column, at company distance from the first, both facing to the rear; the right general guide places himself on the prolongation of these markers, a little beyond the point at which the head of the column will extend.

ON EIGHTH COMPANY,
TAKE WHEELING DISTANCE.
COLUMN, FORWARD.
GUIDE–LEFT. QUICK–MARCH.

At the words GUIDE–LEFT, the captains place themselves two paces outside of the directing flank. At the word MARCH, the designated company stands fast; its captain aligns it by the left on the first marker, and gives the word *front*, when the marker, replaced by the left guide, retires, and the captain takes his place in column. All the other companies step off at the word march, the guide of the leading one directing himself a little within the right general guide; when the company next the rearmost one arrives opposite the second marker, its captain halts and aligns it on that marker, in the manner prescribed for the rearmost company. As each of the other companies arrives at wheeling distance from the one in its rear, its captain halts and aligns it on the left guide, who, at the instant of halting, places himself on the direction facing to the rear.

The movement ended, the commanding officer gives the words, GUIDES, ABOUT–FACE, when they face to the front.

The lieutenant-colonel successively assures the guides on the direction, placing himself in their rear; the major, at the head of the column, directs the march of the leading guide

Movement No. 3, from Close Column.

To form open column on the head. (FIG. 18.)

Two markers are placed in the manner just prescribed,

Digitized by Google

one abreast with the leading company, the other at company distance in rear of the first, both faced to the front, the left general guide places himself on the prolongation of the markers, a little beyond the point at which the rear of the column will extend.

ON FIRST COMPANY, TAKE WHEELING DISTANCE. BATTALION, ABOUT–FACE. COLUMN, FORWARD, GUIDE–RIGHT. QUICK–MARCH. } All the companies, except the

designated one, face about, the guides remaining in the front rank, now rear. At the words GUIDE–RIGHT, the captains throw themselves outside of their guides. At the word MARCH, the designated company is aligned by the left, as in the last number; the other companies are put in march, and as each arrives at wheeling distance from the one in its rear it is halted, faced about, and aligned by the left.

The lieutenant-colonel and major, conform themselves to what is prescribed in the last number. With the left in front, these movements are executed according to the same principles. To take half distance, the word HALF is substituted for WHEELING, in the command. A column at half distance takes wheeling distance in the same manner. Distances are taken according to the same principles, in a column by division.

Movement No. 4, from Close Column.

To change direction in marching. (FIG. 19.)

The change is made to either flank, on the principles of wheeling in marching. A marker is placed at the point of change, and the battalion takes the guide on the flank opposite to the intended change; as soon as the direct march is resumed, and the last subdivision is in direction, the battalion takes the guide on its proper flank, the commanding officer giving the words, GUIDE–LEFT (or RIGHT.)

BATTALION, RIGHT WHEEL–MARCH.—The leading division wheels to the right, the pivot-flank taking steps of fourteen inches, and the marching flank conforming to the movement of the pivot, by describing the arc of a large circle. The other divisions at the same time, conform to the movement of the first; the left guide of each advancing slightly the left shoulder, and lengthening a little the step obliques to the left, and gains so much ground to the front

Digitized by Google

that there may constantly be an interval of three paces between his division and that which precedes it; as soon as he covers the preceding guide, he ceases to oblique, and marches exactly in his trace. Each division conforms itself to the movement of its guide.

The lieutenant-colonel regulates the march of the leading guide, and the major, in rear, regulates the march of the following guides.

FORWARD–MARCH.—The leading division resumes the direct march; the others conform to its movement.

Movement No. 5, from Close Column.

To change direction from a halt. (FIG. 20.)

This is executed by the flank of subdivisions. Two markers are placed on the new direction, at points where the right and left flanks of the leading subdivisions are to rest.

CHANGE DIRECTION BY THE RIGHT FLANK. BATTALION, RIGHT–FACE. QUICK–MARCH. } At the word FACE, the column faces to the right

and each chief of the subdivision places himself by the side of his leading guide. At the word MARCH, all the subdivisions step off together; the leading guide of the first, directs himself from the first step, parallelly to the markers; its chief stands fast, lets his subdivision file past him, and as soon as the last file has passed, halts it, faces it to the front, and aligns it by the left on the two markers. Each of the following subdivisions, enters the column parallelly to, and three paces from, the subdivision which precedes it; the chief, on arriving at the point where the left of his subdivision is to rest, halts, lets it file past him, and when the last file has passed, halts it, faces it to the front, (the left guide placing himself on the direction,) and aligns it by the left.

In changing direction by the left flank, the same means are observed, substituting in the commands the word LEFT for RIGHT. Each chief conducts his subdivision until the leading file arrives at the point where it is to rest, when the subdivision is halted and aligned as already prescribed.

The lieutenant-colonel in front, assures the guides as they successively arrive on the direction; the major follows abreast with the last subdivision.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 6, from Close Column.

Countermarch. (FIG. 21.)

COUNTERMARCH. BATTALION, RIGHT AND LEFT–FACE. } At the word FACE, the odd divisions, counting from the head of the column, face to the right, the even divisions, to the left; the right and left guides of all divisions face about: each chief goes to the head of his division, breaks two files to the rear, and places himself by the side of his leading front-rank man.

BY FILE LEFT AND RIGHT. QUICK–MARCH. } At the word MARCH, each division conducted by its chief, steps off, the guides standing fast; each odd division wheels by file to the left around its right guide; each even division wheels by file to the right around its left guide, each division so directing its march as to arrive behind its opposite guide, and when its head is up with this guide, the chief halts the division, faces it to the front, and aligns it by the right, the chiefs of the even divisions shifting to the right for that purpose. As each division is aligned, its chief gives the word *front*, and the guides shift to their proper flanks.

A column left in front, is countermarched by the same commands and means, except that the divisions are aligned by the left.

The movement ended, the lieutenant-colonel places himself abreast with the leading; and the major abreast with the rearmost division.

A close column by company is countermarched by the same means and commands.

Movement No. 7, from Close Column.

To form divisions from close column of companies. (FIG. 22.)

FORM DIVISIONS. LEFT COMPANIES, LEFT–FACE. } The left companies face to the left, and their captains place themselves by the side of their left guides. The right companies stand fast, the right and left guides of each place themselves before the right and left files of their respective companies, the guides facing so as to rest the right arm against the breast of the front-rank man of the file.

QUICK–MARCH.—The left companies only are put in march, their captains standing fast; each captain as the left

Digitized by Google

file of his company has cleared the right company, gives the words (such) *company halt, front–face*, and places himself on the left of the right company of his division; the left guide at the same time places himself before the left file of his company, faces to the right and covers the guides of the right company; the captain then gives the words, *right–dress*, and aligns his company on the left guide, which being done, he adds *front*, and remains in his position.

GUIDES–POSTS.—The captains and guides take their places in column, the left guide of each right company passing through the interval in the centre of the division.

A column at full or half distance, forms division in the same manner; but the captains of the left companies, after commanding *front–face*, give the words: *company, forward, guide-right–march*, followed by *halt, right–dress.*

If the left be in front, these movements are executed by inverse means; the right companies conform themselves to what is prescribed above for the left companies, and the guides in front of the left companies face to the left.

Movement No. 8, *from Close Column.*

To deploy on the first division. (Fig. 23.)

The column being at a halt, the lieutenant-colonel establishes three markers, three paces in front of the leading division, one opposite the right and left files of that division, and one opposite the left file of the right company: these markers face to the right; the left general guide covers these markers, at a point a little beyond where the left of the battalion is to rest.

ON FIRST DIVISION DEPLOY COLUMN. BATTALION, LEFT–FACE. } At the word FACE, the three last divisions face to the left, and the chief of each places himself by the side of its left guide.

QUICK–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the chief of the first division goes to its right and gives the words *right–dress;* the division is aligned on the markers, each captain aligning the company on his left and giving the word *front.* The other divisions march parallelly to the line; the chief of the second stands fast, sees his division file past him, and he instant its right guide is abreast with him, halts his division and faces it to the front, giving the words *second division halt, front–face:* the left guides of both companies then

Digitized by Google

step out and cover the markers, each opposite to the left file of his company, and the chief placing himself on the left of the first division, gives the words *right–dress*, when the division is aligned in the manner indicated for the first. The instant the second division is halted, the chief of the third halts in his own person, sees his division file past him, and when its right guide is abreast with him, halts his division and faces it to the front in the manner indicated for the second, he then gives the words *forward, guide–right, march*, followed by *halt* when his division is within three paces of the line: the division is then aligned in the manner indicated for the second. The chief of the fourth division conforms himself to what is prescribed for the third.

The movement ended, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDES–POSTS, when the captains and guides take their places in line and the markers retire.

The lieutenant-colonel conforms himself to what is prescribed No. 6, in *movements from open column*. The major follows abreast with the last division.

Movement No. 9, from Close Column.

To deploy on the fourth division. (FIG. 24.)

The markers are established as indicated in the last number, facing to the left, the central marker opposite the right file of the left company, and the right general guide covers them at a point a little beyond where the right of the battalion is to rest.

ON FOURTH DIVISION DEPLOY COLUMN. BATTALION, RIGHT–FACE. QUICK–MARCH.

At the word FACE, the first three divisions face to the right and the chief of each places himself by the side of his right guide. At the word MARCH, these divisions step off, the guide of the first directing himself, three paces within the line marked by the general guide. The chief of the third stands fast, sees his division file past him, halts it when its left guide is abreast with him, and faces it to the front. The chief of the fourth, the moment his division is unmasked, causes it to advance, giving the words *fourth division, forward, guide–left, march;* when this division is three paces from the markers, its chief halts it and gives the words *left–dress;* each captain aligns the company on his right and gives the word *front*. The instant the third divi-

Digitized by Google

sion is unmasked, its chief causes it to approach the line, and halts it in the manner prescribed for the fourth: the moment it halts, its right guide, and the covering sergeant of its left company, place themselves on the line opposite the right files of their respective companies, and cover the markers; the division is then aligned in the manner prescribed for the fourth. The second and first divisions are in succession halted and aligned by the left in the same manner as the third, their chiefs giving the words *left–dress* the momen their divisions face to the front and the guides are on the line.

The movement ended, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDES–POSTS, when the captains and guides take their places in line and the markers retire.

The lieutenant-colonel conforms himself to what is prescribed in the last number. The major follows abreast with the last division.

If the left be in front these deployments are made according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

Movement No. 10, *from Close Column.*

To deploy on an intermediate division.

The line is first traced by the means already indicated both the general guides throwing themselves out in the manner above prescribed.

ON—DIVISION, DEPLOY COLUMN.
BATTALION, OUTWARD–FACE.
QUICK–MARCH.

} Whether the right or left be in front, the

divisions, which, in line, belong to the right of the directing division, face to the right, those which belong to the left of that division, face to the left; the divisions in front of the directing division, deploy by the means indicated in No. 9, those in its rear, deploy as prescribed No. 8. The directing division, the moment it is unmasked, approaches the line, taking the guide left or right, according as the right or left is in front. The chief of this division aligns it by the directing flank, and then steps into the rear-rank, to give place to the chief of the next division for aligning his division. At the words GUIDES–POSTS, all the captains take the right of their companies.

The lieutenant-colonel assures the positions of the guides

Digitized by Google

on the right of the directing division; the major, those on the left.

A column at half distance, may ploy into line by one of the means here prescribed, the column first closing in mass.

A column by company may be ployed in the same manner as a column by division.

MOVEMENTS FROM COLUMN DOUBLED ON THE CENTRE.

Movement No. 1.

To form line to the front. (FIG. 25.)

The line is first traced in the manner prescribed in th last number.

DEPLOY COLUMN. BATTALION, OUTWARD–FACE. QUICK–MARCH. } The column is ployed on the two companies at its head, according to the principles prescribed for deployment of close columns. The captains of these companies, each, at the word MARCH, places himself on the right of his own company and aligns it by the right; the captain of the fourth stepping into the rear-rank the moment he aligns his company, to give place to the captain of the third to align his company by the left.

The deployment ended, the command is given GUIDES–POSTS.

Movement No. 2.

To form line to the right. (FIG. 26.)

RIGHT INTO LINE WHEEL, LEFT COMPANIES ON RIGHT INTO LINE. BATTALION, GUIDE–RIGHT. QUICK–MARCH. } At the words GUIDE–RIGHT, the left guide of the fourth company, places himself on the line at the point where the left of his company will rest, and covers the right guides. At the word MARCH, the right companies wheel to the right into line, and the left companies move forward and form on right into line, in the manner prescribed in No. 6, *from open column.*

The column may form line to the left according to the same principles.

Dispositions against Cavalry.

The battalion is first formed into column by division, at

Digitized by Google

half (or company) distance; or into column, doubled on the centre, at half distance. (FIG. 27.)

The commands for formmg into column with a view to the square, are always preceded by the caution, TO FORM SQUARE.

The moment the column is formed, the file-closers of the fourth division, passing by the outer flanks of their companies, throw themselves two paces before the front-rank opposite to their respective places in line, and face towards the head of the column. The music, formed in one rank, place themselves at platoon distance, behind the inner platoons o the second division, and the pioneers behind the colour-guard. The lieutenant-colonel and major are abreast with the leading division, the former on the left, and the latter on the right flank of the column.

The column may now be put in march, or it may form square, as follows: (FIG. 28.)

FORM SQUARE.—The lieutenant-colonel, facing to the left guides, and the major, facing to the right guides, align them from the front, on the respective guides of the fourth division, who stand fast, holding up their pieces inverted, perpendicularly; the right guides, in placing themselves on the direction, take their exact distances.

RIGHT AND LEFT INTO LINE WHEEL.—The chief of the first division cautions it to stand fast; all the captains of the second and third divisions throw themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution them that they are to wheel, the right companies to the right, and the left companies to the left, into line. The colour-bearer steps back into the line of file-closers, opposite to his place in line, and is replaced by the corporal of his file. The chief of the fourth division gives the words, *fourth division*, *forward*, *guide left*, and places himself two paces outside of its left flank.

QUICK-MARCH.—The first division stands fast, but its right file faces to the right, and its left file to the left. The companies of the second and third divisions wheel to the right and left into line, and the music advances a space equal to the front of a company. The fourth division closes up to form the square, and when closed, its chief halts it, faces it about, and aligns it by the rear-rank; the junior captain passes into the rear-rank, now front, and is covered by the

Digitized by Google

covering sergeant of the left company, in the front-rank, now rear; the file-closers close up a pace on the front-rank and the outer file of each flank of the division face outwards.

GUIDES–POSTS.—The chiefs of the first and fourth divisions, as well as the guides, enter the square. The captains whose companies have formed to the right into line, remain on the left of their companies, covered by their left guides in the rear-rank; the covering sergeant of each of these companies places himself as a file-closer behind th right file of his company The field and staff enter th square, the lieutenant-colonel placing himself behind the left and the major behind the right of the first division.

If the battalion present ten instead of eight companies, th fourth division makes the same movements prescribed above for the second and third divisions, and the fifth, the movements prescribed for the fourth.

The fronts of the square are designated as follows: the first division is always the *first front;* the last division the *fourth front;* the right companies of the other divisions, the *second front;* and the left companies of the same divisions the *third front.* These designations are always maintained, whether the column shall have been with the left or right in front. Each front is commanded by the lieutenant-colonel, the major, or its senior captain. The commander of each front places himself four paces in its rear, and if a captain, he is replaced momentarily in command of his company, by the next in rank therein.

In a simple column, left in front, the square is formed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

If the square is to advance, the movement is performed as follows: (Figs. 29, 30.)

FORM COLUMN.—The commander of the first front adds, *first division, forward, guide left;* the commander of the fourth front cautions it to stand fast; the commander of the second front causes it to face to the left, and then gives the words, *by company, by file left;* the commander of the third front causes it to face to the right, and then gives the words, *by company, by file right.* At the moment the second and third fronts face to the left and right, each captain in them causes the two headmost files of his company to break to the rear.

QUICK–MARCH.—The first front marches forward; its

Digitized by Google

chief halts it when it shall have advanced a space equal to half its front, and aligns it by the left. The corresponding companies of the second and third fronts wheel by file to the left and right, and march to meet each other behind the centre of the first division, and the moment they unite, the chief of each division halts it, faces it to the front, and aligns it by the left. The commander of the fourth front causes it to face about; its file-closers remaining before the front-rank.

The column may now be put in march.

If the square is to be reformed, the column is first halted and the square is reformed in the manner already prescribed.

If the square is to march in retreat, the column is formed as above, and as soon as formed the command is given: (FIG. 31.)

TO MARCH IN RETREAT. } At the words FACE
FACE BY THE REAR-RANK. } BY THE REAR-RANK,

the file-closers of the interior divisions throw themselves passing by the outer flanks of their respective companies behind the front-rank opposite to their places, in line; the file-closers of the other divisions stand fast.

BATTALION, ABOUT–FACE.—The battalion face about; each chief of division throws himself before its rear rank, become front, passing through the interval between its two companies; the guides step into the rear-rank, now front.

The column may now be put in march; or it may form square, as if it were faced by the front-rank, its fronts preserving the same designations as when faced by the front-rank. (FIG. 32.)

The battalion being in square by the rear-rank, may march in retreat, or in advance, by reforming column according to the principles already prescribed, the fourth, instead of the first front marching forward. If the column, thus reformed, is to continue the march in retreat, it remains faced by the rear-rank; but if it is to advance, it faces to the front by the commands, TO MARCH IN ADVANCE. FACE BY THE FRONT RANK. BATTALION, ABOUT–FACE.

To reduce the square.

REDUCE SQUARE. } This is executed in the manner
QUICK–MARCH. } prescribed for forming column from square; but the file-closers of the fourth front throw

Digitized by Google

themselves behind the rear-rank the moment it faces about and the field and staff, the colour-bearer, pioneers, and music, return to their places in column.

A column by company may also form square in the manner prescribed for a column by division. The leading and rearmost companies conform themselves to what is prescribed for divisions in those positions. The other companies form by platoons to the right and left into line; each chief of platoon, after halting it, places himself on the line, as if the platoon were a company, and is covered by the guide in the rear-rank.

A battalion in column at full distance, having to form square, always closes on the leading subdivision; and a column closed in mass, always for the same purpose, takes distances by the head.

When a battalion is ployed, with a view to the square, it should always be in the rear of the right or left division, in order that it may be able to commence firing pending the execution of the movement. The double column affords this advantage, and being more promptly formed than any other, is to be preferred.

In firing in square, the colour-guard will fire like the men of the company of which it forms a part.

Rules for manœuvring by the rear-rank.

The battalion being by the front-rank, to cause it to manœuvre by the rear-rank, the command is given, FACE BY THE REAR-RANK—BATTALION. ABOUT—FACE.

If the battalion be deployed, this movement is executed as prescribed for the fire by the rear-rank.

If the battalion be in column by company, or by platoon, right, or left in front, the chiefs of subdivision, in taking their new places in column, each passes by the left flank of his subdivision, and the file-closers by the right flank; the guides place themselves in the rear-rank.

If the column be formed by division, the chiefs of division, each passes by the interval in the centre of his division, and the file-closers by the outer flanks of their respective companies; the junior captain in each division steps into the rear-rank, and is covered in the front-rank by the covering sergeant of the left company.

Digitized by Google

The lieutenant-colonel is abreast with the leading subdivision, and the major abreast with the rearmost one.

The battalion being faced by the rear-rank, the companies, divisions, and wings, preserve their prior denominations respectively.

The manœuvres by the rear-rank are executed by the same commands and on the same principles as if the battalion faced by the front-rank; but in such manner that when the battalion shall be brought to its proper front, all the subdivisions may find themselves in their regular order from right to left.

According to this principle, when a column, formed by the rear-rank, is deployed, the subdivisions which, in line by the front-rank, ought to find themselves on the right of the subdivision on which the deployment is made, face to the left; and those which ought to be placed on its left, face to the right.

When a battalion in line, faced by the rear-rank, is to be ployed into column, the words LEFT, or RIGHT IN FRONT, are announced in the commands, according as it may be intended, that the first or last subdivision shall be at the head of the column, because the first subdivision is on the left, and the last on the right of the battalion faced by the rear-rank. The column by the rear-rank takes the guide to the right, if the first division be in front, and to the left in the reverse case.

A column, faced by the rear-rank, is brought to its proper front by the commands, FACE BY THE FRONT-RANK. BATTALION, ABOUT—FACE, which are executed in the manner prescribed for facing by the rear-rank. If the column be formed by company or by platoon, the chiefs of subdivision, in order to take their new places in column, pass by the left of subdivisions, now right, and the file-closers by the right now left.

Digitized by Google

OF THE BATTALION.

(*a.*) When the battalion breaks by division, the indication *division*, or *divisions*, will be substituted in the commands for that of *company*, or *companies*; and the chief of each division (the senior captain) will conform himself to what is prescribed for the chief of company.

When the battalion breaks by division to the right, and there is an odd company, the captain of this company, (the left,) after wheeling into column, will cause it to oblique to the left, halt it at company distance from the preceding division, place his left guide on the direction of the column, and then align his company by the left. When the line breaks by division to the left, the odd company will be in front; its captain having wheeled it into column, will cause it to oblique to the right, halt it at division distance from the division next in the rear, place his right guide on the direction of the other guides, and align the company by the right. If the battalion breaks by division to the rear, whether by the right or left, the pivot flank of the odd company will be in the true direction of the column; but if the movement be made by the right, the odd company will close upon the next division to company distance, and if the movement be made by the left, the company will open out from the next division to division distance.

(*b.*) When the battalion presents an odd number of companies, the formation will be made in like manner, and the company on either flank which shall find itself without a corresponding one, will place itself at company distance behind the wing to which it belongs.

The double column never being formed when two or more battalions are to be in one general column, it will habitually take the guide to the right, sometimes to the left, or in the centre of the column; in the last case the command will be: *guide centre*. The column will march and change direction according to the principles prescribed for a simple column by division.

The double column at company distance will be closed in mass, or, if in mass, will take half distance, by the commands and means indicated for a simple column by division.

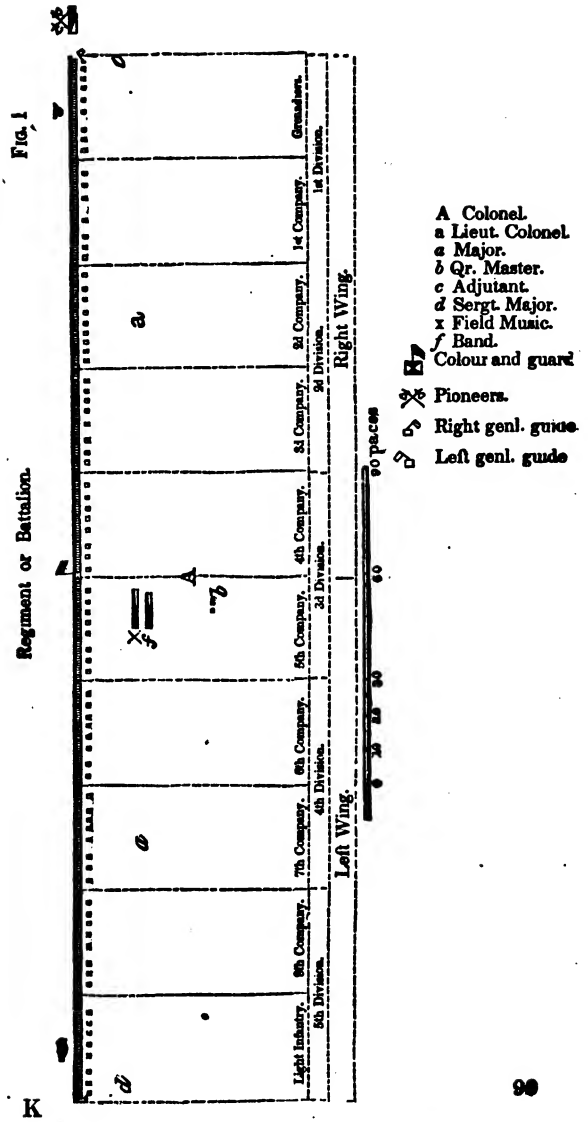
(*c.*) The column, by company, being in march, the colonel will cause it to diminish front by platoon, from front to the rear, at once, and to increase front by platoon in like manner, which movements will be commanded and executed as prescribed, page 45, changing the command *form company* to *form companies*. So may he increase and diminish, or diminish and increase front, according to the same principles and at once, by company, changing the command *form companies* to *form divisions*, and the command *break into platoons*, to *break into companies*. In this case, the companies and divisions will execute what is prescribed for platoons and companies respectively.

561281

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Fig. 1



Digitized by Google

FIG. 2.

FIG. 3.

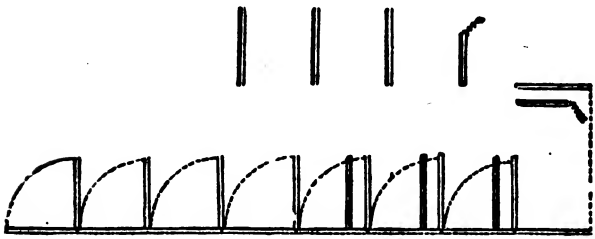


FIG. 4.

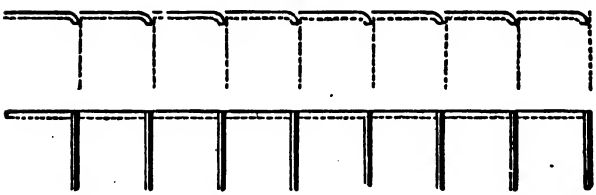


FIG. 5.

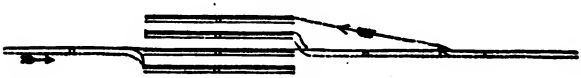
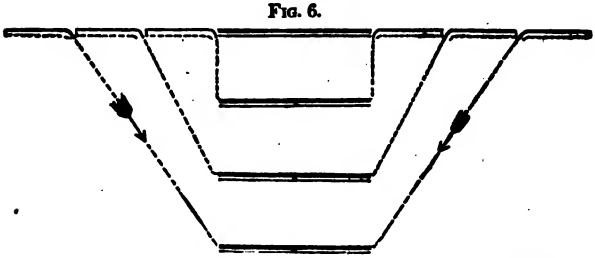


FIG. 6.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 7.

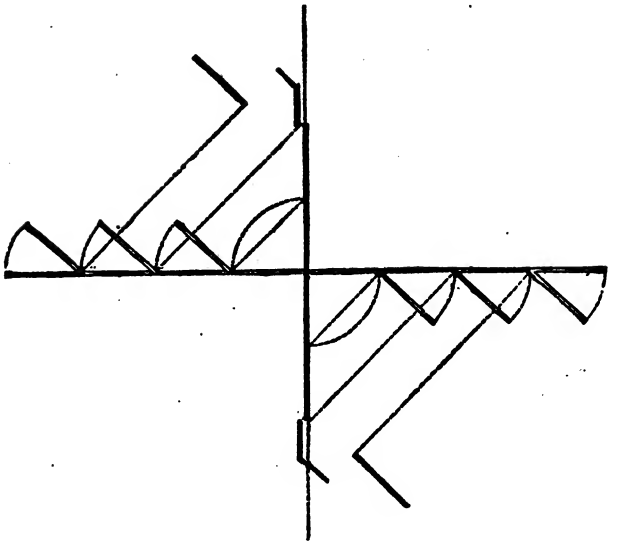
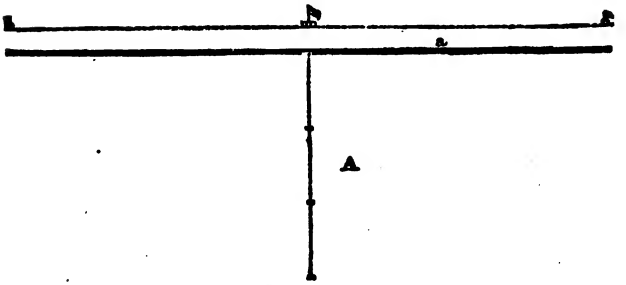


FIG. 8.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 10.

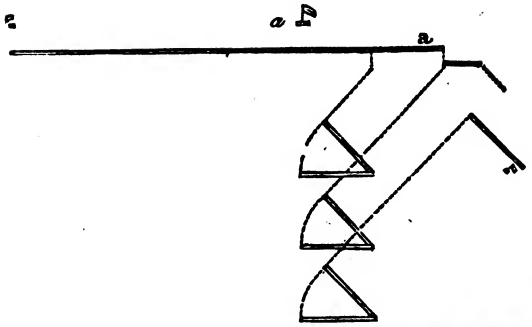


FIG. 9.

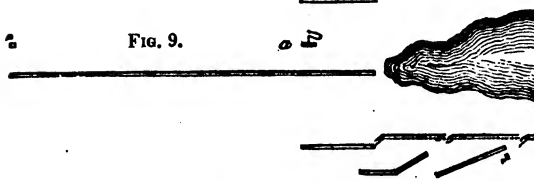


FIG. 11.

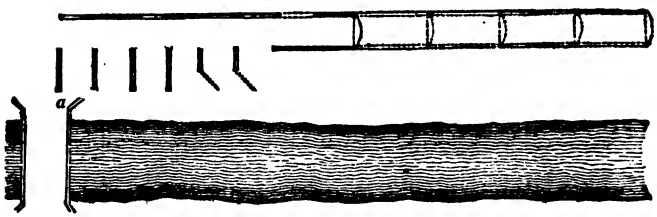
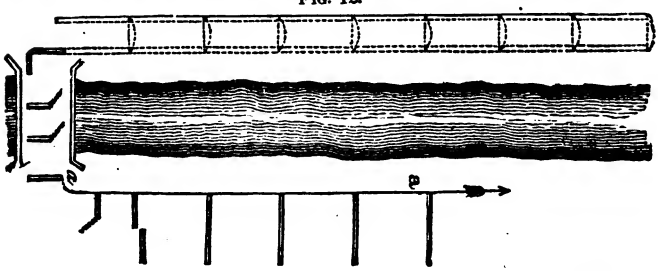


FIG. 12.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 13.

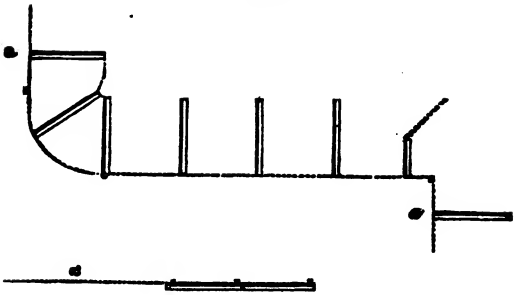
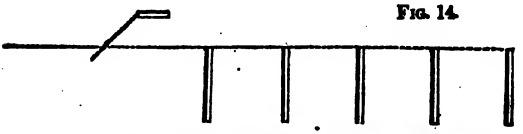


FIG. 14.



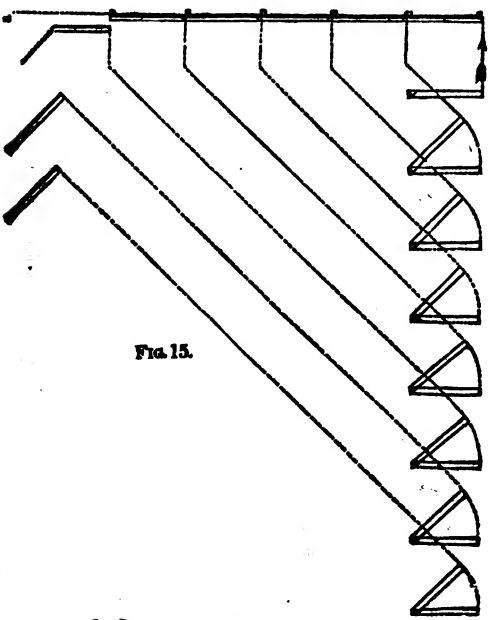


FIG. 15.

Digitized by Google

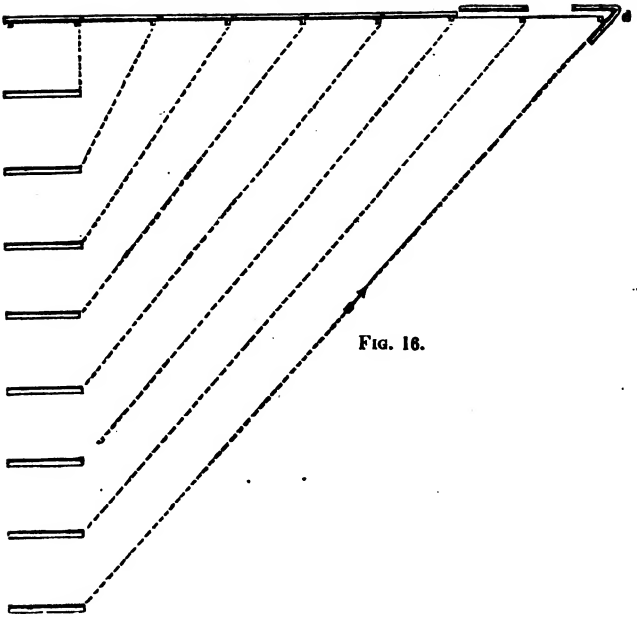


FIG. 16.

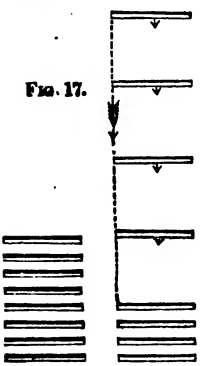


FIG. 17.

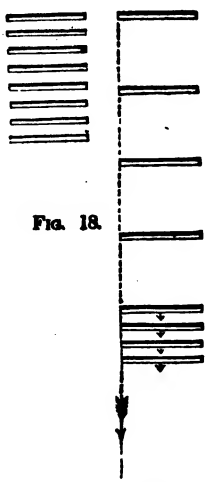


FIG. 18.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 19.

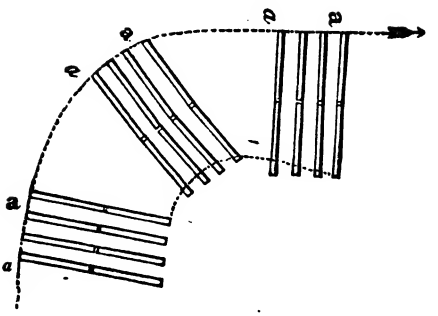


Fig. 20.

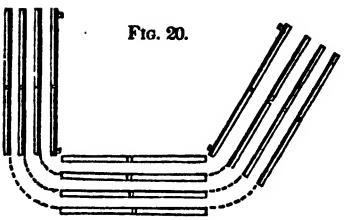


Fig. 21.

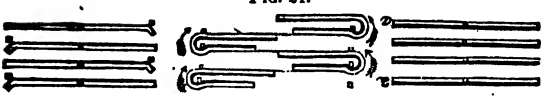


Fig. 22.

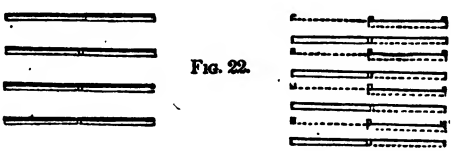
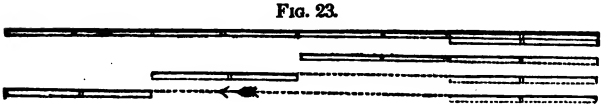


Fig. 23.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 24.

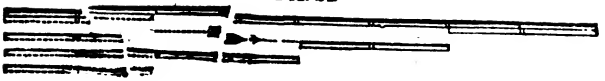


FIG. 25.

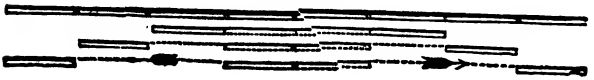


FIG. 26.

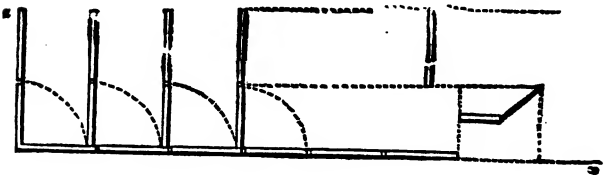


FIG. 27

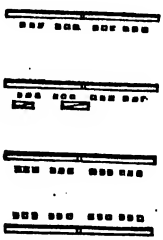


FIG. 28.

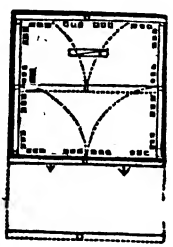


FIG. 29

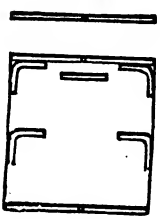
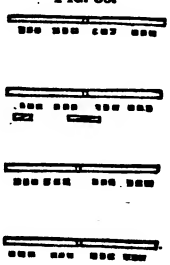


FIG. 30.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 31.

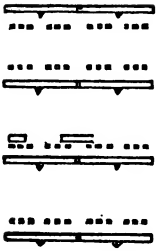
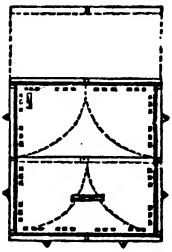


FIG. 32.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

LIGHT INFANTRY AND RIFLE.

SUPPLEMENT TO PART I.

Skirmishers.

By the term *skirmishers*, will be understood any company or body of infantry, whether denominated grenadiers, light infantry, rifle, or battalion companies thrown out and deployed into open files or loose order

The term will only be applied to companies whilst so extended. The moment that either shall be reassembled or reformed into closed files, it will take its habitual denomination of *grenadiers, light infantry, rifle, first company*, &c.; or in case of an isolated battalion company, the simple denomination of *company*. From the same moment, the company or companies, will again be subjected to all the rules and principles prescribed for the government of one or more companies in the preceding pages.

The service of skirmishers will habitually be performed by the left flank companies of battalions, (light infantry and rifle); but as the number of such companies may frequently be insufficient, the entire battalion will be equally instructed in this supplement.

Skirmishers will be thrown out to clear the way for, and to cover the movements of the main corps to which they appertain; accordingly, they may be thrown out to the front, to a flank, to the rear, or in the several directions, as may be deemed necessary. They will render their movements subordinate to those of the main corps, so as constantly to cover it in the direction to which they were thrown.

The movements of a body of skirmishers, though made in loose files, require to be systematized, in order to give their commander the means of directing them according to his views, and with the greatest promptitude. Nevertheless, it will not be expected that those movements should be made with the same precision in all their bearings, as if made by closed ranks and files; because, to attain that accuracy, would diminish what is more important in a body of skirmishers—rapidity of execution.

Every body of skirmishers will always have a reserve, the strength and composition of which will vary according to circumstances. If within sustaining distance of the main corps, each company thrown out will generally have a third of its strength as a reserve to reienforce the line of skirmishers, and to serve them as a rallying point. If the main corps be at too great a distance, another reserve will be necessary, composed of an entire company, or it may be of companies, destined to sustain and re-enforce such parts of the line of skirmishers as may be hotly attacked. This reserve ought to be strong enough to relieve at least a half of the companies deployed as skirmishers.

Reserves ought to be placed behind the centres of the lines of skirmishers—company reserves at about 140, and the principal reserve at 370 paces. This rule, however, will not be invariable; the commander, always holding his reserve within sustaining distance, will next take care to profit by any accident the ground may present, (such as trees, houses, fences, hollows,) to put it under cover from the fire of the enemy.

The movements of skirmishers will generally be made in quick time; but in circumstances which demand a greater rapidity, *double quick time*, (at the rate of one hundred and forty steps in a minute,) and even the

Digitized by Google

run will be employed; this last, however, only in cases of absolute necessity.

In all the movements, skirmishers (that is, men in open files) will carry their muskets, or rifles in the manner most convenient to each skirmisher, taking care to avoid accidents.

The movements of skirmishers will be executed, as far as possible, by the voice of the commander; but when the line shall be too extended for his voice to be heard, he will substitute the soundsof the bugle or beats of the drum, which are indicated at the end of this supplement.

Other conventional signs may, for particular cases, (as the want of both drum and bugle,) be adopted to express the same commands; as the sword held at arm's length above the head, to the right, left, front, or rear, without, or with the cap in the other hand; without, or with a kerchief attached to the point of the sword.

Officers, and in case of need, sergeants, will cause each command to be executed as soon as it shall be heard or seen; but when announced by means of the bugle or drum, to avoid mistakes, they will wait till the signal is ended, and then commence the movement.

Digitized by Google

A SUPPLEMENT TO PART I.

OF THE COMPANY.

Deployments.

A COMPANY may be deployed as skirmishers, either forward, or by the flank. It is deployed forward, when it is behind the line on which it is to be established; and by the flank when already on that line. In both cases it is divided into three platoons: the right and left platoons, denominated respectively, *first* and *second* platoons, form the line of skirmishers; the *centre* platoon, the reserve.

A company may be deployed, as skirmishers, on its left, on its right, or on its centre file.

A line of skirmishers ought, as far as possible, to be aligned; but to obtain this regularity, advantages which the ground may present for covering the men, ought not to be neglected.

The intervals between files of skirmishers depend on the extent of ground to be covered; but they should not exceed ten, or, at most, fifteen paces.

The front to be occupied to cover a battalion, comprehends the front of the battalion and half of each interval on the right and left of the battalion.

1*st. To deploy forward.* (FIG. 1.)

The company being at a halt, to deploy it forward on the left file, the captain, previously to giving the order, indicates to the left guide the point towards which he is to direct himself, and cautions the centre platoon that is to form the reserve.

Deploy as skirmishers.—The first and second lieutenants throw themselves respectively on the right and left flanks of the company; the third sergeant places himself two paces in front of the centre of the company, to move forward on a line with the skirmishers between the platoons; the third

Digitized by Google

lieutenant takes command of the centre platoon, two paces behind the centre of the file-closers, and cautions it to stand fast.

On the left file, at ten paces, take intervals. Quick (or *double quick*) *march.*—At the word *march*, the first and second platoons put themselves in movement; the left guide conducts the left file towards the indicated point; the other files, throwing forward the left shoulder, advance in double quick time, or in a run, (according as the order is, *quick* or *double quick*,) diagonally to the front and to the right, in order to gain to the right the space of ten paces, which ought to separate each file from that next on its left; when the second file, counting from the left, arrives abreast with the first, it conforms itself to the direction of the latter, takes the quick step, holds itself steadily at ten paces from the first, and on the same alignment; the third file, and all the others towards the right, as they successively arrive on the alignment, conform themselves to what is prescribed for the second; the right guide arrives with the last file; the first and second lieutenants, at the commencement, throw themselves behind the centres of the right and left platoons respectively, and direct their movements.

When the left guide arrives at the point where the left of the line is to rest, the captain halts the skirmishers; each rear-rank man immediately places himself two paces on the left of his file-leader; the files which are not yet in line promptly come into it, taking the prescribed intervals, and aligning themselves by the left.

The line being formed, the first and second sergeants throw themselves ten paces behind the first two files of the right and left respectively, and the third sergeant at a like distance behind the centre of the line.

The first and second lieutenants promptly rectify any irregularity committed in the taking of intervals; they then throw themselves twenty or thirty paces behind the centres of their respective platoons. Each of these officers has with him two men taken from his platoon before the commencement of the movement.

The fourth and fifth sergeants, and the second bugler or drummer, remain with the reserve; the fourth sergeant on its left flank, the fifth as file-closer.

At the beginning of the deployment, the third lieutenant

Digitized by Google

marches the reserve, by the shortest line, to about a hundred and forty paces behind the centre of the line of skirmishers, halts, faces it to the front, and maintains it steadily at that distance; the reserve conforms itself to all the movements of the line.

The captain gives a general superintendence to the whole deployment, and then throws himself about seventy paces in rear of the line, taking with him the first bugler or drummer, and two or three men from the reserve.

The deployment may be made on the right or centre of the company according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting *right-file* or *centre-file*, for *left-file:* if on the centre file, the right file of the second platoon closes upon the third sergeant in marching, and all the other files to the right and left, take their intervals from the centre, the third sergeant serving as the guide whilst deploying.

111

On whatever file, the right, left, or centre, the deployment may be made, the rear-rank men place themselves to the left of their respective file-leaders at the moment of forming the line.

2d. To deploy by the flank.

To deploy the company from a halt, on the left file, the captain, previously to giving the caution, indicates to the right guide the point on which to direct himself.

Deploy as Skirmishers.—The first and second lieutenants and the third sergeant conform themselves to what is prescribed under this command in the preceding case; the third lieutenant in rear of the centre platoon, cautions it to face about.

By the right flank, at ten paces, take intervals. } The centre platoon faces about, and its chief marches it to the point which it is to occupy as the reserve, halts and faces it to the skirmishers; the other platoons face to the right, the left file of the second standing fast; the first and second lieutenants, each places himself by the left file of his platoon; the right guide on the left of the right file to conduct it.

Quick (or *Double-Quick*)*-March.*—At the word *march*, given the instant the centre platoon has cleared the line, the first platoon stands fast until joined by the second, when the lieutenant of the former gives the words, (such)

111

Digitized by Google

platoon, forward, quick (or *double-quick*) *march;* in the mean time the second platoon commences the movement; its left file stands fast; the next file halts at the distance of ten paces from the first, the third at the same distance from the second, and so on to the right file of the first platoon. As each file halts in succession it faces to the enemy, and each rear-rank man places himself two paces on the left of his file-leader.

The captain and first and second lieutenants conform themselves to what is prescribed in the first case.

The deployment on the right file is executed on the same principles, substituting in the command, *left* for *right.*

(Fig. 2.) To deploy on the centre, the captain, previously to giving the caution, causes the centre platoon to march towards its position as the reserve, closes the intervals between the remaining platoons, and indicates to the two guides the direction in which each ought to march.

Deploy as Skirmishers, by the right and left Flanks, on the Centre, at ten (or —) *paces, take Intervals.* } The right file of the second platoon stands fast; the first platoon faces to the right, the second to the left; the right and left guides place themselves by the side of the leading files of their respective platoons to conduct them.

Quick (or *Double-Quick*)*–March.*—The two platoons march in opposite directions; the file next on the right, and the file next on the left of the centre file, each halts at ten paces from this file, and all the other files halt each at the same distance from the file next in its rear.

The officers conform themselves to what is prescribed in the first case.

Any interior file, other than that on the right of the second platoon, may be designated as the directing file; in which case the third sergeant places himself on the right of the designated file, and the deployment is executed in the manner just prescribed.

3*d. To extend intervals.*

The line of skirmishers being at a halt, intervals are extended to the left as follows: (Fig. 3.)

Digitized by Google

By the left flank, five (or ——) *paces, Extend intervals. Quick* (or *Double-quick*)*–March.* } The number of paces designated,

will be understood as so many paces in addition to the then intervals. The right file stands fast, the others face to the left, and extend in the manner prescribed in the second case

The line being in march by the front, will be extended to the right as follows:

On the left file five (or ——) *paces, extend intervals. Quick* (or *Double-quick*)*–March.* } The left file continues to

march on the point of direction, all the others extend intervals in the manner prescribed in the first case.

Intervals may be extended by the right flank, by the right and left flanks at once, and also on the right file according to the principles just given.

(Fig. 3.) If, in extending intervals, the object be to make one company occupy a line as skirmishers, which had been occupied by two, the files of the retiring company throw themselves successively to the rear, and form company in close order, in proportion as they are replaced on the line.

4th. To close intervals.

The line of skirmishers being at a halt, will close on the left as follows: (Figs. 4 & 5.)

By the left flank, five (or ——) *paces, Close intervals. Quick* (or *Double-quick*)*–March.* } The left file stands fast; the

others face to the left, close on that file the number of paces prescribed, and face to the right as each halts.

The number of paces named in the command, denote the number of paces less than the then intervals.

The line being in march to the front, will close on the lef. file as follows:

On the left file, five (or ——) *paces, Close intervals. Quick* (or *Double-quick*)*–March.* } The left file continues to

march on the point of direction; the other files, each throws forward the right shoulder, assumes the double-quick step or run, according as the command is *quick* or *double-quick* and inclines to the left until its interval is reduced the prescribed number of paces.

Digitized by Google

Intervals are closed by the right flank, and on the right or centre file, according to the principles just given.

(Figs. 4 & 5.) When intervals are reduced in order to receive a reinforcement of skirmishers, that is, for example, to cover the same extent of ground with two companies which had been covered by one, the new company is so deployed as to finish the movement at about twenty paces behind the line which it will have to occupy, and its files successively throw themselves on that line in proportion as they are unmasked by the files of the old company. The reserves of the two companies unite behind the centre of the line.

5th. To relieve a company deployed as skirmishers.

(Figs. 6 & 7.) When a company so deployed, is to be relieved, the captain is advised of the intention, and communicates it to the first and second lieutenants.

The new company executes its deployment *forward* so as to finish the movement at about twenty paces in rear of the line. Arrived at this distance, the files of the new company by command of their captain, throw themselves a few paces beyond the old line and halt; the new line being established, the old company assembles on its reserve.

If the skirmishers to be relieved are marching in retreat, the company thrown out to relieve them, deploys by the flank, as prescribed in the second case. The old skirmishers continue to retire with order, and after having passed the new line, they rally on their reserve.

To march in advance.

When a company, deployed as skirmishers, marches in line, the guide is habitually in the centre; if it be intended that the directing guide shall be on the flank, the words *guide left* (or *right*) will precede the word *march.*

Whether the skirmishers march in line, or by a flank, the first and second lieutenants, and in case of need, the sergeants repeat, with the greatest rapidity, all the commands for the movement.

Skirmishers forward.—The three sergeants throw themselves on the line, the first on the right, the second on the left, and the third in the centre: the chief of the reserve gives the words, *platoon forward, guide left*

Digitized by Google

Quick (or *double-quick*) *march.*—At the word *march.* the line and the reserve step off; the guide charged with the direction, marches on the point indicated to him: the skirmishers hold themselves aligned on this guide, and preserve their intervals towards him. The first and second lieutenants, each directs the movements of his platoon, holding himself behind its centre.

To halt the skirmishers advancing.

Skirmishers—Halt.—At the word *halt*, the line and the reserve halt: the first and second lieutenants, if necessary, promptly rectify the alignment and intervals, and then take their places, as also the three sergeants.

To march in retreat.

Skirmishers in retreat.—The reserve and skirmishers face about; the skirmishers individually, the reserve by command of its chief, and the three sergeants throw themselves on the line as prescribed in the advance in line.

Quick (or *double-quick*) *March.*—At the word *march*, the skirmishers and the reserve step off in conformity with what is prescribed in the advance in line. The chief of the reserve behind the front-rank, now the rear, maintains his platoon opposite the centre of the line at the prescribed distance.

To halt the skirmishers retreating.

Skirmishers—Halt.—At the word *halt*, the skirmishers and the reserve halt and face to the front, the skirmishers individually, the reserve by command of its chief. The first and second lieutenants rectify the alignment and intervals, and then resume their places, as also the three sergeants.

To march by a flank.

Skirmishers, by the right flank.—The skirmishers face to the right; the right guide throws himself to the side of the leading man, to conduct him; the reserve also faces to the right by command of its chief.

Quick (or *double quick*) *march.*—At the word *march*, the skirmishers and the reserve put themselves in march: the right-guide directs himself on the point indicated to him each skirmisher follows in trace of the one immediately preceding, and preserves his distance.

Digitized by Google

The march by the left flank is executed according to the same principles, substituting in the commands *left* for *right*.

To halt the skirmishers marching by a flank.

Skirmishers–Halt.—At the word *halt*, the skirmishers and the reserve halt and face to the front.

The Firings.

The fire is given either at a halt, or in marching, and alternately by the two men of the same file, who so arrange it between them, that one or the other always has his piece loaded · to this end the right hand (front-rank) man fires and loads; the left hand (rear-rank) man withholds his fire until the first shall have rammed; the second, in his turn, waits, in like manner, for the first, and so on in continuation.

To fire at a halt.

Commence Firing.—This command is executed according to the rules just prescribed; the men are not to remain in the same place whilst reloading, unless covered by some chance object.

To fire marching

This fire, like that at a halt, is executed by the command, *commence firing.*

At this command, if the line be advancing, the front-rank man of every file halts, fires, and reloads, before throwing himself forward; the rear-rank man of the same file continues to march eight or ten paces beyond the first, halts, fires, and reloads; the front-rank man having reloaded, throws himself forward a like distance beyond his rear-rank man, and fires again, conforming himself to what has just been prescribed, and so on in continuation.

If the line be marching in retreat, the front-rank man of every file halts, faces about, fires, and then reloads whilst throwing himself to the rear; the rear-rank man of the same file continues to march, halts at eight or ten paces beyond the front-rank man, faces about, fires, and then observes what is just prescribed for the front-rank man; the latter man at the same distance in rear of his rear-rank man, halts again faces about, finishes loading, fires, and then does as he had done before, and thus the alternate fire by the men of the same file is continued.

Digitized by Google

If the company be in march by the right flank, the front-rank man of every file faces to the enemy, steps one pace forward, halts, fires, and throws himself behind his rear-rank man, who had been next behind him, reloading as he marches; as soon as this second man, who has continued to march, shall judge that the first has rammed, he in his turn faces to the enemy, steps one pace forward, halts, fires, and throws himself behind his front-rank man, reloading as he marches, and thus the fire is continued.

If the company be in march by the left flank, the fire is executed in the same manner; but it is the rear-rank man (the leader) who fires first.

In executing this fire, the files must avoid mingling with each other; consequently, the man who has continued to march, must never pass a man of another file, who shall be at a halt, for the purpose of firing.

Skirmishers should also be taught to load and fire kneeling and lying. In commencing the fire, officers are to see that all the files do not fire at once, but in succession.

Marching in retreat, the commander of the skirmishers takes advantage of any chance object the ground may present, to arrest the march of the enemy as long as possible.

The fire is stopped by the sound or beat indicated for that purpose: at this signal, the men cease firing, and those who have not reloaded, load. If the line be in march, it continues the movement; and of the two men of the same file, the one in front waits till the other is abreast with him.

Rallying and assembling.

A company, deployed as skirmishers, *rallies* to resist cavalry; it *assembles* under other circumstances. The rally is made in a run; the assembly in quick time.

To rally on the reserve. (Fig. 8.)

Rally on the reserve.—This command being given, the captain throws himself on the reserve, the chief of which begins the formation of the circle by throwing back a little the two flanks of the reserve. The skirmishers running in, form themselves as they successively join the reserve, on its right and left, in two ranks, without regard to height, face outwards and complete the circle. The officers and sergeants

Digitized by Google

direct the execution of the movement, and then place themselves within the circle.

These dispositions being made, the captain profits by any interval of time the cavalry may allow him for putting himself in safety against its attacks, either by rejoining his battalion, or by gaining some advantageous position: to this end he reduces the circle, and reforms the company into column by platoon, and in two platoons; he marches in this order, by the front or rear-rank; and if threatened anew by the cavalry, he halts and again forms circle, by throwing back the flanks of the two platoons; the second platoon, if not already faced by the rear-rank, is first so faced, and the other platoon by the front-rank.

The company being formed into circle, is deployed as skirmishers, as follows:

Reduce circle.—At this command, the officers and sergeants pass out; the chief of the reserve aligns it on its centre; the first and second lieutenants reform their platoons on the right and left of the reserve; which being executed, the company is deployed by one of the means already indicated.

If the suddenness of the attack leave no time to rally the skirmishers on the reserve, the rally is made by platoon; the first and second lieutenants each rallies his platoon on the ground the most advantageous behind the line of skirmishers. Pending the movement, the captain throws himself on the reserve, and so disposes it as to protect the rallying of the platoons and to resist the cavalry. The platoons being rallied, they rejoin the reserve as promptly as possible.

To rally on the battalion.

The company being deployed as skirmishers, rallies on the battalion, as follows:

Rally on the battalion.—The skirmishers of each platoon and the reserve unmask the front of the battalion, directing themselves, in a run, towards its nearest flank, and then form in its rear.

The company being formed, it places itself, for the time, whatever be its designation or number, on the left or right of the battalion, according as it may belong to the left or right wing, and if not a flank company, it will not resume

Digitized by Google

its proper place in line, except by order of the commanding officer.

To assemble on the reserve.

The company being deployed as skirmishers, assembles on the reserve, as follows:

Assemble on the reserve.—At this command, the reserve is formed in the precise order it stood before the deployment; the skirmishers assemble upon it, and each resumes his place in his previous rank and file. The company being reformed rejoins the battalion.

OF THE BATTALION.

To deploy the battalion as Skirmishers. (Fig. 9.)

The battalion being in line, it is supposed to consist of but eight companies, and that it is to deploy on the sixth company holding the three right companies in reserve. This example will serve for a battalion of ten, or any other number of companies. Each company, deployed as skirmishers, is supposed to occupy a front of one hundred paces.

The commanding officer, previously to giving the cautionary command, communicates his purpose to the lieutenant-colonel, the adjutant, and the major, the last of whom is charged with the command of the battalion reserve. He also indicates to the lieutenant-colonel the direction to be given to the line, as well as the point of rest for the sixth company, and to the major, the position in which to establish the reserve. The lieutenant-colonel throws himself eight or ten paces before the right of the sixth company, and the adjutant, a like distance before its left.

DEPLOY AS SKIRMISHERS. BY COMPANY, AT A HUNDRED PACES, ON THE RIGHT OF THE SIXTH COMPANY, TAKE INTERVALS. — At this command, the sixth and fifth captains march their companies eight or ten paces forward, make the preparatory dispositions, and give the preparatory commands for deploying forward, the sixth company on its right file, the fifth on its left file. The fourth captain causes

Digitized by Google

nis company to face to the right, the seventh and eighth captains cause their companies to face to the left.

QUICK (or *double-quick*) MARCH.—At the word *march*, the movement commences. The sixth and fifth companies deploy forward; the right guide of the sixth, directing himself on the point indicated to him by the lieutenant-colonel. The companies which have faced to the right and left, march straight forward. The fourth takes its interval of a hundred paces from the left of the fifth and then deploys forward on its left file; the seventh and eighth, each takes the like interval from the nearest file of the company next on its right, and then deploys forward on its right file. Each of the five companies deploys according to the principles prescribed for an isolated company, and those on the right and left of the sixth and fifth, are each aligned on these central companies, the first deployed.

The lieutenant-colonel and adjutant follow up the deployment, the first towards the right, the second towards the left, and when finished, place themselves near the commanding officer, the first on the right, the second on the left.

The company reserves are established as *echellons* in respect to each other, as follows: the reserve of the sixth, at a hundred and forty paces behind the right of its skirmishers: the reserves of the fourth and fifth, united, opposite to the interval between their skirmishers, and thirty paces nearer the line than the reserve of the sixth; the reserves of the seventh and eighth, also united, opposite to the interval between their skirmishers, and thirty paces farther from the line than the reserve of the sixth.

The major, on receiving the orders of the commanding officer, marches the battalion reserve thirty paces to the rear, and ploys it into column by company, at half distance; which being done, he conducts it to the position indicated by the commanding officer.

The commanding officer superintends the general deployment, and when finished, throws himself at a point in rear of the line, whence his view may best embrace all the parts in order to direct their movements.

If, instead of deploying forward, it be intended to deploy by the flank, the sixth and fifth companies are marched eight or ten paces forward, halted and deployed, the sixth on its right file, the fifth on its left, by the means indicated

Digitized by Google

in the second case in the drill of the company. Each of the other companies marches by the flank, and as soon as the last file of each, nearest to the point of direction, shall have taken the interval of one hundred paces, the company moves up on the line, halts, and deploys.

The battalion, in the preceding cases, has been supposed to commence each movement from line: if, on the contrary, it be in column, the deployment is made by the same commands and according to the same principles, observing what follows:—If to deploy *forward*, the directing company, as soon as unmasked, marches eight or ten paces in front of the line which had been occupied by the head of the column, halts, and then deploys on the designated file; each of the other companies, marching by the flank, takes its interval to the right or left, halts, and then deploys forward.—If to deploy *by the flank;* the directing company advances as before, halts, and then deploys on the designated file; each of the other companies, having taken its interval to the right or left, moves up on the line, halts, and then deploys as soon as the company next towards the direction shall have finished its deployment.

The echellons in the example given, descend from right to left; they may be posted on the same principles so as to descend from left to right. The commanding officer indicates to the captains, before the commencement of the deployment, the number of paces which the reserve of each company ought to take to the rear.

When the colour-company is to be deployed as skirmishers, the colour, without its guard, is detached, and remains with the battalion reserve.

To rally the battalion deployed as skirmishers. (Figs. 10, 11.)

The commanding officer rallies his battalion by the commands indicated for the rally of a company, and so disposes the battalion reserve as to protect this movement.

The companies deployed as skirmishers rally in squares on their respective reserves: each reserve forms the firs front of the square; the skirmishers who rally first form the lateral fronts, and the other files the fourth front. The officers and sergeants direct the rally, and form the men, as

Digitized by Google

they successively arrive, into two ranks, without regard to height, and cause them to face outwards.

The rally being effected, the commanders of company squares (senior captains, and the sixth captain) profit by an interval of time the cavalry may allow for putting them in safety, either by marching upon the battalion reserve, or by taking an advantageous position: to this end, each of those squares is formed into column, and marched in this order, and if threatened anew, it halts, and again forms itself into square.

As the companies successively arrive near the battalion reserve, each reforms as promptly as possible, and, without regard to designation or number, takes the place in the column next in rear of the companies already in it.

The battalion reserve also forms square, if itself threatened by cavalry.

Indication of movements which may be executed by the sounds of the bugle, or beats of the drum.

	No. of sounds.	No. of beats.		No. of sounds.	No. of beats.
Double-quick march.	12	15	Cease firing.....	18	14
Run.....	13	16	March by the right flank.....	19	1
Forward march.....	14	5			
Halt.....	15	17	March by the left flank.	20	12
March in retreat.....	16	18	Rally on the reserve.	21	2
Commence firing.....	17	19	Rally on the battalion.	22	3

REMARK.—The words of command given by the instructor who represents the commander in the company manœuvres of Light Infantry, are printed in italics at the beginning of the paragraphs; but in the battalion manœuvres of Light Infantry, they are printed in capitals

Digitized by Google

Fig. 1.

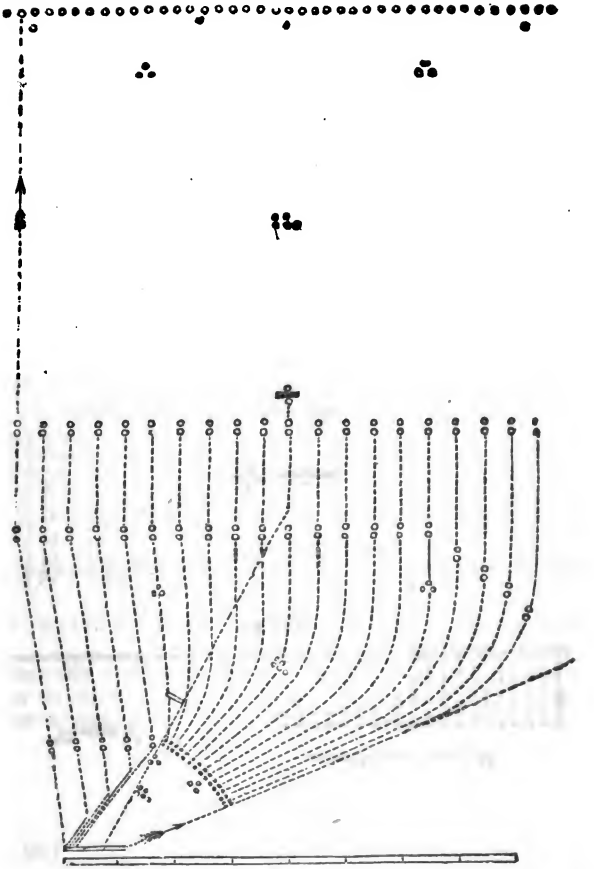
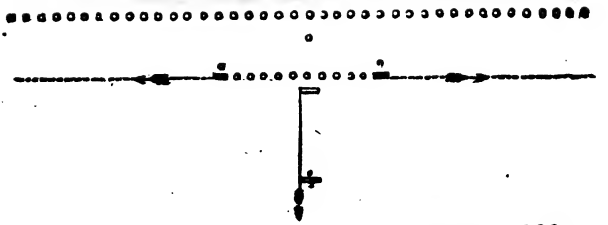


Fig. 2.



Digitized by Google

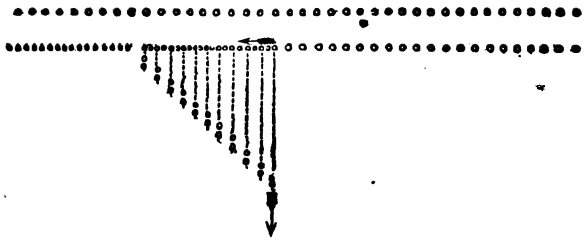


Fig. 3.

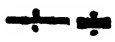
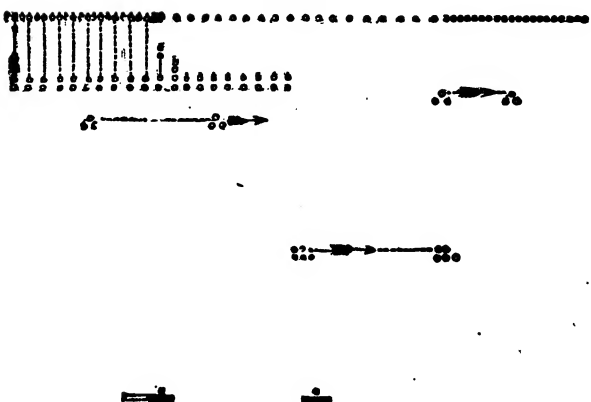


Fig. 4.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 5.

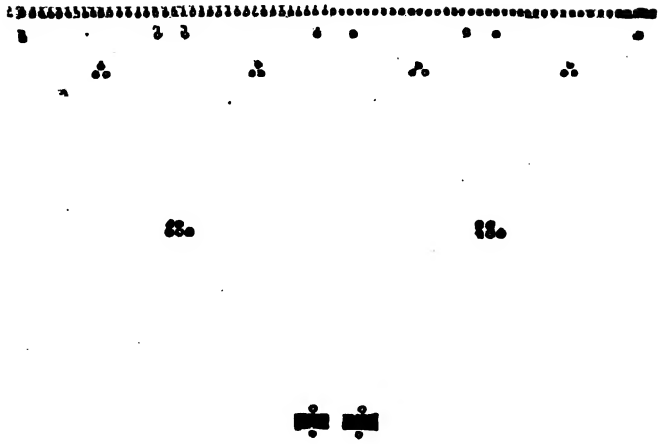
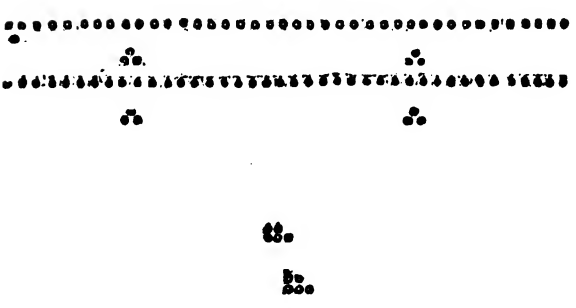


FIG. 6



Digitized by Google

FIG. 7.

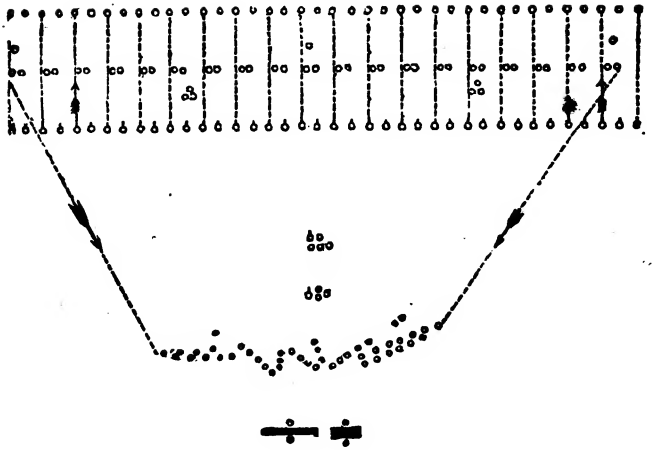
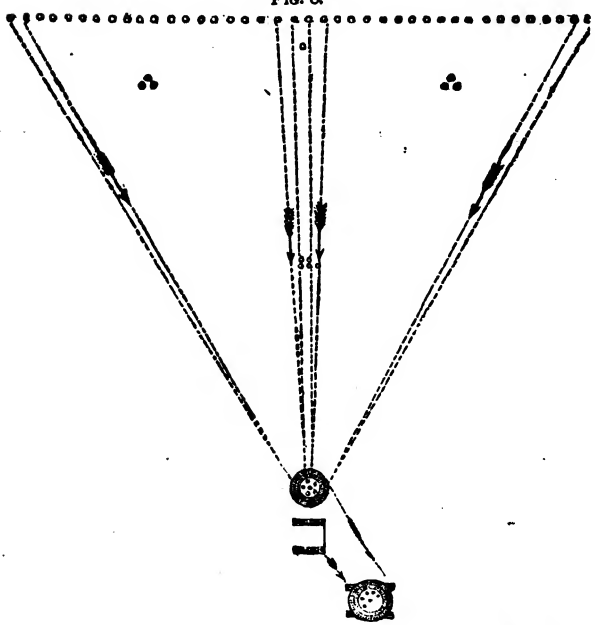
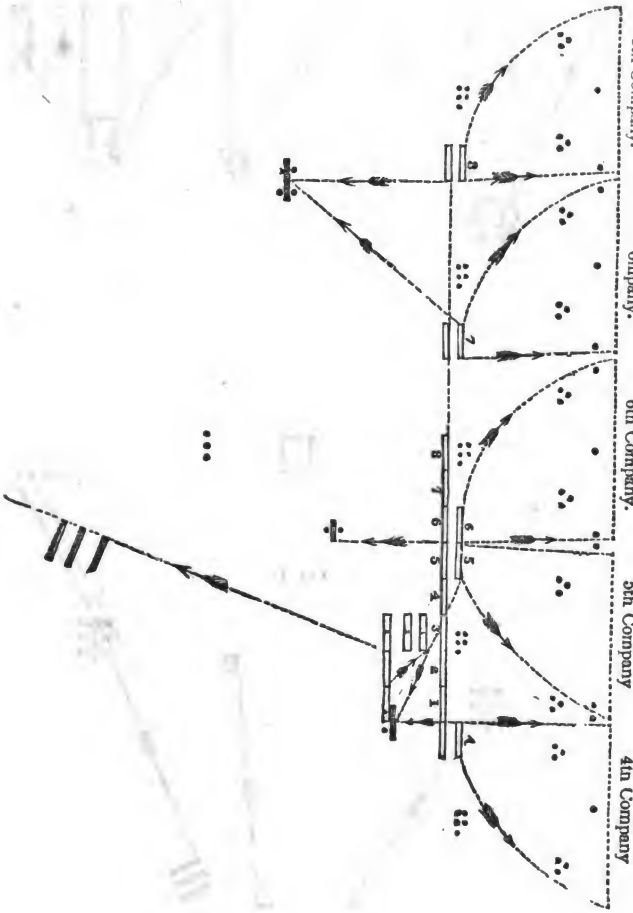


FIG. 8.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 9.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 10

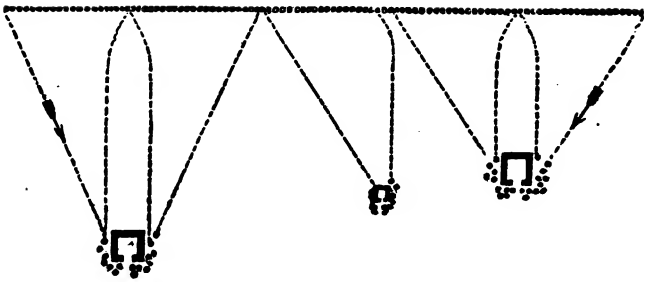
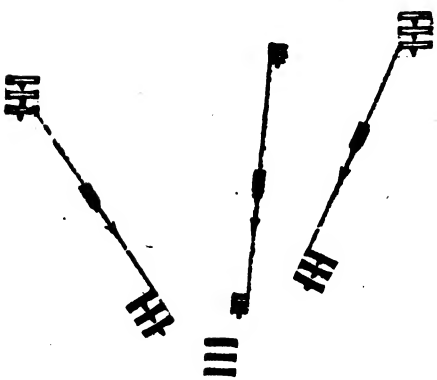


FIG 11



Digitized by Google

PART II.

CAVALRY TACTICS.

Digitized by Google

The words of command given by the Instructor, (who represents the commander,) are printed in CAPITAL *letters.*

When the Captain is the Instructor, the First Lieutenant takes the place of the Captain in the company, the Second Lieutenant replaces the First Lieutenant, and the Third Lieutenant the Second, &c. The Instructor moves wherever his presence may be most needed.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

It is not to be expected that the militia or volunteer Cavalry are to be instructed in all the minutiæ practised by the regular Cavalry. It will be sufficient that every man learns the rudiments of Infantry formations, to act occasionally on foot, and to *mount* and *dismount* with ease. to sit a horse naturally, and to have his stirrups sufficiently short to enable him to command his horse, and to rise in them to strike, when it may be necessary to use the sword or the lance.

The manœuvres are simple, and can easily be learned. The sword exercise is reduced to a very few motions. It has not been thought necessary to enter into all the cuts usually practised by Cavalry in the attack and defence; it is deemed sufficient that a militia or volunteer trooper should be able to draw and return his sword with agility, to pay the compliments with grace, and, for the attack, to come to the *preparatory*, of "*raise sword*," and dash at his adversary with *cut*, or *point*, as may be most effectual in the *charge* against horse or foot.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF PART SECOND.

	Page
Definitions of certain terms of formation and manœuvre	7
Mounting	10
Position on horseback	10
Dismounting	11
Riding lesson	11
Manual of the sword	13
Of the squad	14
Formation of the squad	15
Alignments	15
Marches to the right	16
Formations to the left	16
Formations to the right or reverse flank	17
Formations to the front	17
To advance and retire in line	18
Diminution and increase of front	18
Formation of the company	20
Formation of the squadron	21
Formation of the regiment	22
To open and close ranks	23
Posts of officers and others in column	23
Of the charge or attack	24
Rules for guides and markers	25
Movements from line	27
No. 1. To change front forward on first squadron	27
2. To change front to the rear on left squadron	28
3. To change front on central squadron	28
4. To break to the right into column	29
5. To break to the right, to march to the left	29
6. To break to the right to the rear, to march to the left	30
7. To ploy into close column on second squadron	30
8. To advance in echellon of squadrons	31
9. Passage of lines to the front	32
10. Passage of lines to the rear	32
11. To march in line	33
Movements from close column	35
No. 1. To deploy on second squadron	35
2. To wheel into line on rear squadron	35
3. To change direction from a halt	36
4. Countermarch	37
Movements from open column	37
No. 1. To form line to the left	37
2. To form line to the right by inversion	38
3. To form line to the front	38
4. To form line to the front on rear company	39
5. To form line faced to the rear	39
6. To form line faced to the rear on rear company	40
7, 8. To form line by two movements	40, 41
9. To form on right into line	41
10. To form close column	42
Skirmishing	42

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PART II.

CAVALRY.

Definitions of certain terms of Formation and Manœuvre.

A Rank—Is any number of men side by side in line

Cavalry are said to be marching by—

Files—When each front-rank man has his rear-rank man following him, the whole in one single string.

Twos—When each front-rank "two" has its rear-rank "two" following it, being a column two abreast.

Fours—When each front-rank "four" has its rear-rank "four" by its side, being a column eight abreast.

Sections of Fours—When each front-rank "four" has its rear-rank "four" following it, being a column four abreast.

A Platoon—Is the fourth part of a squadron. Platoons in squadron are numbered 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, from the right.

A Company—Is the half of a squadron. Companies are right and left in each squadron.

A Squadron—Two or more squadrons compose a corps or regiment. Squadrons are numbered 1st, 2d, 3d, &c. from the right.

Close Order—The ordinary distance at which the rear rank is formed behind the front-rank—one yard or pace.

Open Order—The increased distance taken by the rear rank on some occasions of parade—six yards or paces.

Front—The direction towards which the line faces when formed—the extent from flank to flank—that is, the breadth.

The extent of front of a squadron is to be calculated at about as many yards as it contains files.

Depth—Distance from front to rear.

Distance—Space between one division and another in column.

From one horse to another when marching in file, twos fours, or sections of fours—one yard.

Digitized by Google

From one squadron to another in close column—ten yards

From one squadron, company, or platoon, to another, in open column. The extent of front of such squadron, company, or platoon, taken from front-rank to front-rank, adding ten paces for the interval between squadrons when in line.

The depth of two ranks, taking the length of the fullest sized cavalry horses, at eight feet, and the distance between the ranks at three feet, is to be reckoned at about nineteen feet.

Intervals—Spaces between squadrons and regiments in line—those between squadrons, ten paces; those between regiments, fifteen.

Points of Direction—Objects towards which it is intended to march in line or column. The directing guide must march perfectly straight, by always keeping in line two objects at some distance before him.

Flank.—The extremity of the right or left of a military body in line or column.

Directing Flank—That flank of a column towards which the guides cover in marching. When the column is marching with the right in front, the left is the directing flank, with the left in front, the right (except under peculiar circumstances or manœuvres.) The directing flank is indicated by the commands "*guide left*," or "*guide right*," as the case may be, and the dressing is towards that flank. Pressure must be yielded when coming from that flank, and resisted when coming from the opposite flank.

Pivot—The man on that flank which forms the central point in wheeling.

Alignment—A straight line, upon which a body of troops is to form.

Every division which is to be aligned upon another, will halt abreast of the rear-rank, parallel to the line of formation, to move forward into the alignment of the division already formed.

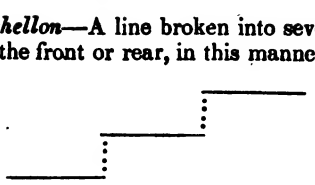
Inversion—When the squadrons are not in their proper order; or when the right are to the left, and the left to the right.

Column—A line broken into several parts, each part following exactly behind the other.

Column of Route—A column (of twos or sections of fours) for convenience and ease.

Digitized by Google

Direct Echellon—A line broken into several parts, moving direct to the front or rear, in this manner—



Oblique Echellon—A line broken into several parts by wheels from line, or column, less than the quarter circle, so as to be oblique to the former front, and parallel with each other—thus:

Paces—There are three paces, the walk, the trot, and the gallop.—The walk at the rate of three and a half to four miles an hour. The trot at eight miles and a half an hour. The gallop at eleven miles an hour. The gallop is not considered applicable to general purposes of manœuvre, though it may be used occasionally for very simple formations.

The rate of charge should not exceed the speed of the slowest horses.

To preserve uniformity of movement, the trot and gallop should commence gradually, and by the whole body at the same time.

The term *pace*, by which distance and intervals are measured, is reckoned at one yard.

Commands—Are of two kinds, those of caution and those of execution. They should be given in a firm and clear tone, and repeated by the chiefs of subdivisions. There should be a short pause between the command of caution and of execution. At the command of caution, chiefs of subdivisions will caution their subdivisions as to the particular movement which each has to perform.

The commands *march* and *halt* should be instantly repeated by chiefs of subdivisions. When a line breaks from a halt by a wheel, the chief of each subdivision will judge of the instant when the movement ought to finish to order *halt*, and *left*, or *right–dress*.

At the word *march*, a line or column will move at a walk,

Digitized by Google

unless the command indicates a different pace. When a command is not distinctly heard by some part of the line, each officer (when the intention is obvious) will conform as quickly as possible to the movement which he sees executed on his right or left, according to the point from whence he perceives it to be given.

Mounting.

STAND TO HORSE.—The position of the man is on the left side of the horse, square to the front; toes on a line with the horse's fore feet; right hand, back upwards, holding the rein of the snaffle over the curb, six inches from the ring of the bitt; left hand hanging down by the thigh.

PREPARE TO MOUNT.—Face to the right, place the left hand where the right was, and run the right up to the middle of the reins or *knob*, which is held between the finger and thumb; step to the right opposite the horse's shoulder, and taking both sides of the curb-rein with the left hand, just under the right, put the little finger between them, the back of the hand towards the horse's head; run down the left hand to the neck of the horse, and still holding the bridle, seize with the fore-fingers of the left hand, a lock of the mane, about a foot from the saddle; seize the stirrup-leather with the right hand near the stirrup; step back with the right foot, and place the ball of the left in the stirrup, the left knee close to the horse's shoulder, and the right hand on the cantle of the saddle.

MOUNT.—By a spring from the right foot, rise in the stirrup, bring both heels together, knees against the saddle, and body upright; place the right hand on the pommel and support the body, while the right leg passes clear over the horse, the right knee closes on the saddle, and the body comes gently into it; the left hand quits the mane and the right the pommel; the snaffle-rein is laid with the right hand, back upwards, into the left, the middle finger dividing them, the superfluous part of the reins hanging down on the off-side: both reins are pressed between the thumb and first joint of the fore-finger, the bridle hand raised so as just to feel the horse's mouth; the right foot takes the stirrup without the aid of hand or eye.

Position on Horseback.

The body balanced in the middle of the saddle; head up-

Digitized by Google

right and square to the front; shoulders well thrown back; chest advanced; upper part of the arms hanging down straight from the shoulder; left elbow bent, and slightly closed to the hips: little finger on a level with the elbow; wrist rounded, throwing the knuckles to the front; thigh stretched down from the hip; the flat of the thigh well turned inward to the saddle; knees a little bent; legs hanging straight down from the knee and near the horse's sides; heels stretched down, the toes raised from the insteps, and as near the horse's sides as the heels.

Dismounting.

PREPARE TO DISMOUNT.—The right hand takes th rein above the left; the right foot quits the stirrup; the left hand slides forward on the rein and seizes a lock of the mane about twelve inches from the saddle, feeling the horse's mouth very gently; the right hand drops the reins to the off-side, and is placed on the holster.

DISMOUNT.—Supporting the body with the right hand and left foot, the right leg is brought clear over to the near side; heels close; the right hand on the cantle preserves the balance of the body; the right foot is brought to the ground, and then the left; seize the reins with the right hand under the left, and advance, left foot first, to the position of STAND TO HORSE.

Riding Lesson.

Aids are given by the hand and legs: corrections and animations by the spur.

To March.—At the word FORWARD, raise the hand so as to feel gently the horse's mouth, and approach the legs without closing them: this is called "to gather the horse," and is preparatory to all movements. At the word MARCH, turn the nails downwards, so as to give a little more rein, and close the calves of both legs according to the sensibility of the horse: when the horse obeys, ease the legs by degrees, and replace the hand quietly in its former position.

To Halt.—At the word HALT, feel the reins equally and firmly, drawing the hand towards the body, and closing for an instant both legs, in order to press the horse well up to the bridle: when the horse has obeyed, resume the former position.

To Rein Back.—Raise the hand a little and draw it gen

Digitized by Google

tly to the centre of the body, bending a little forward, till the horse obeys—use the calves of the legs only to keep him straight; ease the reins after every step and feel them again.

To Turn to the Right.—Open the right rein and close gradually the right leg, making the horse pass over a quarter of a circle of two or three paces, on the line of the shoulders; diminish the effect of the rein and right leg, and sustain the horse with the left rein and leg, to terminate the movement. *Turning to the Left*, is performed on the same principles, by contrary movements.

To Turn to the Right (or *Left*) *About*, is performed by similar movements continued, making the horse pass over a half circle of about five paces, on the line of the shoulders.

To Trot.—Ease the reins and press the calves of both legs, according to the horse's temper; then feel both reins to raise the fore-hand.

To Canter.—A light and firm feeling of the reins, to raise the horse's fore-hand; a pressure of both legs, to bring the haunches under him.

Passaging.—When ground is to be taken to a flank, by passaging the whole move at the words RIGHT (or LEFT) PASS, MARCH—until the word HALT. In passaging to the right, at the words RIGHT PASS, propel the horse's shoulders to the right, by opening the right rein and slightly closing the right leg: at the word MARCH, open the right rein and close the left leg, in order to make the haunches follow; hold the right leg ready to sustain the horse. Passaging to the left is executed by contrary movements.

Obliquing.—At the words RIGHT OBLIQUE, MARCH, each man makes a quarter turn of his horse to the right, so that his right knee comes behind the left knee of the man on his right; the man on the right of the rank marches steadily in the direction indicated to him, the others dress on him. The rear-rank moves in the same manner, and is regulated by the front-rank, which it takes care to conform to; and thus the horses' heads of the rear-rank are directed in rear of the second man from their leader towards the right. In obliquing to the left the same principles and contrary movements are employed.

Wheeling.—Wheelings are of two kinds, from the half,

Digitized by Google

and upon the move: in either case the dressing is to the outer or marching flank.

From the Halt.—The pivot man turns his horse on his fore-feet, keeps his ground, and comes gradually round with the rank. The outward flank man looks to his rank, regulates the pace at which the wheel is made, and conducts the flank so as to avoid crowding on the rank, the men resisting pressure from the outward and yielding to pressure from the inward flank. The rear-rank must rein back at the pivot and partly passage and incline towards the wheeling flank in order to cover.

On the Move.—Both flanks are kept in motion: the inner flank describing an arc of a lesser circle: the outer flank describing an arc of the large circle and moving about one half faster than the rate at which the body is marching: the intermediate men conforming to the movements of the flanks. Pressure must be yielded when coming from the side towards the guide, and resisted from the opposite side, whether the guide be on the pivot, or the marching flank.

In the evolutions, the wheelings are on a fixed pivot. In changes of direction in column the wheels are made on the move so as not to retard the march, the arcs described by the pivots are five paces, and when marching in column of four, or twos, the pivots wheel without slacking the pace.

The wheelings should be first practised in single rank.

In wheeling from line into column, the dressing after the wheel is to the marching flank.

Manual of the Sword.

DRAW-SWORD.—Carry the right hand over the reins; run the hand to the wrist, through the sword-knot; grasp the sword and draw it six inches out of the scabbard.

Draw the sword briskly, carry it to the right shoulder, point upwards; drop the hand on the upper part of the right thigh, the little finger on the outside of the gripe and the back of the blade in the hollow of the shoulder. This is the position of CARRY-SWORD.

SLOPE-SWORD.—Loosen the grasp of the handle, advancing at the same time the sword-hand, with the wrist turned up, so as to allow the back of the sword to rest on the shoulder in a sloping position.

Digitized by Google

CARRY-SWORD.—Draw the hand to its position, so as to allow the sword to resume its perpendicularity.

RAISE-SWORDS.—*As front-rank.* Raise the sword-hand perpendicularly and bring it as high as the chin, blade to the left and fingers opposite the face, which is the position preparatory *to give point.* Raise the wrist to the height of the eyes—the arm half extended—the edge turned towards the right, and the point a little lower than the wrist.

As rear-rank.—Raise the sword, the arm half extended the wrist a little above the head; the edge upwards, the point backwards and about one foot above the wrist. These are the positions of the sword by the two ranks just before the charge and at the shock when the men are to give point, or cut and use their swords as they see fit, after breaking the line.

CARRY-SWORDS.—Bring the sword to its original position on the thigh.

RETURN-SWORDS.—Raise the blade perpendicularly, the flat to the front, edge to the left, the thumb to the height of the chin and six inches from it. Carry the wrist near, and opposite to, the left shoulder, drop the point, turn the head to the left, return the sword, bringing the head again to the front and the hand to its position behind the thigh.

Pistol and carbine exercise are omitted, because it is deemed best to let every man use his pistol or carbine as may be most convenient to him.

Officer's Salute Mounted.

Being at the position of "CARRY-SWORDS," raise the hand by a circular motion as high as, and opposite to, the chin, with the edge of the blade to the left, then stretching the arm out, and at the same time bringing the point of the blade in a line with the knee and foot, the edge still kept to the left.

The salute being made the sword is recovered by bringing it back smartly to CARRY-SWORDS.

Dismounted.

The salute is the same as that prescribed for the infantry.

Of the Squad.

The first drills should be in single rank of squads not exceeding twelve men. The following examples apply to a

Digitized by Google

squad of sixteen men in two ranks, but they are equally applicable to a squad in single rank, by leaving out what regards the rear-rank in the instructions.

The marches and formations should be executed as often by the left as by the right; but in order to avoid repetitions of right and left, they are laid down with reference to the former hand only.

After the men go through the whole correctly at a walk the marches and formations should be performed generally at a trot.

Short halts should take place at intervals: the men should also be dismounted at least once during the drill.

Formation of the Squad.

The squad is formed in two ranks at open order, six yards distance: the men in the position of STAND TO HORSE.

ATTENTION, SQUAD—TELL OFF BY FOURS.—The men of each rank number themselves *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*, from right to left.

PREPARE TO MOUNT.—Numbers *two* and *four* step forward with the right foot, face their horses, take the snaffl rein with both hands near the ring, rein back their horse gently to the distance of four yards, and all prepare to mount.

MOUNT.—As already explained. Being mounted, numbers *two* and *four* move into their intervals gently, and the rear-rank closes to the distance of one yard from the front-rank. (FIG. 1.)

In dismounting in two ranks, at the words PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, numbers one and three of the front-rank move forward four paces, and two and four of the rear-rank rein back the same distance.

The whole are then dismounted as already explained.

Alignments.

The three right files of each rank are placed four paces forward and aligned.

BY FILE, RIGHT–DRESS.—The men of each rank advance singly and dress on the men of their respective ranks already established, taking care not to pass beyond them, and feeling the touch of the boot gently to the right.

FRONT.—The men turn their heads to the front. Dress

Digitized by Google

ing back is practised in the same manner. After the men are sufficiently practised to align by files, they are taught to align by the whole rank at once, by the command RIGHT-DRESS.

Marches to the Right.

BY FOURS.

FOURS, RIGHT.—Each rank wheels by fours to the right. (FIG. 2.)

GUIDE LEFT-MARCH.—The whole move forward dressing to the left.

By Sections of Fours.

SECTIONS OF FOURS-RIGHT.—The whole wheel fours right, as before.

GUIDE LEFT-MARCH.—The leading four of the front-rank marches straight forward, its rear-rank inclining and covering it; the remainder move off their ground in succession in the same manner: first a front-rank four, and then a rear-rank four, alternately. (FIG. 3.)

By Twos.

TWOS-RIGHT.—The right hand two of the front-rank wheels to the right; the remainder turn their horses' heads towards the right.

MARCH.—The leading two marches straight forward followed by its rear-rank two: the remainder move off their ground in succession in the same manner; first a front-rank two and then a rear-rank two, alternately, the whole covering by the left. (FIG. 4.)

Marches to the right By Files, are made according to the same principles as By Twos, substituting in the command FILES for TWOS. The files should be instructed to cover accurately.

Formations to the Left.

If the column is marching by subdivisions of eight, or if the front of subdivisions exceed that number, the column must be halted before it is wheeled into line; in other cases the formations may be made from the move.

From Fours.

COLUMN-HALT—LEFT INTO LINE WHEEL-

Digitized by Google

MARCH.—The whole of the fours wheel to the left, and dress to the right. (FIG. 5.)

From Sections of Fours.

LEFT INTO LINE–MARCH.—The leading four wheels to the left, and moves up three horses' lengths, followed by its rear-rank: the remainder continue moving on, and as each four arrives opposite its place, it wheels to the left, and forms up to the rank to which it belongs, dressing to the right. (FIG. 6.)

Formations to the left, From Twos and Files, are made according to the same principles and by the same command as From Sections of Fours. (FIG. 7.)

Formation to the Right or Reverse Flank.

These formations are made from the move.

From Fours.

ON RIGHT INTO LINE–MARCH.—The rear-rank fours check their pace till the front-rank fours of the rank next behind come up abreast of them; in the meantime the leading four of the front-rank wheels to the right, and advances three horses' lengths beyond the right flank of the column, and halts: its rear-rank wheeling to the right, covering it and moving up to the proper distance; the remainder continue to move on, each four wheeling to the right when opposite its place, and forming up to the rank to which belongs, dressing to the right. (FIG. 8.)

From Sections of Fours.

ON RIGHT INTO LINE–MARCH.—The leading four of the front-rank wheels to the right, advances three horses' lengths, and halts; its rear-rank four arriving behind it, wheels, covers, and moves up to its proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, and as each four arrives opposite its place, it wheels to the right, and forms up to the rank to which it belongs, dressing to the right. (FIG. 9.)

Formations to the right from Twos and Files, are made according to the same principles and by the same command as From Sections of Fours. (FIG. 10.)

Formations to the Front.

These formations are made from a halt, or move.

Digitized by Google

From Fours.

FRONT INTO LINE–MARCH.—The leading four of the front-rank advances three horses' lengths and halts, its rear-rank fours moving up by an incline, to its proper distance and covering it; the rest of the rear-rank fours check their pace till the front-rank fours of the rank next behind come up abreast of them, the whole moving up into line by inclining to the left, and dressing, as they come up, by the right. (FIG. 11.)

From Sections of Fours.

FRONT INTO LINE–MARCH.—The leading four of the front-rank advances three horses' lengths and halts, its rear-rank four moving up to its proper distance, and covering it: the remainder move up into line, by inclining to the left, and dressing, as they come up, to the right. (FIG. 12.)

Formations to the front, From Twos and Files, are made according to the same principles and by the same commands as From Sections of Fours. (FIG. 13.)

To Advance in Line.

SQUAD, FORWARD, GUIDE LEFT (or RIGHT) MARCH.—The whole move forward together, dressing towards the guide, who marches straight to the front on the points of direction.

To Retire in Line.

This may be done either from a halt, or on the move: in both cases the wheels about must be on a fixed pivot.

FOURS RIGHT (or LEFT) ABOUT.—Each rank wheels about by fours.

GUIDE RIGHT (or LEFT)–MARCH.–The word MARCH, to be given, the instant the fours have gone about, and the whole move forward together, dressing towards the guide.

To resume the natural order the same commands and means are observed.

Diminution and Increase of Front.

These movements are intended for the passage of defiles, and will be executed by the sub-divisions in successions, at the same given point.

In diminishing from platoons to sections of fours and so

Digitized by Google

down to files, it will be necessary first to halt the column, in order to avoid crowding and confusion, which would, otherwise, obviously arise from the want of space necessary to execute the movements.

Diminish. From Squadron to Companies.

BY COMPANIES, MARCH.—The right company continues to move forward; the left company halts until its right is cleared, when its chief gives the words *right oblique, march*, and as soon as it covers in column, *forward guide-left*

From Companies to Platoons.

BY PLATOONS-MARCH.—The first platoon continues to move forward; the second platoon halts until its right is disengaged, when its chief gives the word, *right oblique, march*, and as soon as it covers in column, *forward, guide-left.* The fourth platoon executes the same movement when it arrives at the place where the second platoon broke.

From Platoons to sections of Fours.

BY SECTIONS OF FOURS, MARCH.—The leading right hand four continues to move forward followed by its rear-rank; the leading left hand four halts until its right is disengaged when it obliques to the right, followed by its rear-rank, and covers in column by the left. All the other fours execute the same movement, as they arrive in succession on the same ground.

From sections of Fours to Twos.

BY TWOS, MARCH.—The leading right hand two followed by its rear-rank, continues to move forward; the leading left hand two, halts until its right is disengaged, when it obliques to the right, followed by its rear-rank, and covers in column by the left. All the other twos execute the same movement as they successively arrive on the same ground.

From Twos to Files.

BY FILES, MARCH.—The leading right hand file continues to move forward, followed by its left hand file, which obliques to the right for the purpose. All the other files make the same movements as each arrives at the same point

Increase. From Files to Twos.

FORM TWOS, MARCH.—The leading file continues to

Digitized by Google

move forward; the remainder move on at a trot, numbers two and four, forming on the left of one and three, as they successively arrive at those last formed, and then dropping into a walk.

From Twos to sections of Fours.

FORM SECTIONS OF FOURS, MARCH.—The leading twos move steadily forward; the remainder move on at a trot, numbers three and four forming on the left of one and two, as they successively arrive at those last formed, and then dropping into a walk.

From sections of Fours to Platoons.

FORM PLATOONS, MARCH.—The leading section moves steadily forward, the others move on at a trot, the left sections forming on the left of the right sections of platoons, as they successively arrive at those last formed, and then dropping into a walk.

From Platoons to Companies.

FORM COMPANIES, MARCH.—The first platoon moves steadily forward; the others move on at a trot, the second platoon forming on the left of the first, and the fourth on the left of the third, as they successively arrive at the same point, and then dropping into a walk.

From Companies to Squadron.

FORM SQUADRON, MARCH.—The right company moves steadily forward; the left company moves at a trot, obliques to the left, forms on the left of the right company and then drops into a walk.

In the foregoing movements, the column is supposed to be marching right in front. If the column should be marching with the left in front, the movements would be executed by inverse means.

Formation of the Company.

Each company forms on its own parade, in single rank, according to size from right to left, the tallest men and horses on the right.

The company is next divided into two equal parts, those on the right to compose the front-rank, those on the left, the rear-rank.

IN TWO RANKS FORM COMPANY.—The men com

Digitized by Google

losing the front-rank advance four paces dressing by the right. The men of the rear-rank turn their horses' heads to the right.

MARCH.—The men of the rear-rank file off to the right in rear of the front-rank: and as each arrives opposite his file-leader, he turns to the left and covers at the distance of one yard.

The company is then divided into two platoons, the first platoon on the right, the second on the left; each consisting of eight files.

The non-commissioned officers are next posted as follows: the first sergeant, on the right of the company, in the rank of file-closers, (one yard from the rear-rank,) the second, third, fourth and fifth sergeants, in the front-rank on the right and left of each platoon, each covered by a corporal. The company thus formed will present thirty-two men, including sergeants and corporals in the ranks, or sixteen files.

The captain is in front of the centre of the company, one yard from the front-rank: the first lieutenant commands the first platoon, and the second lieutenant commands the second platoon, each taking post in front of the centre of his platoon in a line with the captain.

The saddler and farrier are in rear of the left of the company, eight yards in rear of the rank of file-closers; and the trumpets twenty yards in rear of the centre.

The company being formed, the men, including the non-commissioned officers in the ranks are told off by fours, beginning on the right of each rank.

It is recommended to the militia to form and exercise in single rank, both as a simpler formation and as more useful and effective on many occasions in which they may be required to act.

Formation of the Squadron.

Two companies constitute a squadron, and when united for that purpose, the platoons are numbered from right to left, *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*.

The officers are posted as follows:

The senior captain commands the squadron and is in front of the centre, one yard from the front-rank. The junior captain three yards in rear of the centre. The first lieutenants in front of the centre of their respective companies on

Digitized by Google

a line with the senior captain, each commanding his own company: the second lieutenants in rear of the centre of their respective companies in the rank of file-closers.

The first sergeants of companies are, one on the right and one on the left of the squadron, in the rank of file-closers, to be employed as markers. The other non-commissioned officers retain their places in line.

The saddlers and farriers retain their places in their respective companies: the trumpets are twenty yards in rear of the centre of the squadron.

When a single company of militia acts in one rank, it should, unless very weak in number, be told off and formed as a squadron.

Formation of the Regiment. (FIG. 14.)

Three squadrons ordinarily constitute a regiment: the squadrons are numbered from right to left, *first*, *second*, *third*.

The intervals between the squadrons are ten yards. The colonel is eight yards in advance of the centre of the regiment, and attended by an officer and a trumpeter.

The lieutenant-colonel in front of the centre of the first, and the major in front of the centre of the third squadron; both on a line with the colonel. The adjutant on a line with the front-rank, two yards from the right: the sergeant-major on the same line, two yards from the left of the regiment.

The duties of the field officers, adjutant and sergeant-major are the same as prescribed in the infantry tactics.

The quartermaster, surgeon, and assistant-surgeon, posted from right to left in the order they are mentioned, are in the rear of the centre of the regiment, four yards from the rank of file-closers: the veterinary surgeon six yards on their left. The quartermaster-sergeant, in rear of the right of the second squadron, six yards behind the rank of file-closers.

The trumpets twenty yards in rear of the centre of the regiment.

The sergeant on the left of the right company of the centre squadron, carries the standard; and the sergeants on the left of the right platoons of companies, carry each a guidon.

Digitized by Google

To Open and Close Ranks.

The ranks being closed, the commanding officer gives the words PREPARE TO OPEN RANKS, when the markers of squadrons place themselves on the flanks of their squadrons in the rear-rank. The commanding officer then adds, TO THE REAR OPEN ORDER; at which, the markers rein back five yards and are aligned by the right, by the lieutenant-colonel. The commanding officer then gives the word MARCH, when the rear-rank reins back and is aligned by the lieutenant-colonel on the markers, the whole dressing by the right. The file-closers rein back at the word MARCH, and place themselves one yard in rear of the rear-rank. The rear-rank being aligned, the commanding officer gives the word FRONT.

When the ranks are to close, the commanding officer gives the words CLOSE ORDER, MARCH. At the word MARCH, the rear-rank closes to the front, each man covering his file-leader at the prescribed distance, and the markers take their places as file-closers.

Posts of officers and others in column.

Column of Twos or Fours, (Right in Front.)

The colonel, abreast with the centre of the regiment, eight yards from the left flank of the column.

The lieutenant-colonel and major on the same flank, the first abreast with the centre of the two first squadrons, and the last abreast with the centre of the last squadron.

The adjutant on the same flank, abreast with the leading files; the sergeant-major in rear of the column, except when the left is in front, when he is on the right flank, abreast with the leading files.

The chiefs of squadrons on the left flank opposite to the centre of their squadrons; the junior captains in the same relative position, on the right flank. The chiefs of the leading companies of squadrons, in front of their companies, the chiefs of the other companies on the left of their leading files.

The file-closers on the right flank of the column, abreast with the files they cover when in line. The trumpets six yards in advance of the officers at the head of the column.

Column of Platoons.

The field officers, adjutant and sergeant-major, as in column of fours.

Digitized by Google

The chiefs of squadrons on the left flank, abreast with their second platoons. The junior captains on the right flank, abreast with the third platoons. The chiefs of platoons on the left of their platoons. The file-closers on the right of their platoons.

The trumpets, as in column of fours.

Column of Companies.

The field officers, adjutant, and sergeant-major, as in column of platoons.

The chiefs of squadrons, junior captains of squadrons, and trumpets, as in column of platoons, all the other officers, and non-commissioned officers as in line.

Close Column. Of Squadrons.

The field officers, adjutant, sergeant-major, and trumpets, as in column of companies. All the other officers and non-commissioned officers, as in line, except chiefs of squadrons, who are on their left flanks.

The distance from one squadron to another, in close column, is ten yards.

In all movements in column, the officers not herein provided for, march in rear of the regiment.

Of the Charge or Attack.

The charge is regulated by the principles of the direct march, but is more animated and impetuous. The enemy is the point of direction, and his overthrow the object. It commences with a brisk trot, then a gallop, constantly increasing in velocity in proportion to the approach to the enemy, and finally assumes the character of an attack. There are three modes of charging. In a line parallel or oblique to the front of the enemy, by echellon, and in column.

When at a suitable distance from the enemy to make a charge, say about 250 yards, the commanding officer commands, REGIMENT, (SQUADRON OR COMPANY)—DRAW—SWORDS —TROT—MARCH. The regiment continues at a trot for 150 paces, when the commanding officer gives the word, GALLOP, which is repeated by the field officers and chiefs of squadrons. He then commands MARCH, which in like manner is repeated; and after passing about 100 paces at a gallop, the commanding officer causes the charge to be sounded by all

Digitized by Google

the trumpets, at which signal the gallop is increased in speed. The men rise in their stirrups, lowering the bridle hand, but keeping the command of their horses, as well as preserving their dressing, and thus dash upon the enemy · the front-rank with the sword pointed forward, immediately before the shock, and the rear-rank with the sword to the *raise*. The enemy being routed, the commanding officer orders the trumpeters to sound the *rally*, when each man pulls up and joins his standard. But as it is important that the enemy should not have time to rally, the flank platoons of each squadron or some others, are sent in pursuit, and to recall them the *rally* is sounded, when they return to their respective places in their squadrons.

The charge ought always, if possible, to be anticipated, as here is great danger of being overthrown by receiving a charge at a halt.

At the signal to charge, officers in the front of the line, cause the file in rear of them to fall back so as to admit the croup of their horses into the rank. Chiefs of squadrons charge at the head of their respective squadrons. The colonel at the head of such squadrons as he may think his presence most necessary. The lieutenant-colonel and major at the head of other squadrons of their wing. Adjutants, sergeants major, and general guides, keep their places as in line. The trumpets in rear of the centre, with the trumpet-major at their head, unless the colonel shall see fit to have him near his person.

Rules for Guides and Markers.

The guides are the non-commissioned officers on the right and left of platoons, told off in the ranks.

Guides should be instructed to march with precision, to cover correctly, and to judge of distances by the eye; as on them depend, in a great measure, the accuracy with which the movements are performed.

It may sometimes happen that the proper guides are not on the directing flank of a column, as in the marches by fours, and twos: in such cases, the men on that flank serve as guides for the time being.

The markers to be employed for regimental movements are the first sergeants of companies. There are two for

Digitized by Google

each squadron, and their duties are to mark the line on which their squadrons are to rest in the different formations.

The markers of the squadron to which the base company belongs, mark the base of the intended line, and are placed by a field officer, or the adjutant, at points where the right and left files of the base company are to rest. Upon the caution being given for a movement, the base is instantly placed.

The right markers of squadrons which are to form on the right of the base, mark the points where the right of their squadrons are to rest; and the left markers of squadrons which are to form on the left of the base, mark the points where the left of their squadrons are to rest. Each moves out from his squadron and faces towards the base markers just time enough to take his dressing from them, before his squadron arrives on the line.

In marking lines, the markers raise their swords to the height of the cheek, keeping the blade, the edge to the front perfectly upright. They remain posted until the commanding officer gives the word FRONT, (which should succeed each formation,) when they retire to their places in line.

In aligning their squadrons, the chiefs place themselves on that flank towards which the men are to dress, and give the word *front*, when their squadrons are aligned.

In forming close column, the base for the covering, consists of the markers of that squadron on which the formation takes place; who are placed by the lieutenant-colonel, immediately upon the caution, facing to the pivot flank of the intended column.

In deployments, and all other movements from close column, the base consists of the markers of that squadron upon which the deployment or movement takes place; who are posted by a field officer, or the adjutant, immediately upon the caution, at points where the flanks of that squadron are to rest.

When a column changes direction in marching, one of the markers of the leading squadron is placed at the point where such change is made. This marker remains posted until the head of the next succeeding squadron is abreas with him, when his place is supplied by the marker of tha squadron, who in like manner is relieved by the marker of he next squadron; and so in succession.

Digitized by Google

The markers are rectified in their positions by a field officer, or the adjutant.

Movements.

The following movements are arranged throughout as for three squadrons; but they are applicable to any number. They are detailed as performed from the right, but they may be performed from the left, by substituting in the cautions and commands, LEFT for RIGHT, and RIGHT for LEFT.

Movements from Line. No. 1.

To change front forward on first Squadron. (FIG. 15.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons. } CHANGE FRONT FORWARD ON RIGHT COMPANY OF FIRST SQUADRON.*

Chief of base company—*Company, right–wheel.*

Chief of company next the base—*Company forward.*

Chiefs of 2d & 3d squadrons—*By company, right half–wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs. } WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the whole move as follows:

The base company wheels to the right and is aligned on the markers, receiving from its chief the words *halt, right–dress.*

The company next the base advances until its right uncovers the left of the right company; it then receives from its chief the words *right–wheel*, followed by *forward, halt, right–dress.*

The other companies wheel half right, and then receiving the words, *forward, guide–right*, from the chiefs of squadrons, advance in echellon towards the new line. Each company on approaching its place, receives from its chief *right–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and on arriving on a line with the rear-rank of the preceding company, *halt, right–dress.*

* The base is given by the markers of the first squadron, placed on the new line in front of the right and left files of the base company, facing to the right.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 2, from Line.

To change front to the rear on the left Squadron.

(FIG. 16.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of quadrons. { CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR ON LEFT COMPANY OF THIRD SQUADRON.*

Chief of base company—*Company, right–wheel.*

Chief of company next the base—*Company, fours, right–about*, followed by *company, right–wheel*, as soon as fours have gone about.

Chiefs of 1st & 2d squadrons—*Fours, right–about*, followed by—*By company, right half–wheel*, as soon as fours have gone about.

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the base company wheels to the right, and is aligned on the markers, receiving from its chief, the words *halt, left–dress.* The company next the base having wheeled to the right, receives from its chief the word *forward*, passes the line a horse's length, leaving sufficient interval between it and the left company, to enable it to wheel about by fours, and receives from its chief, *halt, fours, right–about, left–dress.* The other companies wheel half right, and receiving from the chief of squadrons, the words *forward, guide–right*, retire in echellon towards the new line; each company, on approaching its place, receives from its chief *right–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and when it has passed the line a horse's length, taking care to leave sufficient ground on its right to wheel about, receives from its chief *halt, fours, right–about, left–dress.*

Movement No. 3, from Line.

To change front on central Squadron. (FIG. 17.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons. { CHANGE FRONT ON RIGHT COMPANY OF SECOND SQUADRON. LEFT-WING FORWARD.†

*The base is given by the markers of the third squadron, placed on the new line in front of the left and right files of the base company, facing to the left.

†The base is given by the markers of the second squadron, placed on the new line in front of the right and left files of the base company, facing to the right.

Digitized by Google

Chief of base company—*Company, right-wheel.*
Chief of company next the base—*Company, forward.*
Chief of 1st squadron, { *Fours, right-about,* followed by *By company, right half-wheel,* as soon as fours have gone about
Chief of 3d squadron—*By company, right half-wheel.*
Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs. { WALK or TROT- } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the companies of the second squadron execute what has been prescribed in No. 1, for the companies of the first squadron. The companies of the third squadron conform to what is prescribed in the same No. for the companies of the second and third squadrons; and the companies of the first squadron to what is prescribed in No. 2, for the companies of the first and second squadrons.

Movement No. 4, *from line.*

To break to the right into column. (FIG. 18.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { BY COMPANY, RIGHT-WHEEL, WALK (or TROT) -MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the companies wheel to the right, and receive from their chiefs the words, *halt, left-dress,* followed by *front.*

Should it be intended to move the column forward, the commanding officer gives the words, COLUMN FORWARD, GUIDE-LEFT, WALK (or TROT)-MARCH, and the whole move forward at the pace indicated.

If, while the column is in march, it be intended to change direction by the head, the commanding officer gives the words, HEAD OF COLUMN TO THE RIGHT, (or LEFT,) when the chief of the leading company adds, *company, right* (or *left*) *wheel-march.* The company having wheeled into the new direction, its chief gives the word *forward,* and the company resumes the direct march. Each company, on arriving on the ground where the first wheeled, executes the same movement, receiving from its chief the same command.

Movement No. 5, *from line.*

To break to the right, to march to the left. (FIG. 19.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { BY COMPANY, BREAK TO THE RIGHT, TO MARCH TO THE LEFT

Digitized by Google

Chief of Right Company, 1st Squadron—*Company, forward, guide-left.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chief, { WALK or TROT- } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the right company of the first squadron advances ten paces, wheels to the left by command of its chief, and marches forward. The other companies do the same, in succession; their chiefs giving the command in time to enable them to take their proper distances in column.

Movement No. 6, from Line.

To break by the right, to the rear, to march to the left. (FIG. 20.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { BY COMPANY, BY THE RIGHT, BREAK TO THE REAR, TO MARCH TO THE LEFT.

Chief of Right Company, 1st Squadron—*Company, right about-wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chief, { WALK or TROT- } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the right company of the first squadron wheels about, receives the words *forward, guide left,* from its chief, marches ten paces to the rear; wheels again to the right by command of its chief, and again receiving the word *forward,* continues its march. The other companies are, in succession, wheeled to the right-about by their chiefs, and moving to the rear in like manner, follow in column.

The movements in this and the preceding number, are intended for the passage of defiles in front and rear of the left

Movement No. 7, from Line.

To ploy into close column, on second squadron. (FIG. 21.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { CLOSE COLUMN ON SECOND SQUADRON RIGHT IN FRONT.*

Chief of 1st squadron—*Squadron, fours left.*

Chief of 3d squadron—*Squadron, fours right.*

* The base for the covering of the pivots is given by the markers of the second squadron, placed in front of the left flank of the leading squadron facing to the rear.

Digitized by Google

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of 1st & 3d squadrons, { WALK or TROT- } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the second squadron stands fast, its chief giving the words *guide left.* The first squadron having wheeled fours left, is conducted by its chief (on the right flank of the leading fours) along the front of the second squadron; when abreast of the fourth file from the left of the second squadron, the chief of the first squadron gives the words *halt, fours right, left–dress,* and *front.* The third squadron having wheeled fours right, is conducted by its chief (on the left flank of the leading fours) towards its place in rear of the second squadron; he himself halts where its left will cover on the second squadron, allows his squadron to pass him, and as soon as the left is up with him, gives the words *halt, fours left,* followed by *left–dress* and *front.*

The above instructions are applicable to the formation of close column on a flank squadron, by naming it in the caution, with either the right or left in front; the chiefs of squadrons giving their commands accordingly.

Movement No. 8, *from Line.*

To advance in echellon of squadrons. (FIG. 22.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { ADVANCE IN ECHELLON OF SQUADRONS FROM THE RIGHT.

Chief of 1st squadron—*Squadron forward.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chief, { WALK or TROT- } MARCH.

On the caution to advance, the squadron-markers place themselves on the right and left of the front-rank of their squadrons. On the word MARCH, the first squadron advances. The remaining squadrons receive the word *march,* from their chiefs, in succession, as soon as each has got a distance equal to its front and interval from the one which precedes it; the right markers of squadrons taking care to preserve that distance and interval. During this march the guide is to the right.

The retreat in echellon is exactly like the advance, each squadron wheeling to the right-about by fours, just in time not to lose its distance from the one before it. In the caution, the word RETIRE is substituted for ADVANCE.

Digitized by Google

When squadrons, having advanced in echellon, are required to form line to the front, the squadron on which the line is to be formed, is named; those squadrons in front, if any, are wheeled about by fours to the right, and the whole move into line upon the named squadron.

When a formation into line is required to the left, the squadrons wheel to that hand, and form line upon a named squadron.

If, while advancing in echellon from the right, it be required to form an oblique line to the left, the squadrons close to company distance, on the named squadron, and then half wheel to the left into line.

Movement No. 9, *from Line.*

Passage of lines to the front. (FIG. 23.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons. { ADVANCE BY FOURS FROM THE RIGHT OF SQUADRONS.

Chiefs of squadrons—*fours right—leading fours, left-wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT- } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, each squadron wheeling fours right, and its leading fours again to the left, advances through the intervals of the line in front, each squadron passing on the right of the squadron in its front.

When the line is to be formed again, the commanding officer gives the words, FRONT INTO LINE—MARCH, (repeated by chiefs of squadrons,) when each squadron forms on its leading fours; the chiefs dress their squadrons by the right, and then resume their places.

The intervals of heads of squadrons from each other, are preserved from the first squadron.

Movement No. 10, *from Line.*

Passage of lines to the rear. (FIG. 24.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { RETIRE BY FOURS FROM THE RIGHT OF SQUADRONS.

Chiefs of squadrons—*Fours right—leading fours, right wheel.*

Digitized by Google

Commanding officer, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.
repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– }

On the word MARCH, each squadron, wheeling fours right and its leading fours again to the right, retires. The intervals of the heads of squadrons from each other are preserved from the first squadron. Each squadron passes through the interval, on the left of the squadron in its rear.

When the columns approach within fifty yards of the place where the commanding officer intends to reform his line, the lieutenant-colonel moves forward and establishes a marker at the point where the right of the first squadron is to rest. The left squadron markers then move out and mark the points where the left of their squadrons are to rest on the line, and each chief conducts his squadron, round his left marker, towards the point where the right of his squadron is to rest, and when there, gives the words *halt*, *fours left*, *right–dress*, followed by *front*, and resumes his place in line.

Movement No. 11, *from Line.*

To march in Line.

To cause the regiment to advance in line, the commanding officer gives the caution, REGULATE ON–SQUADRON. SQUADRONS FORWARD, (repeated by chiefs of squadrons,) on which all the squadron markers move to the right and left of the front-rank of their respective squadrons. If the first, central, or any intermediate squadron is to be the regulating one, the lieutenant-colonel causes the right marker of that particular squadron to place himself exactly in front of the right guide of his squadron, on a line with the officers, and designates to him the point on which he is to march. If the regulating squadron is on the left of the centre, the left marker of that particular squadron is placed in like manner, in front of the left guide of his squadron.

These dispositions being made, the commanding officer gives the word MARCH, (repeated by chiefs of squadrons,) and the whole move forward. The officers in front of squadrons maintain themselves on the alignment of the marker of the regulating squadron, without regarding the dressing of their men. Each squadron dresses towards the regulating one, and the intervals are preserved in that direction

Digitized by Google

The squadrons should, if any thing, be rather behind, than in advance of the regulating squadron.

If an obstacle present itself in front of a platoon, company, or squadron, its chief places it behind the platoon, company, or squadron, to his right or left, according to circumstances, by wheeling by platoons to the right or left; and when the obstacle is passed, bringing it into line by a contrary movement.

If, while marching in line, it be intended to gain ground to the front and to a flank, the commanding officer gives the words, BY COMPANY, RIGHT (or LEFT) HALF WHEEL—MARCH, and when sufficiently wheeled, he adds FORWARD GUIDE RIGHT (or LEFT;) the whole move in the direction indicated, in echellon of companies. To bring them again into line, and to continue the direct march, the commanding officer gives the words, BY COMPANY, LEFT (or RIGHT) HALF-WHEEL, MARCH, and when wheeled into line, he adds FORWARD, when the line moves forward, conforming to what has already been prescribed. The commands here given, are repeated by chiefs of squadrons.

To halt the regiment, marching in line, the commanding officer gives the words, REGIMENT, HALT. At the word HALT, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, each squadron halts. The markers of the regulating squadron place themselves facing to the right, in front of the right and left files of their squadron, a little in advance of the line of officers, so as not to be masked by them, and are rectified on the alignment by the lieutenant-colonel. The right markers of squadrons on the right of the regulating one, and the left markers of those on its left, step out, face towards the markers already established, and are rectified on them by the lieutenant-colonel. The commanding officer then gives the words, ON—SQUADRON—DRESS, when each squadron moves forward on the alignment, dressing towards the regulating squadron. The alignment being completed, the commanding officer gives the word FRONT, and the markers retire.

In the retreat in line, the same rules apply as in the advance, the squadrons wheeling about by fours, and the file-closers acting as leaders, except that they give no commands

The march in line being a difficult and important movement, should be frequently practised, in order to render it as familiar and as easy as possible.

Digitized by Google

Movements from Close Column, No. 1.

To deploy on second squadron. (FIG. 25.)

Commanding officer, { DEPLOY ON SECOND SQUADRON.*

Chief of 1st squadron—*Fours right.*

Chief of 3d squadron—*Fours left.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first squadron leads out to the right, and the third squadron leads out to the left, each conducted by its chief. The chief of the first squadron, when opposite the ground on which the left of his squadron is to rest, halts, and lets his squadron march past him; when the last rank of fours is abreast with him, he gives the words, *first squadron, halt—fours left—left–dress*, followed by *front.* In like manner, the chief of the third squadron, when opposite the point where the right of his squadron is to rest, halts, lets his squadron march past him, and when the last rank is abreast with him, gives the words, *third squadron, fours right, forward, guide right*, and when abreast with the rear-rank of the second squadron, *halt, right–dress*, followed by *front.* The chief of the base squadron, (the 2d,) the moment his front is unmasked, gives the words, *second squadron, forward, guide left*, and when within two paces of the line, he halts his squadron and aligns it by the right on the markers.

The above example is applicable to the deployment of a close column on any named squadron.

Movement No. 2, from Close Column.

To wheel into line on the rear squadron. (FIG. 26.)

Commanding officer—ON THIRD SQUADRON, LEFT INTO LINE.†

Chief of 3d squadron—*Third squadron, left–wheel.*

Chiefs of 1st & 2d squadrons—*Squadron, forward.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

*On the caution, the base is given by the markers of the second squadron, placed at points where the flanks of that squadron are to rest in line they face to the right.

†On the caution, the base is given by the markers of the third squadron, placed at points where the flanks of that squadron are to rest, facing to the left.

Digitized by Google

On the word MARCH, the first and second squadrons advance; each, as soon as it has got its proper distance from the one in its rear, receives from its chief the words *left–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and as it arrives on a line with the third squadron, *halt*, *left–dress*, *front* The third squadron wheels to the left, receives from its chief the word *forward*, and when it has moved up three horses' lengths, *halt*, *left–dress*, *front.*

If the column be required to form line to the right (reverse) flank, the caution is given, BY INVERSION, ON THIRD SQUADRON, RIGHT INTO LINE; the movements and commands are the same, only substituting *right* for *left.*

The column may also, in both cases, be opened from the front or centre, as well as from the rear; the squadrons in the rear going about by fours, and fronting when they have got their proper distances, and those in front of the named one advancing. The formation is the same as already laid down.

Movement No. 3, *from Close Column.*

To change direction from a halt. (FIG. 27.)

Commanding officer—CHANGE DIRECTION BY THE RIGHT FLANK.*

Chiefs of squadrons—*Fours right.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH

On the word MARCH, the front squadron, receiving from its chief *left wheel*, and then *forward*, moves straight in the new direction; its chief halting himself at the point where its left is to rest, and permitting his squadron to march past him; when the last rank comes abreast with him, he gives the words, *halt*, *fours–left*, *left–dress*, aligns his squadron on the markers, and adds, *front.* The second and third squadrons are conducted by their chiefs, who halt when arrived at the points where the left of their squadrons are to rest, let their squadrons march past them in the new direction, and when the last rank is abreast with them, they give the words, *halt*, *fours–left*, *left–dress*, followed by *front*

*On the caution, the base is given by the markers of the headmost squadron, placed at points where the flanks of that squadron are to rest, facing to the right.

Digitized by Google

In changing direction by the left flank, each chief conducts his squadron until its left flank arrives at the point where it is to rest.

Movement No. 4, *from Close Column.*

Countermarch. (FIG. 28.)

Commanding officer—COLUMN, COUNTERMARCH.

Chiefs of Squadrons—*File to the right.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word COUNTERMARCH, the left markers place themselves one yard beyond the left of their squadrons, facing to the rear, the croups of their horses six yards in rear of the rear-rank. The file-closers place themselves on the left of their squadrons; those of the right companies, abreast with the front-rank; the junior captains on their left; those of the left companies abreast with the rear-rank.

On the words, *File to the Right*, the right hand men of both ranks turn to the right-about, and the front-rank man moves up on the left of his rear-rank man; the remainder turn their horses' heads towards the right.

On the word MARCH, the leading file of each squadron wheels to the right, passes near the rear-rank, and when nearly opposite the left marker, each man, on a caution from his chief of squadron, turns to the left, halts, and dresses to the right, the front-rank man placing himself on the left of the marker. The other files move off their ground in succession, front and rear-rank men together, as it comes to their turn, wheel at the same point where the leading file wheeled, and when arrived opposite to their places in line, each man turns to the left, and forms up to the rank to which he belongs, dressing to the right. The officers and file-closers follow the movement of the men, and take their places successively as they reach them.

Movements from Open Column. No. 1.

To form line to the left. (FIG. 29.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { LEFT INTO LINE–WHEEL.* WALK (or TROT)–MARCH.

* The base is given by the markers of the first squadron, placed at points where the flanks of the right company are to rest, facing each other, and covered by the left markers of the other squadrons, at points where the left of their squadrons are to rest.

Digitized by Google

On the word MARCH, the companies wheel left into line receiving from their chiefs the words *halt*, *right–dress*, as soon as the wheel is completed. The chiefs of squadrons align their squadrons by the right, and then give the word *front.*

Movement No. 2, *from Open Column*

To form line to the right by inversion.

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { BY INVERSION, RIGHT INTO LINE–WHEEL.* WALK (or TROT)–MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the companies wheel right into line, receiving from their chiefs the words, *halt*, *left–dress*, as soon as the wheel is completed. The chiefs of squadrons align their squadrons by the left, and then give the word *Front.*

Movement No. 3, *from Open Column.*

To form line to the front. (FIG. 30.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { FRONT INTO LINE.†

Chief of base company—*Company, forward.*

Chief of company next the base—*Company, left, half–wheel.*

Chiefs of 2d & 3d squadrons—*By company, left, half–wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the base company advances three horses' lengths, and then receives from its chief the words, *halt*, *right–dress.* The other companies make a half wheel to the left, and then, receiving from the chiefs of squadrons the words, *forward*, *guide–right*, advance in echellon towards their places in line. Each, as it approaches, receives from its chief, *right–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and on arriving on a line with the rear-rank of the preced-

* The base is given by the markers of the third squadron, placed at points where the flanks of the right company of that squadron are to rest, facing each other, and covered by the left markers of the other squadrons, at points where the left of their squadrons are to rest.

† The base is given by the markers of the first squadron, placed at points where the flanks of the base company are to rest, facing to the right.

Digitized by Google

ing company, *halt, right–dress.* Each chief of squadron aligns his squadron by the right, and then gives the word *front.*

If the column be required to form line to the front by inversion, the caution is given, BY INVERSION, FRONT INTO LINE. The movement is performed according to the same principles, but by inverse means and commands; the leading company is established on the markers; the other companies half-wheel to the right, and advance in echellon towards the line, each forming on the right of the one which precedes it.

Movement No. 4, *from Open Column.*

To form line to the front on rear company. (FIG. 31.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { ON REAR COMPANY, FRONT INTO LINE.*

Chief of company next the base—*Company, left half-wheel.*

Chiefs of 1st & 2d squadrons—*By company, left half-wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the whole, except the base company, (which stands fast,) move as follows:

The companies make a half wheel to the left, and receiving from the chiefs of squadrons, the words, *halt, fours right–about*, followed by *forward, guide–right*, retire in echellon towards their places in line. Each, on approaching the line (taking care to leave sufficient space on its right to wheel fours about) receives from its chief the words, *right–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and when it has passed the line a horse's length, *halt, fours right–about, left–dress.*

Movement No. 5, *from Open Column.*

To form line faced to the rear. (FIG. 32.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { INTO LINE, FACED TO THE REAR.†

* The base is given by the markers of the third squadron, placed in front of the right and left files of the left company, facing to the left.

† The base is given by the markers of the first squadron, placed on the new line, at points where the flanks of the right company are to rest, and facing towards the right flank

Digitized by Google

Chief of base company—*Company, left about–wheel.*

Chiefs of 2d & 3d squadrons, and company next the base, } *Fours right.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the base company wheels left about and receives from its chief the words, *halt, right–dress.*—The other companies move off together, and are conducted by their chiefs to the points where their left will stand on the new line, being marked by squadron markers; each chief conducts his company round the marker, and when the head of the company arrives near its point of formation, leaving space sufficient to wheel by fours, he gives the words, *halt, fours–left, right–dress.*

Movement No. 6, *from Open Column.*

To form line faced to the rear on rear company. (FIG. 33.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { ON REAR COMPANY, INTO LINE FACED TO THE REAR.*

Chief of base company—*Company, left-about–wheel.*

Chiefs of 1st and 2d squadrons and company next the base—*By company, left–wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the base company wheels left about, receives from its chief the word *forward*, and after advancing three horses' lengths, *halt, left–dress.* The other companies wheel three-quarters left, and receiving from their chiefs of squadrons the words, *forward, guide–left*, advance in echellon towards their places in line; each, on approaching the line, receives from its chief the words, *left–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and on arriving on a line with the rear-rank of the preceding company, *halt, left–dress*

Movement No. 7, *from Open Column.*

To form line by two movements. (FIG. 34.)

A column having changed direction to the right, or reverse flank, may form line to its former front, as follows:

*The base is given by the markers of the third squadron, placed on the new line, at points where the flanks of the left company are to rest, and facing towards the left flank

Digitized by Google

Commanding officer, { LEFT INTO LINE–WHEEL REAR SQUADRON, FRONT INTO LINE.*

Chiefs of 1st & 2d squadrons—*Left into line–wheel*

Chief of 3d squadron—*Front into line.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the companies of the first and second squadrons wheel into line, as prescribed in movement No. 1, from open column; and the companies of the third squadron form to the front into line, as prescribed in movement No. 3, from open column.

Movement No. 8, *from Open Column.*

To form line by two movements. (FIG. 35.)

A column having changed direction to the left, or pivot flank, may form line to its former rear, as follows:

Commanding officer, { LEFT INTO LINE–WHEEL. REAR SQUADRON INTO LINE FACED TO THE REAR.*

Chiefs of 1st & 2d squadrons—*Left into line–wheel.*

Chief of 3d squadron, { *Into line, faced to the rear* followed by *fours–right.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the companies of the first and second squadrons wheel into line, as prescribed in movemen No. 1, from open column; and the companies of the 3d squadron form line faced to the rear, as in movement No. 5. from open column.

Movement No. 9, *from Open Column*

To form on right into line. (FIG. 36.)

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { ON RIGHT INTO LINE– GUIDE RIGHT.†

* The base in these two movements is given by the markers of the first squadron, placed on the new line, at points where the flanks of the right company are to rest, facing each other.

† The base is given by the markers of the first squadron, placed on the new line, at points where the flanks of the right company are to rest, facing to the right.

Digitized by Google

Chief of base company—*Company, right–wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chief of base company, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the leading company wheels to the right, receives from its chief the word *forward*, and when it has advanced a distance equal to its front, *halt, right–dress.* The other companies pass along the rear of the leading company; each in succession, as soon as it arrives opposite its place in line, receives from its chief the words, *right–wheel*, followed by *forward*, and when on a line with the rear-rank of the preceding company, *halt, right–dress.*

Movement No. 10, *from Open Column.*

To form close column.

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of squadrons, { FORM CLOSE COLUMN. }

Chiefs of right companies of squadrons—*Company, forward.*

Chiefs of left companies of squadrons—*Company, left–oblique.*

Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs, { WALK or TROT– } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the leading company advances three horses' lengths, and receives from its chief the word *halt.* The other right companies move straight forward. The left companies oblique to the left, at double the pace, till their right flanks are uncovered; they then receive the word *forward*, from their chiefs, followed by *walk*, when in line with their right companies. Each squadron as soon as formed, receives the words, *guide–left*, from its chief, and when moved up to its proper place in column, *halt, left–dress*, followed by *front.*

Skirmishing.

Skirmishers are usually employed to gain time, to watch the movements of the enemy, to keep him in check, and to prevent him from approaching so close to the main body as to annoy the line of march. On service, regularity in skirmishing and correctness of distance cannot always be maintained, on account of the movements of the enemy and the nature of the ground. It is, nevertheless, essential, that some

Digitized by Google

general rules should be laid down, which may be easily conformed to and applied, according to circumstances.

On ordinary occasions a few mounted men may be sufficient for this duty; yet it is frequently necessary on service to employ whole squadrons as skirmishers. The following example embraces a company, which is deemed sufficient to cover the front and flanks of a regiment composed of three squadrons. One of the flank companies is usually employed for this purpose.

LEFT COMPANY OF THIRD SQUADRON, AT SKIRMISH TO THE FRONT—MARCH. At the word MARCH, the company named moves forward ten paces, and the men deploy as skirmishers, extending so as to cover the whole front of the squadron, as well as its flanks; for this purpose, the man on the right of the front-rank moves in an oblique direction, towards a point sixty paces in advance, and beyond the right flank of the regiment; the man on the right of the rear-rank follows his file-leader, and then moves to his left on the same alignment; the other files conform themselves to this movement, placing themselves at equal intervals from each other.

In advancing, the skirmishers draw the left pistol, the sword hanging to the wrist. When the regiment is advancing, the *forward march* is sounded, when the skirmishers move forward, and at the sound *commence firing*, they begin the fire. When the *halt* is sounded, the skirmishers halt, and observe the movement of the regiment, to which they conform. If it turn to the right, or left, they do the same singly, to cover the front; if the regiment retire, the *march in retreat* is sounded, when the skirmishers retire by a chequered movement, as follows:—All the skirmishers who belong to the front-rank wheel about singly to the left, march fifty paces to the rear, and then resume their front by wheeling about singly to the right. The same movements are made by the rear-rank men, who place themselves fifty paces in rear of the others, and so on as long as the regiment continues in retreat.

When the regiment resumes its front, the *halt* is sounded, at which the skirmishers halt and form again on the same line. *Cease firing* is then sounded, and afterwards the *rally*, when they return by the shortest way to their places in the regiment.

Digitized by Google

Skirmishers always move out and return at a gallop: they never draw their pistols until they are deployed; they never fire until within reach of the enemy, unless by order, and they should always keep their horses in motion, even when loading, to avoid becoming a mark to the enemy. They retire by wheeling about to the left, and resume their front by wheeling about to the right. When they reform again in company, they *return pistol* and *carry sword*.

172

Digitized by Google

Fig. 1.

Fig. 2.

Fig. 3.

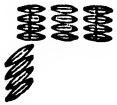


Fig. 4.

Fig. 5.

Fig. 6.

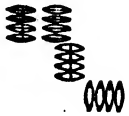


Fig. 7.

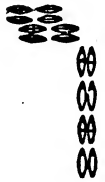


Fig. 8.

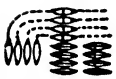


Fig. 9.

Fig 10.

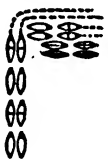


Fig. 11.

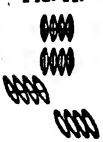
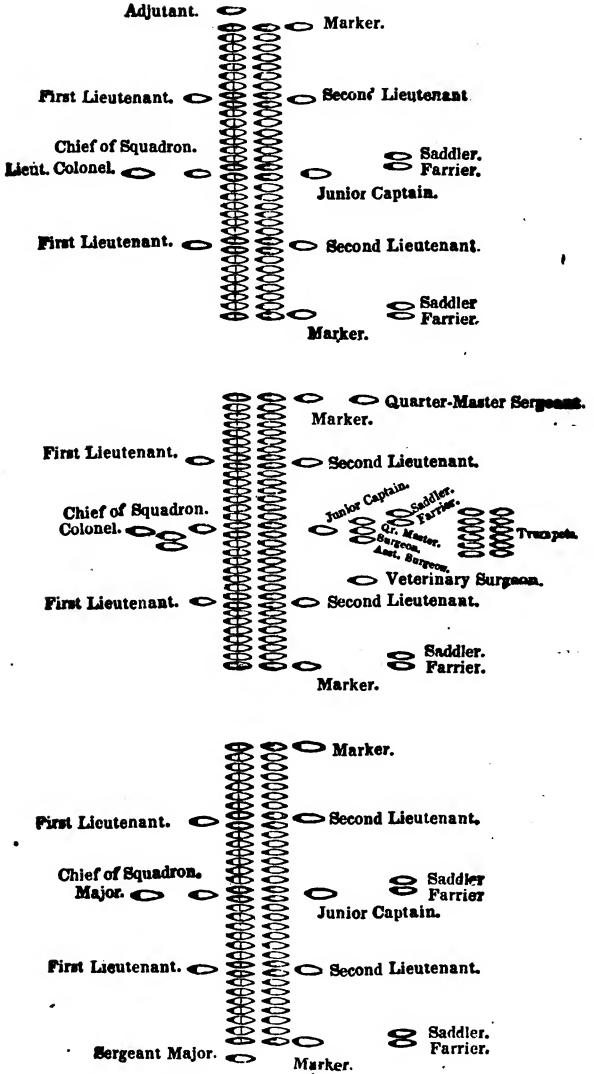


Fig. 12.

Fig. 13.

Digitized by Google

FIG. 14.



Digitized by Google

Fig. 15.

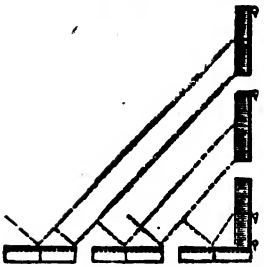


Fig. 16.

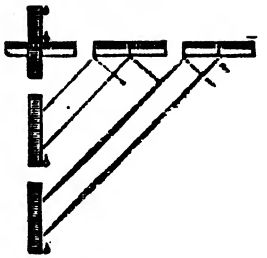


Fig. 17.

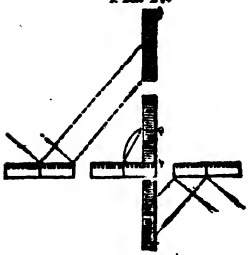


Fig. 18.

Fig. 19

Fig. 20

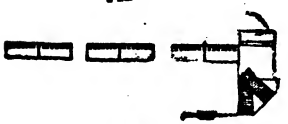


Fig. 21

Fig. 22.

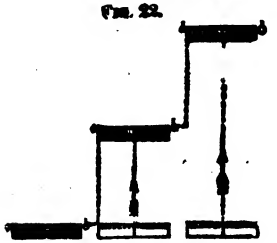


Fig. 23.

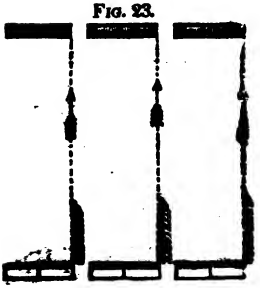
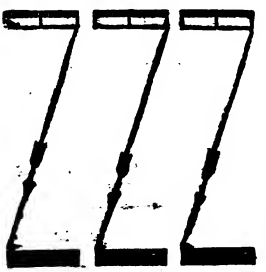


Fig. 24.



Digitized by Google

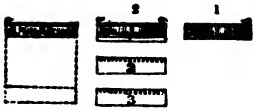


Fig. 25.

Fig. 26.

Fig. 27.

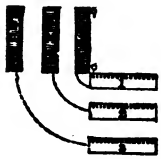


Fig. 29.

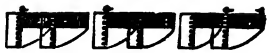


Fig. 28.

Fig. 30.

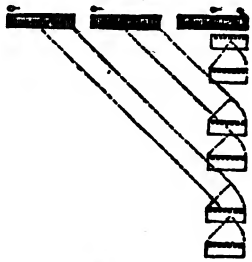


Fig. 31

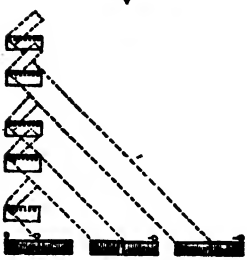
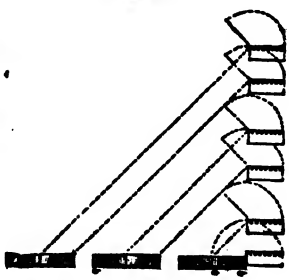


Fig. 32.

Fig. 33.



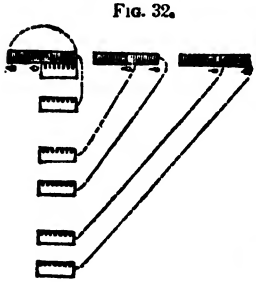


Fig. 34.

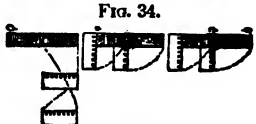


Fig. 36.

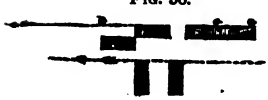
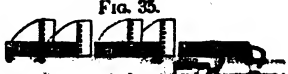


Fig. 35.



Digitized by Google

PART III.

ARTILLERY TACTICS.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF PART THIRD.

Page

OF THE PIECE.

Position of the men at the gun 5
To unlimber the gun 6
Position of the men in battery 7
To load and fire 7
To limber the gun to move to the rear 10
To limber the gun to move to the front 10
To manœuvre with bricoles 10
To manœuvre with horses 12

OF THE BATTERY.

In line 18
In battery 19
Parade 19
In column of pieces 1
In column of sections 20
Movements 20
Movements from line 21
No. 1. To break into column to the front 21
2. To break into column to the right, ... 21
3. To break from the right to march to the left 23
4. To break into column in retreat 22
5. Marching in line to close intervals 23
6. Marching in line to open intervals 23
7. Being in line at closed intervals, to march in retreat 23
8. Marching in line to pass obstacles 23
9. Passing a defile 54
10. To march by a flank 24
11. To change front forward on first section 24
12. To change front to the rear on first section 25
13. To change front on centre section 26
Movements from column 26
No. 1. To march in column, change direction and to halt 26
2. To form line to the front 27
3. To form line to the left 27
4. To form line on the right 28
5. To form line faced to the rear 28
Increase and diminution of front 29
To increase from column of pieces to column of sections 29
To increase from column of sections to line 29
To diminish from line to column of sections 30
To diminish from column of sections, to column of pieces 30
Exercise of casemate guns 30

Digitized by Google

PRELIMINARY REMARK.

Officers of Artillery ought to be well acquainted with the Infantry Tactics as well as those of the Cavalry, in order that they may be capable of manœuvring their batteries in the field so as to conform thereto without embarrassing the movements of the other arms.

Digitized by Google

INTRODUCTION.

The organization of the Artillery of Massachusetts consists at present (1845) of five regiments of four companies each, one battalion of two companies, and three companies annexed to infantry regiments—in all twenty-five companies. To each regiment there are assigned, one colonel, one lieutenant-colonel, one major, one adjutant, one quartermaster, one paymaster, one surgeon, one surgeon's mate, one chaplain, one sergeant-major, one sergeant-quartermaster, one drum-major, and one fife-major. To each battalion there are one major, one adjutant, one quartermaster, one surgeon, one sergeant-major, and one sergeant-quartermaster. To each company there are one captain, three lieutenants, five sergeants, four corporals, one or more drummers, one or more fifers, three drivers, and a certain number of privates.

To each company, thus organized, are assigned two field pieces and one caisson. But, as this number of pieces and caisson is not in due proportion to the strength of the company, it becomes necessary to establish some rule, other than that prescribed in page 17 (Part III.) by which to apportion the company to its battery. Thus:

The captain to command the battery; two subalterns. (the juniors) one as chief of each piece; three sergeants, one with each piece and caisson as non-commissioned officer; four corporals, two to each piece as gunners; three drivers, one for each piece and caisson; and twelve privates, six to each piece as matrosses.

There will then remain one subaltern, two sergeants and a certain number of privates unemployed. This force, armed as infantry, to constitute a *reserve*, and to be formed as a company, in two ranks, on the left of the battery, distant from the battery equal to the interval between the two pieces in *line*. The lieutenant of the reserve to be posted on the right of the front rank, covered by a sergeant in the rear rank; the other sergeant on the left of the front rank. The reserve to be divided into two platoons, and each platoon into two sections.

In moving in column for purposes of review or otherwise, the reserve to follow in column by platoon, or by section, in rear of the column of pieces.

Digitized by Google

On occasions of manœuvre, the reserve may either conform to the movements of the battery, or be posted some distance in rear, but always within reach.

When several companies (say a regiment) are united for practice, they will be manœuvred according to the rules prescribed for a battery of six pieces; on which occasions the reserves of the several companies will be united as a battalion, and formed on the left of the entire battery; the colonel, assisted by the major, to command the battery, the lieutenant-colonel, assisted by the adjutant, to command the reserve—the regimental standards with the reserve. When the battalion of two companies manœuvres with its pieces, the major will command the battery, and the senior first lieutenant the reserve; absent officers will be replaced by sergeants. A single company will manœuvre as a *section* of a battery.

As there is but one caisson for every two pieces, it will form, whether *in battery* or *in line*, in rear of the interval between its pieces; in column by pieces it will follow in rear of its leading piece.

Musicians may be employed as markers.

PRELIMINARY REMARK.

Officers of Artillery ought to be well acquainted with the Infantry Tactics as well as those of the Cavalry, in order that they may be capable of manœuvring their batteries in the field so as to conform thereto without embarrassing the movements of the other arms.

Digitized by Google

PART III.

ARTILLERY.

OF THE PIECE.

THE right and left of the piece, as relates to the station of the men, is determined by the position of the man placed in rear of the gun, and looking towards the muzzle. The reverse is the case with the limber, the right and left of which is always determined by the right and left of the driver.

The squad for the service of a field-piece, is formed in two ranks in close order, from right to left, as follows:—Chief of the piece, covered by the non-commissioned officer; No. 5, covered by No. 6; the gunner of the right, covered by the gunner of the left; No. 3, covered by No. 4; No. 1, covered by No. 2.

If the squad, marching in line, halt in rear of the gun, it will take post in the following manner:

SQUAD—BY LEFT FLANK, BY FILE RIGHT—POSTS—MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the squad faces to the left and wheels by file to the right; when within ten paces of the gun, the ranks oblique to the right and left on each side of the gun, and the men post themselves as follows: (FIG. 1.)

The chief of the piece, on a line with the end of the pole, one pace to the right, and facing the piece; the non-commissioned officer on the left, opposite the swing-tree bar. If there be a caisson, he places himself near it; No.'s 5 & 6, abreast the naves of the small wheels; the gunners abreast the cascable; No.'s 3 & 4 abreast the naves of the large wheels, and No.'s 1 & 2 abreast the muzzle. The whole facing the gun, on lines eighteen inches from the ends of the axletrees, and dressing on No.'s 1 & 2.

Digitized by Google

No.'s 1 & 2 distribute the implements thus:—To No. 1 he rammer, which he places in the sponge-hooks. To No 2, an ammunition pouch. To No. 3, the lint-stock, portfire-stock, and portfire-case. To No. 4, the priming-wire, tube-box, and ammunition-pouch. To the gunner of the left, the finger-stall. To No.'s 5 & 6, each an ammunition-pouch. The matrosses attached to the piece have also long bricoles, which are hung from right to left over the ammunition-pouch-belt.

If the squad arrive in front of the gun, the men take their posts by inverse means, at the command, SQUAD, BY RIGHT FLANK, BY FILE LEFT—POSTS—MARCH.

To Unlimber. (FIG. 2.)

ATTENTION-UNLIMBER.—No. 5 moves to the middle of the pole and raises it; the gunner of the right unhooks the lashing-chain, and aided by the gunner of the left, raises the trail. With twelve pounders, No.'s 3 & 4 assist the gunners.

When the trail is disengaged from the limber, No.'s 5 & 6 advance the limber three paces, and the trail is let down; the gunners place the ammunition-box on the limber between the hounds; the gunner of the right then gives the word *march*, at which No.'s 5 & 6 move the limber twelve paces to the rear, inclining to the right, and then wheel it left-about, the pole towards the gun and covering it. No. 4 unhooks the handspikes, gives one to No. 3, and they fix them in the pointing-rings. No. 3 fixes the portfire to the stock, and No. 1 takes the sponge from its hook.

If the piece arrive on the ground in rear of the line which it is to occupy in *battery*, the word is given IN BATTERY, immediately after the word UNLIMBER. The limber is withdrawn as above, and as soon as the ammunition-box is placed on it, it is wheeled left-about, and passing through the interval on the right of its piece, is moved twelve paces to the rear, and again wheeled left about. As soon as the limber has passed the piece the gunners go to the pointing hand spikes, and No.'s 1, 2, 3 and 4, to the wheels. The trail is then turned right-about, and the men take their posts as before

Digitized by Google

Position of the Gunners and Matrosses in Battery.
(FIG. 2.)

On the Left.

No. 2. On a line with the muzzle eighteen inches, without the rim of the wheels, facing the piece, with an ammunition-pouch slung from right to left.

No. 4. On a line with the cascable, dressing on No. 2, holding the priming-wire in the right hand, the thumb through the ring; the tube-box buckled round the waist, and an ammunition-pouch hanging on the left side.

The gunner on a line with the middle of the trail handspikes, dressing by the left, and wearing the finger-stall on the middle finger of the left hand.

No. 6, carrying an ammunition-pouch, is with the ammunition-box, and supplies No. 2 with ammunition.

The non-commissioned officer is with the caisson, forty-five paces in rear of the limber; or at, and in rear of, the ammunition-box, if there be no caisson.

On the Right.

No. 1. On a line with the muzzle, eighteen inches without the rim of the wheel, facing the piece, holding the sponge-staff horizontally with both hands; the right hand, nails downwards, near the rammer head; the left hand, nails upwards, about two feet from the sponge.

No. 3. On a line with the cascable, dressing on No. 1, holding the lint-stock in his left hand, and the portfire-stock in his right; the portfire-case hanging on the left side.

The gunner on a line with the middle of the trail-handspikes, dressing by the right.

No. 5, carrying an ammunition-pouch, is with the caisson, near the non-commissioned officer, or with the ammunition-box, if there be no caisson.

The chief of the piece is midway between the limber and the trail-handspikes, observing all that passes at the gun, the limber and the caisson.

To Load and Fire.

ATTENTION-TO ACTION.—No. 1 steps to the left

Digitized by Google

with the left foot eighteen inches, throwing the weight of the body on the left leg; left knee bent; right leg extended; heels on a line parallel to the piece; feet equally turned out and forming something less than a right angle; sponge staff held horizontally in both hands, the right above, the left below the staff; the body steady; the arms hanging without contraint.

No. 2 makes a similar movement to the right, throwing the weight of the body on the right foot.

No. 3 unhooks the water-bucket, places it under the end of the axletree; half faces to the left: plants his lint-stock in the ground; lights his portfire, holding the stock in the right hand, fire downwards, and about four inches from the ground, arms without constraint.

No. 4 takes off the apron.

The gunner of the right steps off with the right foot, places himself between the trail-handspikes, directs the piece and resumes his position, stepping off with the left foot.

The gunner of the left stands fast.

No. 5 advances briskly with ammunition from the caisson, to replace No. 6.

No. 6 moves quickly with ammunition in rear of No. 2, hands him a cartridge, and returns to the caisson to replace No. 5.

LOAD.—The gunner of the left, stepping off with the right foot, advances to the breech of the gun, placing the left foot opposite the vent, inside the wheel, throwing the weight of the body forward on the left leg, the knee bent; the right leg extended to the rear of the piece. He stops the vent with the middle finger of the left hand, at the moment the sponge reaches the bottom of the bore; presses hard upon the vent till the sponge is withdrawn, and removes his finger when the cartridge is inserted; seizes the elevating screw with the right hand, and gives the proper elevation; then raises himself erect on the right foot, steps back with he left, and resumes his position.

No. 1 rises erect on his right leg; raises the sponge-staff horizontally as high as the chin, extending the right arm the whole length, to pass the sponge over the wheel; makes a long step with the left foot, which he places on a line with the swell of the muzzle; throws out the right foot eighteen inches to the right of the left heel; and on a line with it, the

Digitized by Google

feet equally turned out, the body inclined to the right; introduces the sponge, with the left hand, into the bore of the gun, pushes it to the bottom with the right; the left hand sliding along the staff, raising the body erect on the left leg, parallel with the piece; casts his eye on the vent, to see that it is stopped; turns the sponge two or three times at the bottom of the bore, and then withdraws it by a uniform motion with the right hand, the body again inclined to the right, keeping his eye on the range of the sights of the piece; receives the staff near the sponge, on the palm of the left hand with which he throws the sponge end over his right, lettin the staff slide through his right hand, until it comes near the sponge-head, and while it is thus sliding, drops the staff near the rammer-head, into the hollow of the left hand, between the thumb and fingers, ready to enter the rammer-head into the bore. The cartridge being placed in the bore by No. 2, No. 1 pushes it home with one stroke, throwing the weight of his body on his right arm, to force the cartridge to the bottom of the bore, and dropping the left arm. He withdraws the rammer by a smart impulse of the right hand, seizing the staff with the same hand, near the rammer-head, throwing over the sponge-head, and letting that end of the staff fall into his left hand in a horizontal position, at the same time resuming the position of *to action*, by stepping back with the right foot, and bringing the left on a line with the axle.

No. 2 rises on the left leg, advances the right foot even with the swell of the muzzle, brings up the left, places the cartridge in the bore with the left hand, and resumes the position of *to action*, by stepping back with the left foot.

No. 4 advances with the left foot, bringing up the right, pricks with the right hand, places the tube with the left, resumes his position by stepping back with the right foot, and makes the signal to No. 3, to fire, by raising his right hand above his head; at which

No. 3 raises the right arm, without bending the wrist, and applies the flame of the portfire to the tube, taking care not to hold it directly over the vent.

The piece being fired, is again loaded in the same manner, by the command LOAD.

The fire ceases by a roll of the drum, or by the command TO POSTS, at which No. 3 extinguishes the portfire, and all resume the position *in battery*.

Digitized by Google

To limber the piece to move to the rear.

ATTENTION–ADVANCE LIMBER–MARCH. — No. 1 places the sponge in the sponge-hooks. No. 3 hooks the water-bucket. The gunners unfix the handspikes, and pass them to No. 4, who, with the aid of No. 2, secures them in the square ring and upon the hooks. No.'s 5 & 6 advance with the limber, obliquing to the right, so that in wheeling left-about, the limber may be three paces in rear of the trail. The gunners take the ammunition-box from the limber and place it between the flasks of the carriage, and then raise the trail so that the carriage can be placed on the pintle. No.'s 5 & 6 back the limber, to bring the pintle under the lunette. The gunner of the right hooks the lashing-chain, and all resume their posts.

To limber the piece to move to the front.

ATTENTION–LIMBER TO THE FRONT–MARCH.–No.'s 5 & 6 advance the limber three paces in front of the muzzle, in such manner as that the left wheel of the limber shall be on a line with the right wheel of the piece, passing on the right, the gunners and matrosses stepping near the flasks, to let the limber pass. As soon as it has passed, the gunners step to the trail-handspikes; the matrosses to the wheels. The muzzle is then turned right-about on the right wheel, No. 2 placing his feet on the lower felloes of the right wheel, and supporting himself by the upper spokes. The trail is fixed upon the limber as before.

To manœuvre with Bricoles.

In manœuvring with bricoles, it is necessary to increase the number of men for each piece. Two are therefore added to a six-pounder, four to a howitzer, and six to a twelve-pounder. These auxiliaries are numbered 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

The piece being on its limber, the auxiliaries are stationed on each side of it, after the matrosses and towards the pole, one pace distant from each other, and provided with shortened bricoles. The matrosses have their bricoles at full length.

FORWARD.—(Fig. 3.)—The gunner of the left detaches a handspike, and takes it to the end of the pole, where,

Digitized by Google

assisted by the gunner of the right, he forms two loops with the breast-chains, through which he introduces the handspike across the pole horizontally. Both gunners place themselves behind this handspike, and are assisted by No.'s 5 & 6, who are stationed outside of them, to propel the piece. No.'s 1 & 2 hook their bricoles to the washer-hooks, 3 & 4 to the retreat-hooks. The non-commissioned officer, when there is no caisson, is on the left of the chase. The auxiliaries, No.'s 7 & 8, form on, and in rear of 1 & 2—9 & 10 on 3 & 4. No.'s 11 & 12 are on each side of the chase. Those on the right, hook with the right hand—those on the left, with the left hand.

MARCH.—All press forward, holding the bricole in the hand next the piece.

HALT.—All stand fast, keeping the bricoles stretched.

TO POSTS.—The men on the right turn to the left, and unhook with the left hand; those on the left perform the same movement in an inverse manner; the gunner of the left replaces the handspike, and all resume their posts.

The commands UNLIMBER and IN BATTERY, are executed in the manner already prescribed. The auxiliaries follow the limber, and take post on each side of the pole, one pace from each other.

Being in battery, to advance and retreat.

FORWARD.—(FIG. 4.)—The gunners seize the trail-handspikes with both hands: they are assisted by the non-commissioned officer, who is between them. No.'s 1 & 2 hook their bricoles to the advancing hooks—3 & 4 to the washer-hooks: those on the right, with the left hand—those on the left, with the right hand. No. 1 carries the sponge-staff horizontally in the right hand, the sponge-head forward. No.'s 5 & 6 are posted at the end of the pole of the limber, and with it follow the movements of the piece. No.'s 7 & 8 double on 1 & 2, and 9 & 10 on 3 & 4. No.'s 11 & 12 are at the supporting handspikes.

MARCH.—The men at the handspikes raise the trail; those with bricoles draw with spirit, holding the trace with the hand next the piece. No.'s 5 & 6 conduct the limber, preserving the prescribed distance from the piece.

HALT.—The trail is lowered to the ground, and the bricoles extended.

Digitized by Google

TO POSTS.—The men face outward from the piece, and unhook bricoles; those on the right, with the right hand—those on the left, with the left hand, and all resume their posts.

RETREAT.—(FIG. 5.)—The gunners seize the trail-handspikes with one hand, facing to the rear. The non-commissioned officer is on the left of the muzzle. No.'s 1 & 2 hook to the washer-hooks, 3 & 4 to the retreat-hooks, those on the right, with the right hand—those on the left with the left hand. No.'s 5 & 6 wheel the limber left-about, to precede the piece. No.'s 7 & 8 double on 1 & 2, and 9 & 10 on 3 & 4. No.'s 11 & 12 are at the supporting handspikes.

TO POSTS.—The men face outwards: those on the right unhook with the left hand—those on the left, with the right hand. No.'s 5 & 6 wheel the limber left-about, the pole towards the piece, and all resume their posts.

FRONT-FACE.—All face to the front, No.'s 1 & 2 abreast the muzzle, 3 & 4 abreast the naves, the gunners abreast the cascable, 5 & 6 abreast the end of the pole, the auxiliaries in their rear, one pace from each other; the non-commissioned officer in rear of the ammunition-box. No. 1 carries the sponge horizontally in the right hand.

If the piece be on the limber, the word REAR-FACE is substituted for FRONT-FACE.

In descending a hill, it may be necessary to support the piece in retreat, to prevent a too rapid descent; in such case the chief of the piece gives the words, No.'s 1 AND 2, (or as many as necessary) SUPPORT-IN RETREAT. Those designated take the bricole from the shoulder. No.'s 1 & 2 hook to the advance-hooks, the others at the washer-hooks, holding the straps of the bricoles in the hand.

To manœuvre with Horses.

Four horses are required for the piece, and the same number for the caisson. In the movement of the piece with horses, the right and left implies that side as relates to the drivers.

The piece is supposed to be on its limber, with its caisson in rear, and to be served by a squad either on horse or foot.

The men on foot take post in the manner already prescribed, except the chief of the piece and the non-commissioned officer, the former is on the left of the drivers of the

Digitized by Google

leading horses of the gun, the latter in a corresponding position at the caisson.

If the squad be mounted, it is formed in two ranks in rear of the piece. At the word TO POSTS–MARCH it moves up to within one pace of the muzzle; the chief of the piece takes post on the left of the driver of the leaders and the non-commissioned officer at the caisson, as above. Two auxiliaries are added to the squad in horse artillery, to hold the horses; their position is in the centre *of each rank* of the squad.

FORWARD–MARCH.—The drivers urge their horses, and the piece advances followed by its caisson, the leading horses of which are one pace from the muzzle of the piece or, in horse artillery, one pace from the rear-rank of the squad.

To prepare for manœuvring. (FIG. 6.)

HALT–UNLIMBER–FIX–PROLONGE.—The limber being withdrawn the gunners uncoil the prolonge: the gunner of the left passes the pointed end downwards through the right staple-ring of the limber, then under the guides, and upwards through the left staple-ring, drawing it so that the ring of the prolonge, twenty-four feet from the key, may be under the centre of the sweep-bar, and securing it under the guides with the prolonge knot. The gunner of the right passes the key (or T) through the lashing ring in the trail-transom, draws it up, and secures it in the prolonge ring under the sweep-bar. The prolonge is then double, or twelve feet long, which is the proper length for firing in retreat or advance.

In horse artillery, at the word UNLIMBER, the gunner of the right gives the word *dismount*, when all, except the two auxiliaries, dismount; each man draws the curb-reins through the loop of the martingale, passing the end under the cloak-strap near the left knee, gives the snaffle-reins to the auxiliaries, and takes his post as in foot artillery. When the chief of the piece and the non-commissioned officer dismount, the former gives his horse to one of the drivers of the piece and the latter to one of the drivers of the caisson.

The prolonge being fixed, the gunner of the right gives the word *mount*, when all mount and take post in rear of the piece.

Digitized by Google

If the prolonge is to be fixed for crossing a ditch, the command is given—FIX PROLONGE FOR PASSING A DITCH—The key is secured in the lashing-ring, and the prolonge is at its full length, twenty-four feet.

To coil the prolonge, the command is given—UNFIX AND COIL PROLONGE—ADVANCE LIMBER.—The gunner of the right disengages the key from the lashing-ring; the gunner of the left coils the prolonge round the end of the hounds; the drivers rein back their horses, the chief of the piece directing so that the trail may pass over the pintle, and the piece is limbered.

The prolonge must be always uncoiled and fixed before the piece arrives in line.

To change direction.

A piece manœuvring with the prolonge may be wheeled on either a *moveable* or *fixed* pivot. In the first case, the prolonge is stretched and the piece is turned advancing. In the second, the prolonge is slackened by backing the wheel horses, which are then turned short to enter the new direction.

PIECE—LEFT WHEEL—MARCH.—The driver of the leading horses takes the new direction, and when the wheel is completed, the chief gives the word *forward—march.*

The caisson wheels at the same point where its piece had wheeled, the non-commissioned officer giving the words *caisson—left wheel—march.*

Wheeling to the right is performed on the same principle.

All wheels of the half circle are made to the left when practicable.

PIECE—LEFT-ABOUT WHEEL—MARCH.—The leading horses are wheeled left-about. The wheel-horses back the limber, and wheel left-about, the wheel of the limber passing over the prolonge. At the word WHEEL, the men on the right of the piece, face to the right, and passing the muzzle, move round and form in rear of the men on the left.—The wheel being completed, the men on the left, face to the left, pass the muzzle, and resume their posts on the left of the piece.

To wheel the caisson left-about, it is first wheeled to the left, advances twelve paces, then wheels again to the left and obliques in the new direction. A piece on its limber wheels in the same manner.

Digitized by Google

In Line and in Battery.

A piece is *in line*, when the horses' heads are towards the enemy, and the leading horses of the caisson are forty-five paces from the muzzle of the gun. A piece is *in battery* when its muzzle is towards the enemy, the horses' heads to the rear, the leading horses of the piece forty-five paces from the caisson.

Being in Line, to form in Battery.

PIECE–LEFT-ABOUT WHEEL–MARCH.—The piece s wheeled left-about on a fixed pivot, and the men take their posts as in *to action.*

In horse-artillery, at the word WHEEL, the gunner of the right gives the word *dismount*, and the horses are led six paces in rear of the leaders of the piece, facing the enemy.

If, when marching in column of route, it become necessary to form battery, the caisson immediately wheels left-about, and moves to its proper distance in rear, where it again wheels left about.

If the piece were on its limber, it would oblique to the right before wheeling, so as not to lose its direction.

To advance, from Battery.

FORWARD–PIECE, LEFT-ABOUT WHEEL–MARCH. } The piece wheels left about; the caisson closes on its piece and both move forward.

In horse-artillery the words *trot–march* are given, and if the distance to advance be considerable, the gunner of the right gives the word *mount.*

Being in Battery to fire to the Rear.

FIRE TO THE REAR—PIECE, LEFT-ABOUT WHEEL–MARCH.—The piece is wheeled rapidly left-about; the caisson advances at a trot, passes the piece four paces to the right, obliques to the left, and takes its position. As soon as it has passed the firing commences.

In horse-artillery, the men having charge of the horses move round with them, rapidly, in front of the horses of the piece.

Being in March, to fire to the Rear.

FIRE TO THE REAR—PIECE HALT–TO ACTION —The piece halts, and the men take their posts as in *to ac*

Digitized by Google

tion. The caisson, passing four paces on the right of the piece, advances at a trot to its proper distance.

In horse-artillery, at the word HALT, the gunner of the right gives the words–*squad, forward, trot–march.*—The squad moves six paces in front of the leaders of the piece. and the gunner adds *halt–dismount,* when the men take their posts at the gun.

Being in March to form line to the Left.

LEFT INTO LINE—PIECE, LEFT–CAISSON RIGHT —WHEEL–MARCH.—At the word MARCH, the piece wheels to the left on a fixed pivot; the caisson wheels to the right, moves sixty paces in rear of the piece, then wheels to the left, moves on until on a line with the piece, and wheels again to the left, covering the piece at forty-five paces.

The formation to the right is made by inverse means.

Being in March, to form Battery to the Left.

BY INVERSION–LEFT INTO BATTERY. PIECE, RIGHT WHEEL–CAISSON, RIGHT OBLIQUE–MARCH.— } The piece wheels to the right on a fixed pivot; the caisson obliques to the right, and moves forty-five paces in rear of the piece.

In horse-artillery, the gunner of the right gives the words *squad, left–half wheel,* followed by *right–half wheel,* and when clear of the piece, *forward, right–wheel,* to take post in front of the leaders; when there he adds, *right about wheel, halt, dismount.*

If there be not sufficient space on the right for this movement, or if manœuvring with a corps, twenty paces in rear of the line on which the piece is to form battery, the command is given–LEFT INTO BATTERY–PIECE, LEFT–CAISSON, RIGHT WHEEL–MARCH.—The piece wheels to the left, and advances in that direction until it has passed ten paces beyond the line, when the chief gives the words–*piece–left-about wheel–march*—the piece wheels left-about and halts when the middle of the prolonge is on the line of formation. The caisson after wheeling to the right, moves to its proper distance in rear, obliquing to the right and wheeling left-about.

In horse-artillery, the squad halts and dismounts when the piece wheels to the left.

Battery may be formed to the right by similar movement.

Digitized by Google

To March in Retreat.

This differs from the march to the front only by the caisson preceding, instead of following the piece. If it be necessary to fire while retreating, the command is given, HALT—TO ACTION, and the fire commences. In horse-artillery, the squad dismounts, and the horses are led round in front of the leaders.

OF THE BATTERY.

SIX pieces, each with its caisson, are here supposed to constitute a battery. The pieces may be six or twelve-pounders, or twenty-four-pounder howitzers; or they may be mixed. The pieces and caissons are numbered from right to left, and they should not, except in extraordinary cases, be inverted: Each chief, in giving the word for a movement, designates his piece by its number.

The battery is divided into three sections, each section consisting of two pieces with their caissons, numbered from right to left.

The battery is served by a company consisting of a captain, four subalterns, and a certain number of non-commissioned officers and privates. The captain commands the battery. Three subalterns (or in case of deficiency, senior sergeants) command sections—the senior the first section, the next the third section, and the next the second section. The junior subaltern commands the line of caissons, and is called *officer of the train.*

A non-commissioned officer has charge of each piece and of each caisson, and directs their movements; the senior non-commissioned officer of each section of caissons, is the chief of that section. Two non-commissioned officers act as guides or markers.

The right and left of the battery, whether *in line* or *in battery*, is always the same, and is determined by standing in front of the battery, with the back towards the pieces; in manœuvring the right and left is determined by the position

Digitized by Google

of the drivers. *Wheeling–about* is always to the left, by pieces.

Alignments are made on the drivers of the wheel-horses; for parade, on the axletrees of the pieces.

In line, the horses of the caissons front, as those of the pieces; *in battery*, the reverse, except when formed in *retreat* or firing to the rear.

In advancing, each piece precedes its caisson; in retreat, each caisson precedes its piece; and what is executed by the piece in the first case, applies to the caisson in the second. In either case, the right or left may be in front.

The movements of the caissons are regulated by those of the piece, and by the orders of the officer of the train.

For manœuvring, the battery is formed either in line or in column of sections. Column of pieces is never used, but in passing a defile, or on a march, or moving into or out of ark

A piece, or caisson, passing another, always moves to the right of the one passed.

The prolonge is always used when manœuvring in the presence of an enemy, and in the firings; but when it is not necessary to form *in battery*, the pieces should be limbered. The words of command are the same in both cases.

A piece with four horses, and its prolonge extended, occupies forty-four feet, and this interval must be preserved between the pieces in line.

When the right is in front, the guide is on the left; the reverse is the case when the left is in front.

In Line. (Fig. 7.)

The pieces are aligned with intervals between them equal to the length of the piece, which vary according to the calibers, the number of horses, and as the pieces are limbered, or have their prolonges fixed.

The caissons are aligned in rear of their pieces, the horses' heads towards the pieces; the distance between the two lines being twice the length of the piece, reckoning from the heads of the leaders of the caissons to the muzzles of the pieces.

The captain is in the centre, twelve paces in front of the leading horses; the chiefs of sections between the pieces of their sections, six paces in front of the leading horses; the chiefs of pieces one pace in front of the leaders of their

Digitized by Google

pieces; the gunners and matrosses at their posts on the right and left of their pieces;—in horse-artillery they are mounted and formed in two ranks, four paces in rear of the muzzles of their pieces: the officer of the train, in the centre of the line of caissons, twelve paces in front of the leading horses; the chiefs of caissons, one pace in front of their caissons; the music four paces on the right, and in rear of, the muzzle of the first piece.

The formation in line *in retreat*, is the same as in line to the front, except that, in horse-artillery, the mounted squads are four paces in front of the chiefs of their pieces.

In Battery. (FIG. 8.)

The heads of the horses of the pieces are to the rear, the leaders forty-five paces from the caissons.

The captain is in centre of the battery, eight paces in front of the leading horses; the chiefs of sections, in centre of their sections, on a line with the limbers; the chiefs of pieces, midway between the limbers and the trails of their pieces; the gunners and matrosses, (foot and horse,) at their posts, on the right and left of their pieces; the horses of the squads, opposite their pieces, midway between the pieces and the caissons; the officer of the train, opposite the centre of the caissons, eight paces in front of the leading horses; the chiefs of caissons, at their caissons; the music, four paces beyond the right flank of the battery, and midway between the pieces and caissons.

Parade.

The battery is drawn up *in line*, generally with the pieces on their limbers.

The captain and chiefs of sections are at their posts *in line*. The gunners and matrosses, whether foot or horse, are formed in squads twelve paces in rear of the muzzles of the guns; the chief of each piece on the right of his squad. The music are on a line with the squads, four paces beyond the right flank of the battery.

In Column (right in front.)

Column of pieces.

Each caisson follows its piece, the leaders of the former, one pace from the muzzle of the latter. In horse-artillery,

Digitized by Google

the mounted squads are one pace from the muzzles of their pieces, and the leaders of the caissons one pace in their rear.

The captain is on the left, abreast the centre of the column; the officer of the train on the right of the column, abreast the captain; the chief of the first section, at the head of the column, one pace in front of the leaders; the chiefs of other sections, four paces from the left of the centre of their sections; the chiefs of pieces, by the side of the drivers of the leading horses of their pieces; the chiefs of caissons, on the right of the column, by the side of their caissons; the guides, one by the side of the driver of the leaders of the first piece, the other in rear of the last caisson; the music six paces in front of the head of the column; the matrosses at their posts on the sides of the piece.*

Column of Sections.

In foot-artillery, each carriage is six paces from the one which precedes it, measuring from the leaders to the muzzle of the gun, or rear of the caisson; in horse-artillery, the same distance as in column of pieces.

The chief of the first section, is two paces in advance of the centre of his section; the chiefs of the other sections, in the centre of their sections, abreast the drivers of the leaders of their pieces; the chiefs of pieces of the first section, in front of their leaders; the chiefs of caissons on the right of the drivers of their leaders; the guides abreast of the chiefs of the leading pieces, two paces outside the horses; the one on the left is charged with the direction of the column, the other preserves the proper distance between the files of pieces. All the other officers, non-commissioned officers, matrosses and music, are placed as in column of pieces.

In marching *in retreat*, the chiefs of sections and the guides take the same positions relatively to the caissons, which they occupy in regard to the pieces *advancing*.

Movements.

The following movements are laid down as performed from the right; but they may be performed from the left, according to the same principles.

* In passing in review the squads march, in two ranks, in rear of their pieces: the captain is four yards in advance of the chief of the leading section, or piece—the other officers as in column of sections, or pieces.

Digitized by Google

Movements from Line. No. 1.

To break into column to the front. (FIG. 9.)

Commanding officer, { ON FIRST SECTION, FRONT INTO COLUMN.

Officer of train, { *Caissons forward, trot, march,* the caissons, and in horse-artillery, the squads, close on their pieces.*

Chief of 1st section—*Section forward, guide left.*

Chiefs of other sections—*Section right oblique.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections, { MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first section, followed by its caissons, moves to the front; the other sections oblique to the right and enter the column, each in rear of the one which precedes it; as soon as they are in column, each chief gives the words *forward, guide left.*

To break into column of pieces, the same means and commands are observed, substituting the word PIECE for SECTION.

Movement No. 2, *from Line* (FIG. 10.)

To break into column to the right.

Commanding officer, { BY SECTIONS, RIGHT INTO COLUMN.

Officer of train—*Caissons, forward, trot, march*

Chiefs of sections—*Section, right wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections, { MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the sections wheel to the right on fixed pivots, and move forward, receiving from the commanding officer the words FORWARD, GUIDE LEFT; the caissons wheel a little before arriving at the points where the pieces wheeled, and arrange themselves in column.

To break into column of pieces, the same commands are used, substituting PIECES for SECTIONS; the pieces wheel on moveable pivots, in succession, as each has its distance from the one which precedes it.

* This movement for caissons and squads is the same for all formations in column.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 3, from Line.

To break from the right to march to the left. (FIG. 11.)

Commanding officer, { BY SECTIONS, BREAK FROM THE RIGHT TO MARCH TO THE LEFT.

Officer of train—*Caissons forward, trot, march.*

Chief of 1st section—*Section forward, guide left.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chief of 1st section, { MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first section, followed by its caissons, moves forward thirty paces, then wheels to the left and prolongs its direction: the other sections execute the same movement in succession, as each has its distance from the one which precedes it.

The movement is executed by pieces, in the same manner and by the same commands, substituting the word PIECES for SECTIONS.

Movement No. 4, from Line.

To break into column in retreat. (FIG. 12.)

Commanding officer—PIECES AND CAISSONS, LEFT ABOUT WHEEL, MARCH. The pieces and caissons, and in horse-artillery, the squads, wheel left-about.

Commanding officer, { ON THIRD SECTION, IN RETREAT INTO COLUMN.

Chiefs of sections—*Pieces, forward, trot, march.* The pieces, and in horse-artillery, the squads, close on the caissons.

Chief of 3d section—*Third section, in retreat, guide right.*

Chief of other sections—*Section, right oblique.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections, { MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the caissons of the third section followed by their pieces, move forward; the caissons of the other sections, followed by their pieces, form into column by commands and movements similar to those used in forming to the front into column.

This movement is executed by pieces in the same manner and by the same commands, substituting the words ON SIXTH PIECE, for ON THIRD SECTION.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 5, *from Line.*

Marching in line, to close intervals.

Commanding officer, { ON (——) PIECE, TO (——) PACES CLOSE INTERVALS MARCH..

On the word MARCH, the pieces oblique towards the one named, to the distance ordered, when they resume the direct march, by commands of their chiefs.

Movement No. 6, *from Line.*

To open intervals.

Commanding officer, { ON (—) PIECE–OPEN INTERVALS–MARCH.

On the word MARCH, each piece obliques from the one named, to resume its proper interval: the caissons execute the same movement, when they arrive at the same place.

Movement No. 7, *from Line.*

Being in line at closed intervals, to march in retreat.

Commanding officer, { IN RETREAT, EVEN PIECES AND CAISSONS, FORWARD.

The even pieces and caissons move forward until they have unmasked the odd pieces and caissons; the commanding officer then gives the words–PIECES AND CAISSONS, LEFT –ABOUT WHEEL–MARCH, when the whole wheel left-about, and the even numbers resume their places in line.

Movement No. 8, *from Line.*

Marching in line, to pass obstacles. (FIG. 13.)

Commanding officer, { (Such) PIECE (or SECTION) OBSTACLE.

If it be a piece, the chief of the section of the piece named, halts the piece, and its caisson closes on it; when the line of caissons arrives abreast of the piece, the chief of the section gives the words—(such) *piece*, *right* (or *left*) *oblique-march*, and the piece, followed by its caisson, obliques in rear of the other piece of its section.

If the obstacle present itself before a section, the chief of the named section causes his section to halt until the line of caissons is abreast with his pieces; he then obliques his sec

Digitized by Google

on in rear of the centre section, if it be one of the wings, or in rear of the right section, if it be the centre one.

The obstacle being passed, the commanding officer orders, (such) PIECE (or SECTION) INTO LINE; on which the chief of the section gives the words—(such) *piece* (or *section*) *left* (or *right*) *oblique–march*, and the piece or section, quickening its pace moves into line.

Movement No. 9, *from Line.*

Passing a defile.

This is done in either advancing or retreating, by a column of sections or pieces, according to the width of the defile, and either by the right or left flank; the command being given—BY SECTIONS (or PIECES) FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK, PASS THE DEFILE–MARCH.

The defile being passed, the battery or line is reformed by one of the means prescribed in movements from column

Movement No. 10, *from Line.*

To march by a flank.

Commanding officer, { PIECES AND CAISSONS, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL–MARCH–FORWARD.

On the word MARCH, each piece and caisson wheels to the right, (or left,) on a fixed pivot; in horse-artillery, the squads also wheel to the right, (or left,) and form a third column between the pieces and caissons, abreast of the muzzles of their pieces. On the word FORWARD, the whole move forward together, the pieces close on each other, and the caissons march abreast of their pieces. The chiefs of sections and of caissons march on the flank of the column, except the chief of the leading section, who is at its head; the chief of the leading piece in front of the leading horses of his piece.

To resume the line, the command is given—PIECES AND CAISSONS LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL–MARCH.

Movement No. 11, *from Line.*

To change front forward on first section. (FIG. 14.)

Commanding officer, { CHANGE FRONT FORWARD ON FIRST SECTION.

Chief of 1st section—*Section, right–wheel.*

Chiefs of other sections—*Pieces, right–oblique.*

Digitized by Google

Officer of train—*Caissons, left-wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections and officer of train—MARCH.

On the word MARCH the first section wheels to the right on a fixed pivot, and is established by its chief on the new line; the other pieces arrive in succession on the line, and are dressed by the chiefs of sections on the first section. The caissons, except the sixth, wheel to the left; the sixth moves to the front, and the others wheel to the right, in succession, as they arrive on the ground which the sixth occupied; when each arrives opposite its piece, the officer of the train gives the words, *caissons, right-wheel-march, forward, guide-right halt, right-dress.*

The change of front forward on the third section is executed in the same manner, substituting in the commands—LEFT for RIGHT, and reciprocally.

Movement No. 12, from Line.

To change front to the rear on first section. (FIG. 15.)

Commanding officer, { CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR ON FIRST SECTION.

Chief of 1st section—*Section, left-wheel.*

Chiefs of other sections—*Pieces, left-about-wheel.*

Officer of train—*Caissons, left-about-wheel*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections and officer of train—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first section wheels to the left on a fixed pivot, and is established by its chief on the new alignment; the other pieces having wheeled about, oblique to the left, pass the new line a few paces, wheel left-about, and are aligned on the first section, by commands of their chiefs of sections. The caissons having wheeled about, march to the rear twice the length of a piece, when the officer of train gives the words—*caissons, left wheel-march;* when the head of the column has marched the length of a piece, he adds, *head of column-left;* and when each caisson is opposite its piece, *caissons, left wheel-march*, followed by *halt, right-dress.*

The change of front to the rear on the third section, is executed according to the same principles.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 13, *from Line.*

To change front on centre section. (FIG. 16.)

Commanding officer, { CHANGE FRONT ON SECOND SECTION—RIGHT WING—FORWARD.

Chief of 2d section—*Section, left–wheel.*

Chief of 1st section—*Pieces, left–oblique.*

Chief of 3d section—*Pieces, left-about–wheel.*

Officer of train—*Caissons, right–wheel.*

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections and officer of train—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the second section wheels to the left on a fixed pivot, and is established by its chief on the new alignment; the first section arranges itself on the line of the second; the pieces of the third section having wheeled about, oblique to the left, pass the new line a few paces, wheel left-about, and are aligned on the second section, by command of their chief of section. All the caissons, except the first wheel to the right; the first moves forward, the others wheel to the left in succession, as they arrive on the ground which the first occupied, and as each arrives opposite its piece, the officer of the train gives the words, *caissons, left wheel–march*, followed by *halt, right–dress.*

The change of front to the right on the second section, is executed by similar means and commands.

Movements from Column. No. 1.

To march in column, change direction in marching, and to halt the column.

To put the column in march, the commanding officer gives the words—COLUMN, FORWARD, GUIDE LEFT (or RIGHT)—MARCH. On the word MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of sections, the column moves forward. In column of pieces, the guide is not mentioned in the command.

If while in march, the column is to change direction by the head, the commanding officer gives the words—HEAD OF COLUMN, RIGHT (or LEFT), and the chief of the leading section adds, *section, right* (or *left*)*–wheel.* The section wheels to the right (or left) on a moveable pivot, the pivot-piece describing an arc of a circle in such manner as to clear the wheeling point. In foot-artillery, the pivot-piece slackens

Digitized by Google

its pace, in horse-artillery, the wheeling flank trots. The wheel being completed, the chief of the leading section gives the word *forward*, and the section resumes the direct march. The following sections wheel on the same ground at which the first wheeled, by command of their chiefs. A column by pieces is wheeled in the same manner.

To halt the column, the commanding officer gives the words, COLUMN—HALT, the word *halt* being repeated by the chiefs of sections.

Movement No. 2, from Column.

To form line to the front. (FIG. 17

Commanding officer—FRONT INTO LINE.
Chief of 1st section—*Section—forward.*
Chiefs of other sections—*Section, left—oblique.*
Commanding officer, repeated by same chiefs—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first section moves forward and is established on the line. The other sections oblique to the left, until they have gained their respective intervals, when they move to the front and are aligned on the first section.

A column by pieces forms line to the front by similar commands and means.

Movement No. 3, from Column.

To form line to the left. (FIG. 18.)

Commanding officer—LEFT INTO LINE.
Officer of train—*Caissons, right wheel.*
Chiefs of sections—*Section, left wheel.*
Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections and officer of train, } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, each section wheels to the left on a fixed pivot, and, when the wheel is completed, each chief gives the words, *section, halt, right dress;* the caissons wheel to the right by caissons, and march in separate and parallel columns; when the head of each has marched twenty paces, the officer of the train gives the words, *heads of columns, left*, and when each caisson is opposite its piece, he adds, *caissons, left wheel, halt, right dress.*

A column by pieces forms line to the left by similar commands and means: the pieces wheeling in succession, as each arrives opposite the place it is to occupy in line.

Digitized by Google

Movement No. 4, *from Column.*

To form line on the right. (FIG. 19.)

Commanding officer—ON RIGHT INTO LINE, GUIDE RIGHT-MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the chief of first section gives the words—*section, right wheel*, followed by *forward, guide right*, and when his section has marched twenty paces, he adds—*section, halt, right dress.* The chief of first section of caissons, gives the words, *caissons, left wheel trot, march;* and each caisson wheels to the left; when the leading one has marched twenty paces, the chief gives the words, *head of column—right*, and when the caissons are opposite their pieces, *caissons, right wheel, march*, followed by *halt, right—dress.*

The second section continues to move forward until abreast of the point it is to occupy in line, when it wheels to the right in the manner prescribed for the first section, and is aligned on that section; the caissons perform the same movement prescribed for the caissons of the first section. The third section executes what is prescribed for the second.

In column by pieces, this movement is executed by similar commands and means.

Movement No. 5 *from Column.*

To form line, faced to the rear. (FIG. 20.)

Commanding officer—INTO LINE, FACED TO THE REAR,—ODD PIECES FORWARD. Each odd piece moves up abreast of the even piece of the section immediately before it.

Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections, } PIECES RIGHT OBLIQUE —MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first piece followed by its caisson, moves forward to the line; the piece then wheels left-about, and its caisson, passing to the right, marches to the prescribed distance in rear, where it wheels left-about and covers its piece. Each of the other pieces obliquing to the right, marches direct to the point it is to occupy in line, and when there, wheels left-about, and is aligned on those already established. The caissons follow their pieces, pass them on the right, move to their places in line, and then wheel left-about.

Digitized by Google

In column by pieces this movement is executed by similar means and commands.

INCREASE AND DIMINUTION OF FRONT

TO INCREASE.

From column of pieces, to column of sections.

Commanding officer, repeated by chief of 1st section, { FORM SECTIONS— } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the second piece, followed by its caisson, moves up abreast of the first piece, the length of a piece on its left; when the third piece arrives on the ground where the first section was formed, the chief of the second section, forms his section in the same manner, and by the same commands; and so with the third section. In foot-artillery the even pieces lengthen the step, and the head of the column slackens the pace: in horse-artillery, the chiefs of the second and third sections give the word *trot*, and the head of the column does not alter its pace.

The sections being formed, the commanding officer gives he words GUIDE LEFT, and the whole resume the ordinary pace.

From Column of Sections to Line.

Commanding officer—FRONT INTO LINE.
Chief of 1st section—*Section, forward, guide right.*
Chiefs of other sections—*Section—left oblique.*
Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections, { MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first section continues to move forward, the other sections oblique to the left until opposite their intervals, when their chiefs give the word *forward*, and they move up abreast of the first section; the caissons follow their pieces; those of the first section slacken the pace, until at the proper distance: the caissons of the other sections align themselves on those of the first. The line being formed, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDE LEFT (or RIGHT), and the whole resume the ordinary pace.

If a column by pieces, or by sections, be at a halt, it will form line to the front, by the same commands and means, the leading piece, or section, moves forward on the word

Digitized by Google

MARCH, and is established on the lines; the others oblique until opposite their intervals, then move forward, and are aligned on those already established.

TO DIMINISH.

From line, to column of sections.

Commanding officer—BY SECTIONS–BREAK OFF.
Chief of 1st section—*Section forward, guide left.*
Chiefs of other sections—*Section, right oblique.*
Officer of train—*Caissons forward, trot, march.*
Commanding officer, repeated by chiefs of sections, } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first section continues to move forward; in foot-artillery, it quickens its pace: in horse-artillery, it moves at a trot: the other sections oblique to the right, each entering the column in rear of the one which precedes it. The column being formed, the commanding officer gives the words GUIDE LEFT, and all resume the ordinary pace.

From column of sections, to column of pieces.

Commanding officer—PIECES–BREAK OFF.
Chief of 1st section, } *1st piece forward–2d piece right oblique.*
Commanding officer, repeated by chief of 1st section, } MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the first piece continues to move forward, the second piece obliques to the right and enters the column; the other sections break off on the same ground where the first had broke.

EXERCISE OF CASEMATE GUNS.

Implements.

The rammer and sponge (on different staves) in a rack over the embrazure.

The ladle in a rack on the left of the gun, over the arch.

The worm in a rack on the right of the gun and opposite the ladle.

The lantern on a hook immediately over the worm.

The trail-handspikes on the elevating transom.

The crowbars (two) on each side of the gun, leaning against the front wall, and four feet from the carriage.

Digitized by Google

A water-bucket on the right of the gun in the front angle of the casemate.

A pouch for priming caps hung on the cascable, a priming wire attached to it.

The shot and wads on the left of the gun in the front angle of the casemate.

Position of the men at the gun.

One non-commissioned officer and six privates are necessary for the service of each gun. They should be told off before marched to the battery, where they are posted as follows:

No.'s 1 and 3 on the right of, and three feet from the carriage, facing the gun, No. 1 opposite the chase, and No. 3 opposite the elevating screw.

No.'s 2 and 4 on the left of, and three feet from the carriage, facing the gun, No. 2 opposite No. 1, and No. 4 opposite No. 3.

No.'s 5 and 6 in the room in rear of the gun, and near the left door, provided with a budge-barrel and pass-box.

The non-commissioned officer is on either side of the gun, according to the position of the lock, and near to the cascable. He tends vent, points, fires, and commands at the gun.

When the gun is not loaded, it should be run "from battery," that is, run as far back as the counter-hurter, and secured by quoins at each wheel.

To load and fire.

PREPARE BATTERY.—The non-commissioned officer straps the pouch round his waist. No. 1 takes the rammer and sponge from the rack and places them against the wall, in the angle of the casemate on his right, the sponge up, the rammer-head downwards. No. 2 takes out the tompion and places it by the pile of shot, and loosens the wads. No. 3 uncoils the lanyard of the lock and throws it loosely over the cascable. No. 4 enters the trail-handspikes in the rings. Nos. 5 and 6 prepare the budge-barrels; and all resume their posts.

LOAD.—The non-commissioned officer steps on the carriage to tend vent. No. 1 seizes the sponge-staff, steps on the carriage, enters the sponge, and sponges the gun: he is assisted by No. 2, who also steps on the carriage. No. 3

Digitized by Google

seizes the rammer-staff, and passes the small end through the embrazure—No. 1 receives the staff in his left hand and passes the sponge-staff behind him with his right hand, to No. 3, who places it in its position against the wall. No. 5 hands a cartridge to No. 4, who hands it to No. 2. No. 4 also hands the shot and wads to No. 2, who enters them and assists No. 1 in ramming down. As soon as the shot is rammed home, No.'s 1 and 2 step down from the carriage, and the former places the rammer-staff against the wall.

TO BATTERY.—No.'s 3 and 4 take out the checking quoins, and all, except 5 and 6, assist in running the gun out. Care should be taken in running the gun "to battery," not to let the carriage strike the hurter too hard, lest the jar should throw the charge forward and prevent its ignition. The gun should also be run out as far as the carriage will permit, to prevent injury being done to the embrazure from the discharge.

As soon as the gun is run out, the non-commissioned officer steps on the chassés, cocks the lock, and places the percussion cap, keeping his left hand over it to prevent the concussion of other guns from jarring it out of place. Nos. 3 and 4 at the trail-handspikes, and No. 1 at the elevating screw, give the proper direction and elevation by a motion of the hand from the non-commissioned officer. As soon as these are obtained, the non-commissioned officer steps down quickly from the chassés on either side (according to the position of the lock) and by a smart pull of the lanyard, fires the piece.

No.'s 1 and 2 should be ready with checking quoins, to prevent the gun running "to battery." If the gun should not sufficiently recoil, No.'s 1 and 2 enter the crowbars in the truck wheels, and assisted by the other men, heave the gun back at the command HEAVE. The same would be the case if the gun were "to battery."

When practicable, a commissioned officer should be placed in charge of four guns, to see that all the duties are properly performed, and silence observed.

The foregoing exercise will answer with trifling alteration for barbette guns.

206

Digitized by Google

SUPPLEMENT TO PART III. ARTILLERY.

NOMENCLATURE.

Field Guns.

PARTS.—The *bore;* the *bottom* of the bore; the *muzzle;* the *face;* the *muzzle mouldings,* consisting of the *lip* and the *fillet;* the *swell* of the muzzle; the *neck;* the *astragal and fillets;* the *chase;* the *re-inforce;* the *breech;* the *base ring;* the *caseable,* consisting of the *base of the breech,* the *fillet,* the *neck* and the *knob;* the *trunnions;* the *rimbases;* the *handles* (for bronze 12 pounders only;) the *vent piece* (for bronze guns;) the *vent.*

Field Howitzers.

PARTS.—The *bore* (embracing all the part bored out, viz: the *cylinder;* the *slope,* or conical *junction* of the cylinder and the chamber; the *chamber;*) the *muzzle;* the *face;* the *muzzle fillet;* the *muzzle band;* the *neck;* the *chase ring;* the *chase;* the *re-inforce;* the *recess* (around the chamber of 24 pounder bronze howitzer;) the *breech;* the *base ring;* the *caseable* (as in guns;) the *trunnions;* the *rimbases;* the *handles* (for 24 pounder bronze howitzer;) the *vent piece* (for bronze howitzers;) the *vent.*

Carriages.

There are *three field gun carriages,* viz: one for the 12 pounder gun, one for the 24 pounder howitzer, and one for the 6 pounder gun and 12 pounder howitzer; the parts of all of them are similar, differing only in some of their dimensions.

The *limber* is the same for all gun carriages and also for the caisson, forge, and battery wagon, with slight exceptions.

The *wheels* of all field carriages are of the same height and fitted to the same axletree arm, differing only in strength and weight, for the heavy and light carriages.

Field Gun Carriage.

WOODEN PARTS.—1 *Stock;* the *head,* the *groove,* the *rounding of the trail,* the *trail.* 2 *Dowels,* for the stock

Digitized by Google

when made in two parts. 2 *Cheeks;* the *trunnion-bed,* the *axle-notch,* the *top-rounding.* 1 *Axle-body;* the *groove* for the axletree.

IRON PARTS.—1 *Lock-chain bolt.* 1 *Eye-plate* for lock chain. 1 *Washer* and 1 *nut* for bolt. 1 *Lock-chain,* the *links,* the *ring,* the *toggle.* 6 *Rondelles.* 3 *Assembling bolts,* for cheeks and stock. 3 *Washers* and 3 *nuts* for do. 1 *Washer-hook for lock-chain,* under the head of the middle assembling bolt. 2 *Washer-hooks for handspikes,* at each end of the rear assembling bolt, fastened each by 1 *nail.* 2 *Handspike keys,* with *chains* and *staples.* 2 *Trail handles.* 2 *Bolts* and 2 *nuts* for do. 2 *Trunnion plates.* 2 *Chin bolts.* 2 *Key bolts.* 6 *Cheek bolts,* with round heads. 26 *Nails* for trunnion plates. 1 *Axletree;* the *body,* the *stop,* the *shoulders,* the *arms,* the *linch-pin holes.* 2 *Axle bands,* held by 3 *nails.* 2 *Under-straps.* 2 *Bevel washers,* for chin bolts. 4 *Washers* and 10 *nuts,* for chin, key, and cheek bolts. 1 *Sponge hook,* at the front end of the right under-strap. 1 *Sponge and worm hook,* on the left under-strap. 1 *Axle-strap,* under the head of the stock, with an eye for the sponge bucket. 3 *Bolts,* and 3 *nuts* for axle-strap. 2 *Cap-squares.* 2 *Eye pins* riveted in the cap-squares. 2 *Cap-square* chains with two eye pins riveted in the cheeks. 2 *Cap-square keys.* 2 *Key chains.* 2 *Eye pins* for do. 1 *Trail lunette,* fastened by 6 *nails* and the pointing ring bolts. 1 *Trail plate,* fastened to the stock by 6 *nails* and to the lunette by 2 *rivets.* 1 *Large pointing-ring,* and 1 *plate* for do., connected together by a *stud* and *bolt.* 2 *Bolts* for pointing-ring plate, and 2 *nuts* for do. 1 *Small pointing-ring.* 2 *Bolts* and 2 *nuts* for do. 2 *Wheel-guard plates,* fastened to the sides of the stock, each by 5 *nails.* 2 *Prolonge hooks* fastened to the upper side of the stock, each by 4 *nails.* 1 *Box for elevating screw,* (brass.) 2 *Bolts,* 2 *nuts,* and 2 *washers* for do. 1 *Elevating screw;* the *screw,* the *handles,* the *head;* the lower end of the screw riveted so that it cannot be removed without taking off the box. 2 *Handspike-rings* fixed to the head of the cheeks, each by 2 *clinched staples.* 1 *Stop* for sponge and rammer, fixed under the stock by 4 *nails.* 1 *Ear-plate* for supporting worm, fastened under the left side of the stock by 2 *nails.* 1 *Key,* 1 *chain,* and 1 *eye-pin* for ear-plate. 1 *Eye-plate* for *sponge chains,* fastened under the stock by two *nails.* 2 *Hasps,* 2 *plates,* fastened to the

Digitized by Google

sides of the stock, each by 2 *nails*, 2 *keys*, and 2 *chains* 1 *Linstock-socket*, fastened to the outer side of the right cheek by 6 *nails*. 2 *Shoulder-washers*, 2 *linch-washers* 2 *linch-pins* and 2 *wheels* for axletree.

Wheel.

WOODEN PARTS.—1 *Nave*. 14 *Spokes*. 7 *Fellies*. 7 *Dowels*.

IRON PARTS.—4 *Nave bands*, fastened each by 3 *nails*. 1 *Tire*; 7 *tire bolts*; 7 *washers*, and 7 *nuts*. 1 *Nave box*, fixed in the nave by *wedges*.

Limber.

WOODEN PARTS.—1 *Axle-body*. 2 *Hounds*. 1 *Fork*. 1 *Splinter-bar*. 4 *Foot-board brackets*. 2 *Foot-boards*. 1 *Pole*. 1 *Pole prop*.

IRON PARTS.—4 *Rivets for the ends of hounds*. 2 *Bolts*, passing through the middle of the width of the hound into the axle body, for connecting the axle body and hounds. 2 *Washers* for do; 2 *nuts* let into the axle body. 2 *Bolts connecting the hounds and splinter bar*; 4 *washers* and 2 *nuts* for do.; 4 *axle bolts*, their heads counter sunk into the upper side of the hounds. 1 *Axletree*, let into the axle body. 2 *Axle bands*. 2 *Under straps*; 4 *nuts* for axle bolts. 1 *Pintle hook*. 3 *Bolts* for do.; 2 *washers*; 1 *stay* for *ammunition chest*, the foot fastened under the fork with 2 *nails*; 3 *nuts* for bolts. 1 *Pintle-hook key*; 1 *chain* and 1 *staple* for do. 1 *Tar-bucket hook*, fixed to the front of the axle body by 2 *nails*. 2 *End bands for splinter bar*, each fastened by 1 *rivet*. 1 *Eye-plate for pole-prop socket*. 2 *Middle bands for splinter bar*. 2 *Bolts for splinter bar and fork*; 1 *fork strap*; 2 *nuts*. 4 *Trace hooks*. 1 *Pole-prop socket*, fastened by 1 *rivet*. 1 *Pole-prop chain*, one end fixed to an *eye pin* riveted on a *burr* on the upper side of the splinter bar; the other end having a *hook*. 2 *Stay pins* for ammunition chest. 4 *Plates* for do., fixed to the upper and under sides of the hounds, each by 2 *nails*. 2 *Spring keys* for do. 1 *Pole rivet*, for the large end of the pole; 1 *burr* for do. 1 *Pole-bolt*; 2 *washers* and 1 *nut* for do. 1 *Muff for pole yoke*; 1 *washer* and *key* for do. 1 *Pole-strap ring*, fastened by 2 *rivets*. 2 *Pole-chains*; 9 *links* and a *cold shut ring*. 1 *Collar for pole yoke*. 2

Digitized by Google

Brunches for do. 2 *Sliding rings* for do. 2 *Bolts* and 2 *nuts* for do. 2 *Shoulder-washers*. 2 *linch-washers*. 2 *linch pins*, and 2 *wheels*, the same as for the gun carriage.

Ammunition Chest.

WOODEN PARTS.—2 *Ends*. 2 *Sides*. 1 *Principal partition*. 1 *Bottom*. 1 *Cover*; the *frame*, the *pannel*, and the *lining*.

IRON PARTS.—4 *Corner plates* for the ends and sides, held each by 14 *wood screws*. 1 *Assembling bolt*; 1 *washer plate*, held by 2 *wood screws*. 1 *Back strap*, held by 6 *wood screws*, and by the assembling bolt. 1 *Nut* for assembling bolt; 2 *front straps*, each held by 2 *rivets* and 4 *screws*. 1 *Corner plate*, fixed at the middle of the front and bottom by 14 *wood screws*. 2 *Hinges*, fastened to the box, each by 5 *wood screws* and 1 *rivet*; to the cover by 4 *wood screws* and 2 *rivets*. 1 *Hasp*, fastened to the cover by 5 *wood screws* and 1 *rivet*. 1 *Turnbuckle*, riveted on the end of the assembling bolt. 1 *Hasp-plate*, fastened to cover by 3 *screws*. 1 *Covering* (sheet copper) fastened by 216 *tacks*. 2 *Handles*, fastened each by 4 *rivets*.

Caisson

WOODEN PARTS.—1 *Middle rail*. 2 *Side rails*. 1 *Foot board bracket*. 2 *Foot boards*. 1 *Axle body*. 1 *Stock*.

IRON PARTS.—1 *Middle assembling bar*, with stays for ammunition chests. 2 *Bolts*; 2 *washers*, and 2 *nuts* for do. 1 *Hook*, at the end of the middle rail; for a carriage which has lost its limber. 1 *Rear assembling bar*, for supporting spare wheel axle, with a hole for a pick-axe; fastened to the side rails by 2 *bolts*; 2 *washers* and 2 *nuts* for do. 1 *Bridle for the end of middle rail*, fastened by 4 *nails*. 1 *Spare wheel axle*; the *body*, the *shoulder washer*, the *spindle*; 3 *rivets* for connecting the parts of the body. 1 *Chain* and *toggle* for do. 2 *Stay bolts* for do. 1 *Connecting bolt* and 1 *nut* for do. 2 *Nuts* for stay bolts. 1 *Foot bolt*, to connect the spare wheel axle with the middle rail, and to secure the carriage hook; 1 *nut* for do. 3 *Foot board bolts*. 1 *Lock-chain bridle*, under the front end of the left rail. 1 *Lock-chain*; the *links*, the *ring*, the *toggle*. 1 *Washer* and 3 *nuts*, for foot board bolts. 1 *Lock-*

Digitized by Google

chain hook, fixed to the rail by 1 *rivet*. 4 *Axle bolts*, countersunk in the upper side of the rails. 1 *Axletree* set into the axle body. 2 *Axle bands*, on the ends of the wooden body. 2 *Under straps*; 4 *nuts* for axle bolts. 1 *Stock rivet*, between the lunette bolts, 1 *burr* for do. 1 *Lunette*, fastened by 12 *nails* and 2 *bolts*. 1 *Key plate* for spare pole. 1 *Key*, 1 *chain*, 1 *staple* for do. 2 *Lunette bolts*, and 2 *nuts*. 2 *Wheel guard plates*, fastened each by 5 *nails*. 2 *Stock stirrup bolts*, the heads on the front foot board. 1 *Stock stirrup*; 2 *nuts* for stirrup bolts. 3 *Axle strap bolts*, one connecting the middle assembling bar with the middle rail 1 *Strap for axletree and stock*. 1 *Spare-pole ring*. 3 *Nuts* for axle strap bolts. 4 *Stay pins* for ammunition chests; 8 *washer plates* for do; fixed each by 2 *nails*; 4 *spring keys* for do. 1 *Handspike ring*, on the right side of the middle rail; 2 *washers* and 1 *nut* for do. 1 *Key plate for handspike*, fixed by 2 *nails* to the right side of the middle rail. 1 *Key*, 1 *chain* and 1 *staple* for do. 2 *Staples for tool handles*, on the axle body; that for the pick on the left side of the middle rail; that for the shovel, near the right hand rail. 1 *Key plate for shovel*, fixed by 2 *nails* to the inner side of the right hand rail. 1 *Key*, 1 *chain*, and 1 *staple* for do. 1 *Ring and staple* for the axe handle, on the outer side of the left hand rail; 1 *key plate for axle blade*; 1 *bolt*, 1 *washer*, and 1 *nut* for do.; 1 *key* and *chain* for do. 2 *Shoulder washers*, 2 *linch washers*, 2 *linch pins*, and 2 *ammunition chests*, like those on the gun carriage and limber.

Implements and Equipments.

FOR EACH GUN CARRIAGE.—2 Gunner's haversacks. 1 Tube pouch. 1 Portfire case. 2 Thumb stalls. 1 Priming horn. 1 Prolonge. 1 Vent cover and strap. 1 Lin stock. 1 Portfire stock. 1 Priming wire. 1 Fuze auger. 1 Fuze saw. 1 Fuze sett. 1 Vent punch. 1 Gunner's gimlet. 1 Tangent scale. 1 Pair portfire cutters. 2 Sponges and rammers. 2 Sponge covers. Worm and staff. 2 Handspikes. 1 Sponge bucket. 1 Tow hook. 1 Fuze rasp. 1 Fuze mallet. 1 shell plug screw.

FOR EACH HOWITZER CARRIAGE (additional.)—1 Fuze extractor. 1 Copper funnel. 1 Gunner's quadrant. 1 eight ounce powder measure.

FOR EACH CAISSON.—1 Felling axe. 1 Shovel. 1 Pick.

Digitized by Google

1 Spare handspike. 1 Tar bucket. 3 Tow hooks. 1 Spare pole (one half of them ironed.) 1 Spare wheel, to each caisson of the reserve.

Preservation and Arrangement in Store.

Implements collected together according to kind and calibre, in a dry place, arranged on shelves or racks, in bundles, or bunches, or boxes, according to their nature, with marks and labels showing the kind and number of the articles.

Sponges, rammers, ladles, and worms complete, placed on pins in a vertical frame, or suspended vertically or horizontally by racks or hooks, from the joists, supported so as not to bend. When in separate parts, the *heads* piled on shelves or on the floor, and the *staves* tied up in bundles according to kind and calibre. *Woollen sponges* should be preserved from moths by means of camphor, pepper, &c.

Handspikes, in square piles, heads and points alternating.

Leather equipments, hung on pins and hooks, in dry and cool rooms. All wood, except tool handles, to be painted. Iron either painted or oiled.

Entrenching and miners' tools, arranged in piles, the iron coated with varnish.

Harness required for each Horse.

PARTS.	Wheel horses.		Leaders.	
	Near horse.	Off horse.	Near horse.	Off horse.
Halter,	1	1	1	1
Curb bridle,	1		1	
Snaffle bridle,		1		1
Driver's saddle,	1		1	
Vallise saddle,		1		1
Collar, pair of hames, pair of traces and side pipes,				
crupper,	1	1	1	1
Breeching,	1	1		

A *whip* to each driver. A *leg-guard* to each set of harness for a carriage.

Cleaning and preservation of Harness.

The leather articles are brushed and greased with *neats' foot oil*, as often as their condition requires; if they have a reddish hue, mix a little lampblack with the oil. First

Digitized by Google

brush the leather carefully, then pass over it a sponge wet with lukewarm water; grease it slightly on the hair side, applying the oil with a soft brush before the leather is quite dry. Iron parts which are not japanned or tinned, or from which the coating is rubbed off, are greased with tallow.

The different articles should be arranged in store according to kind and class, separated, or in bundles according to their nature, so placed as to touch each other, and the walls as little as possible, having a free circulation of air about them.

AMMUNITION FOR CANNON.

CHARGES OF POWDER FOR FIELD SERVICE.

KIND.	For Guns.		For Howitzers.	
	12 pdr.	6 pdr.	24 pdr.	12 pdr.
	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
For shot and shells, - - - - -	2½	1½	2 and 2½	1 and 1½
For canister and spherical case shot, - - - - - - - - - -	2	1	2	1

These charges are contained in cartridge bags. The small charge for a howitzer is attached to a block of wood, called a *cartridge block*. The shot, shell, or canister is attached to a block of wood called a *sabot*. For *guns*, the shot, or canister is united to the charge, forming a *round of fixed ammunition*. For howitzers, except for the mountain howitzer, the shells and canisters are separate from the charge.

Cartridge Bags.

The best materials for cartridge bags are weldbore, serge, and bombazette. The stuff should be composed entirely of wool, free from any mixture of thread or cotton, and sufficiently fine to prevent the powder from sifting through; that which is not twilled is to be preferred. Flannel is used when the other materials cannot be conveniently obtained.

Making cartridge bags. A cartridge bag is made of a *rectangle* which forms the cylinder and a circular piece which forms the *bottom*.

Digitized by Google

Dimensions.	For Guns.		For Howitzers.		Remarks.
	12 pdr.	6 pdr.	24 pdr.	12 pdr.	
	In.	In.	In.	In.	
Length of rectangle,	14.2	11.4	14.2	11.4	1 Inch allowed for the seams.
Height, - - - -	10.	7.25	6.	6.	½ inch do. do.
Diameter of bottom,	2.25	4.37	5.25	4.37	1 inch do. do.

Patterns are made of hard well seasoned wood, or sheet steel, for the rectangles and bottoms.

A piece of stuff is spread on a table; the rectangles and bottoms are then traced out by means of the patterns and coloured crayons, or French chalk, and then cut out with scissors.

The bags are sewed with woollen yarn, with not more than 12 stitches to 1 inch; they are stitched within half an inch of each edge, and the two edges of the seam are turned down on the same side and basted, to prevent the powder from sifting through; the edges of the bottom are basted down upon the sides. Bags for fixed ammunition are sewed to within 3 inches of the mouth for 12 pounders; to within 2.75 in. for 6 pounders; all others up to the mouth. Cartridge bags when filled, should pass through the small shot gauge of their calibre.

Bags for immediate use at the place where they are made, and for blank cartridges, may be formed by sewing together two rectangular pieces with semicircular ends; the stuff is marked, for cutting and sewing, with stamps of the following dimensions:

Calibre.			12 pdr	6 pdr
			In.	In.
Stamps	for cutting	Width, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	7.6	6.
		Length, including semicircular ends, -	10.5	8.5
	for sewing	Width, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	6.6	5.2
		Length, including semicircular ends, -	10.	8.

These stamps are made of one inch boards of the diameters of the cutting stamp, with a handle in the middle of one side; to the edges of the board is fastened a strap of tin or copper projecting about three-quarters of an inch on the side opposite to the handle; another strip is inserted in like manner in a groove parallel to the edges of the board, at the distance indicated for the sewing stamp; the edges of these

Digitized by Google

strips are made rough, to retain the chalk or paste used for marking.

Mechanical Manœuvres.

These manœuvres for field artillery may be performed by the men attached to the piece, and require no other implements than those belonging to the piece.

Begin, in all cases, by unlimbering, and taking off the implements attached to the carriage.

To change a Wheel.

Tighten the cap-squares; raise the elevating screw to its whole height; ease the carriage by means of two handspikes, one in the bore of the piece, and the other crossed under the first; support the carriage whilst the wheel is changed. For the 12 pounder carriage, dig a hole 6 inches deep under the wheel that is to remain, in order to prevent it from sliding.

To dismount a Piece.

Take off the cap-squares; run up the elevating screw to its whole height; raise the trail; stand the piece upon its muzzle on the ground, and withdraw the carriage.

To mount a Piece.

Put a handspike under the piece a little in rear of the rimbases, and another under the caseable; place 2 men at the first handspike, 4 at the second and 2 at the handles, or (if the piece has no handles) 4 at each handspike, and raise the piece upon its muzzle; bring up the carriage, raise the trail, and put the piece in its place; put on the cap-squares and lower the trail, relieving the weight of the piece by raising the muzzle.

In this and the preceding manœuvres, it may be necessary, with a 12 pounder, to make a hole in the ground for the muzzle.

When a piece is upset, separate it from its carriage, and remount it as above.

Digitized by Google

To transport a piece by means of the limber.

Detach the prolonge; place the limber over the piece so that the pintle hook shall be over the handles, (or over the rear of the trunnions,) with the breech towards the pole; raise the pole and elevate the muzzle of the piece; lash the piece to the pintle hook, with the prolonge, by passing the ring of the prolonge twice through the handles, (or round the piece in rear of the trunnions,) and over the pintle hook; with the loose end of the prolonge, lash the caseable to the fork of the limber.

Digitized by Google

C Chief of the piece.
a Non-commissioned officer.
g Gunners.
The numbers represent the men.

Digitized by Google

FIG. 7.

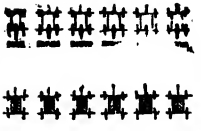


FIG. 8.

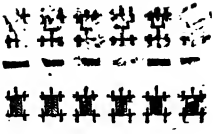


Fig. 9

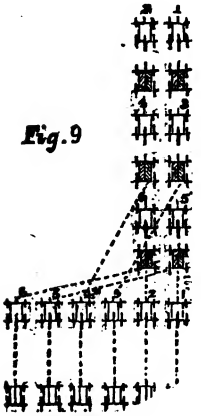


Fig. 10

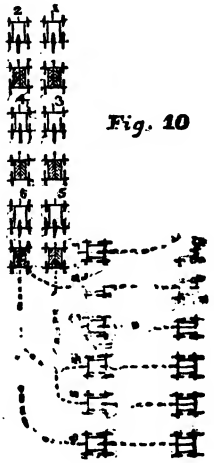


FIG. 11.

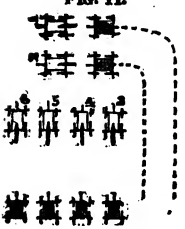
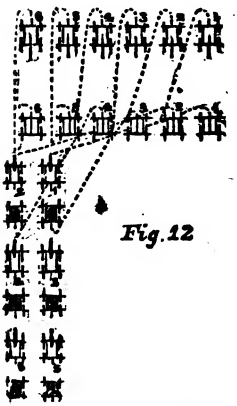


Fig. 12



Digitized by Google

Fig. 13.

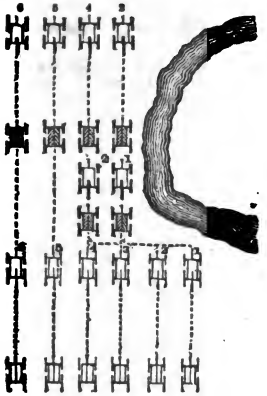


Fig. 14.

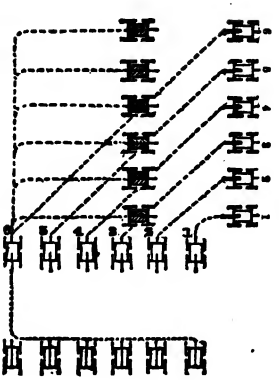


Fig. 15.

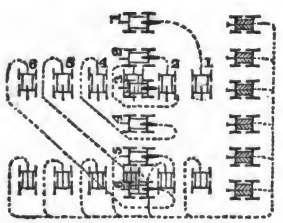
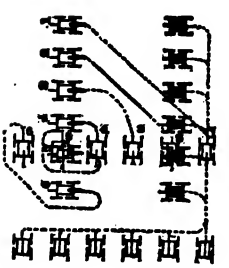


Fig. 16.



Digitized by Google

FIG. 17

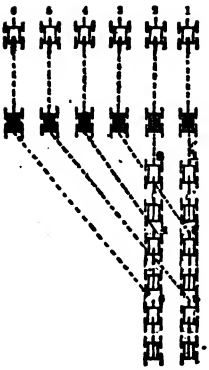


FIG. 18.

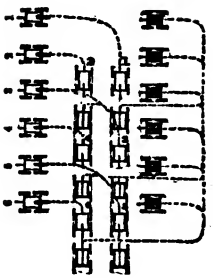


FIG. 19.

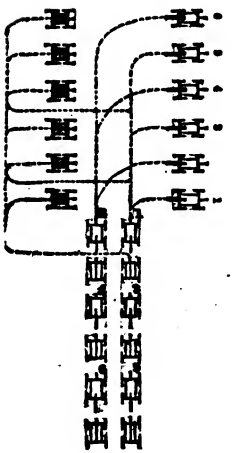
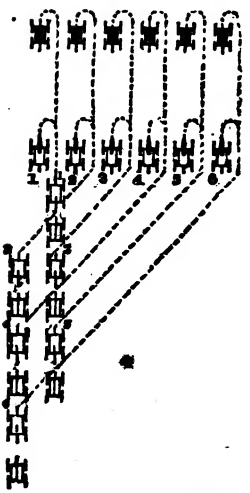


FIG. 20.



Digitized by Google

PART IV.

REGULATIONS.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF PART FOURTH

Page

PRECEDENCE of regiments and corps 5

Duties in garrison and camp, comprising—

Beats and signals 5, 6

The Roster 30

Roll calls 31

Daily details and duties 31

Dress parade 34

Guard mounting 36

Relieving guards and sentinels 38

Method of going and receiving the grand rounds 40

Guards, their use and duty 42

Order of encampment for Infantry 50

——— Cavalry 52

——— Artillery 53

Honours to be paid by the troops 56

——— Salutes 58

——— Escorts of Honour 58

——— Funeral Honours 59

Colour escort 60

Review 61

Inspection 65

Calling out the Militia for the service of the U. S. 68

Manner of issuing and distributing orders 69

Arrests and Confinements 71

Courts Martial 71

Duties of Quartermasters 81

Duties of Commissaries of Subsistence 82

Form of Morning Report 85

——— Muster Roll 86

——— Pay Roll 88

——— Requisition for Ordnance and Ordnance Stores 89

——— Provision Return 90

——— Estimate of Clothing 91

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PART IV.

REGULATIONS.

PRECEDENCE OF REGIMENTS AND CORPS.

The precedence of regiments and corps is as follows:—1st. The Light Artillery—2d. The Light Dragoons—3d Other Regular Cavalry—4th. The Artillery—5th. The Infantry—6th. The Marine Corps—7th. The Riflemen—8th Volunteer Corps—9th. The Militia.*

Regiments of the regular army will take precedence in their particular arm, according to numerical order—in the volunteers and militia, by lot.

This order of precedence refers to parades. On all other occasions, the several regiments and corps are to be distributed and drawn up as the commanding officer may judge best adapted to the purposes of the service.

DUTIES IN GARRISON AND CAMP.

The duties in garrison and camp are to be conducted, as far as practicable, in the same manner, and on the same principles.

The *Reveille* is to sound or beat at day-break, and is the signal for the men to rise, and the sentinels to leave off challenging.

The *Troop* is to sound or beat at — o'clock in the morning, for the purpose of assembling the men for duty and inspection at guard-mounting.

The *Retreat* is to sound or beat at sunset, for the purpose of warning the officers and men for duty, and reading the orders of the day.

The *Tattoo* is to be beat at — o'clock, after which no soldier is to be out of his tent or quarters.

Peas-upon-a-trencher, the signal for breakfast, is to sound or beat at — o'clock in the morning.

Roast-beef, the signal for dinner, is to sound or beat at — o'clock; at other times, it is the signal to draw provisions.

* This rule of precedence will also apply to companies of different arms belonging to the same regiment or battalion, as is the case in some volunteer corps—1st, cavalry, 2d, artillery, 3d, infantry, 4th, light infantry, 5th, rifle:—the companies to be drawn up, each in its own arm, in the order prescribed for battalion companies in page 59, Part I.

Digitized by Google

The *Surgeon's Call* is to sound or beat at — o'clock, when the sick, able to go out, will be conducted to the hospital by the First Sergeants of companies, who will hand to the Surgeon a report of all the sick in the company, other than those in hospital.

The *General* is to beat only when the whole army is to march, and is the signal to strike the tents, and prepare for the march.

The *Assembly* is the signal to form by company.

To the Colour is the signal to form by battalion.

The *March*, for the whole to move.

The *Long-roll* is the signal for getting under arms, in case of alarm, or the sudden approach of the enemy.

The *Parley* is to desire a conference with the enemy.

The *Stable-call*, in cavalry corps, will be sounded immediately after *reveille*, forty minutes before noon; and again, immediately after *retreat*, for watering, feeding, and attending to the horses.

Signals.

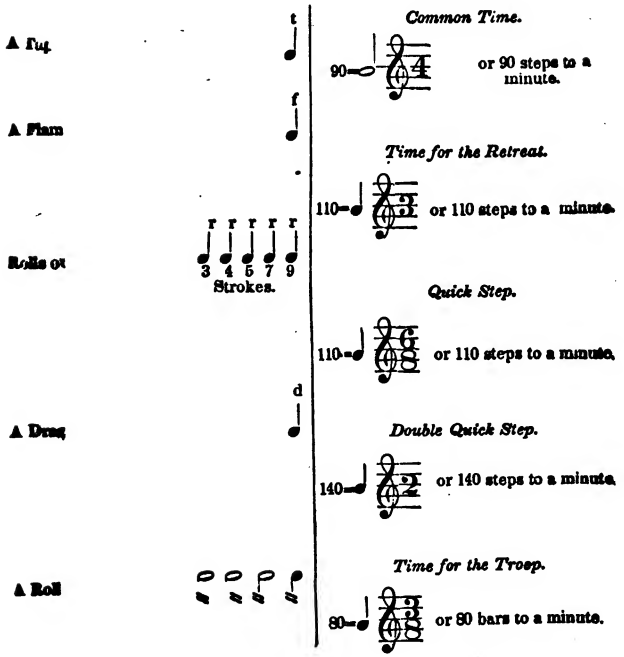
To go for fuel—*poing stroke and ten stroke roll.*
To go for water—*two strokes and a flam.*
For fatigue party—*pioneer's march.*
Adjutant's call—*first part of the troop.*
First Sergeant's call—*one roll and four taps*
Sergeant's call—*one roll and three taps.*
Corporal's call—*one roll and two taps.*
For the drummers—*the drummer's call*

The different daily beats shall be given on the right, and be immediately followed by the whole army; to facilitate which, the *drummer's call* shall be beat by the drums of the police a quarter of an hour before the time of beating, when the drummers will assemble before the colours of their respective regiments; and as soon as the beat begins on the right, it will be immediately taken up by the whole army, the drummers beating along the front of their respective regiments, from the centre to the right, thence to the left, and back again to the centre, where they finish. Where the hours for the different beats and signals are not fixed, the commanding officer will establish them, having regard to climate and circumstances.

Digitized by Google

BEATS OF THE DRUM

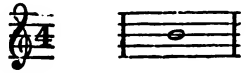
EXPLANATION OF THE SIGNS.



Digitized by Google

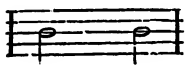
LENGTH AND PROPORTION OF NOTES AND RESTS.

Semibreve equal



Common Time.

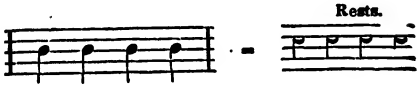
to 2 Minims,



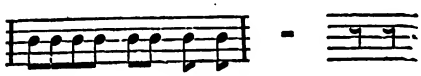
2 steps to a bar, and 90 to a minute.

Rests.

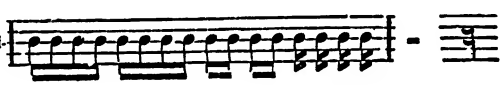
or 4 Crotchets,



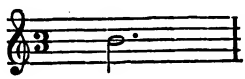
or 8 Quavers,



or 16 Semi-quavers.

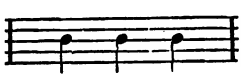


A Dotted Minim equal



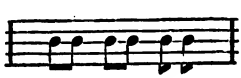
Time for the Retreat

to 3 Crotchets,



3 steps to a bar, and

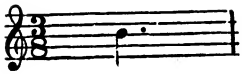
or 6 Quavers.



110 to a minute.

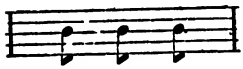
Digitized by Google

A Dotted Crotchet equal



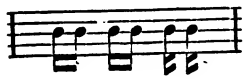
Time for the Troop, &c.

to 3 Quavers,



One step to a bar, and

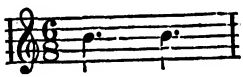
or 6 Semiquavers.



80 to a minute.

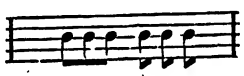
---

2 Dotted Crotchets equal



Quick Time.

to 6 Quavers.

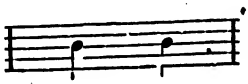


2 steps to a bar, and 110 to a minute.

A Minim equal

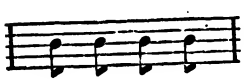
Double Quick Time.

to 2 Crotchets



2 steps to a bar, and

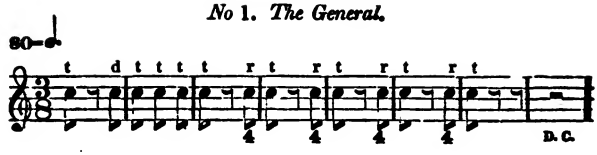
or 4 quavers.



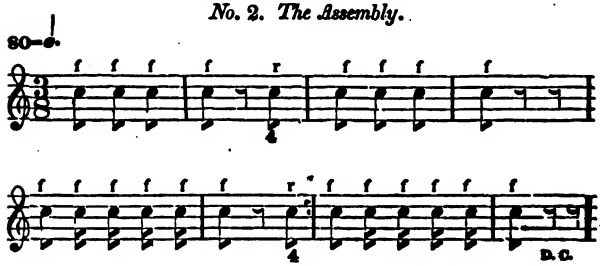
140 to a minute.

Digitized by Google

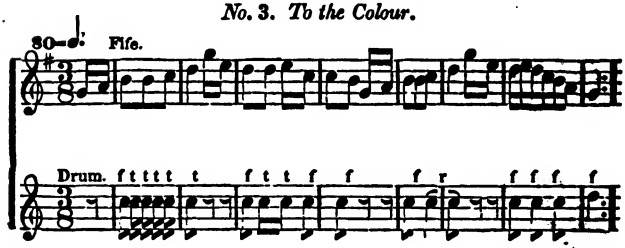
No 1. *The General.*



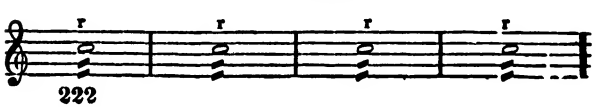
No. 2. *The Assembly.*



No. 3. *To the Colour.*

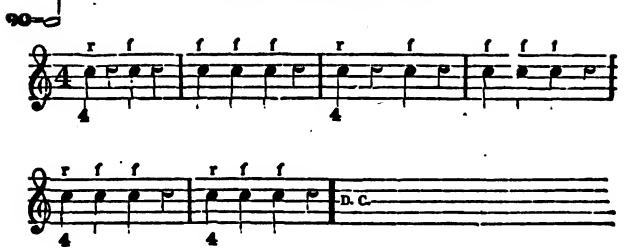


No. 4. *The Long Roll.*

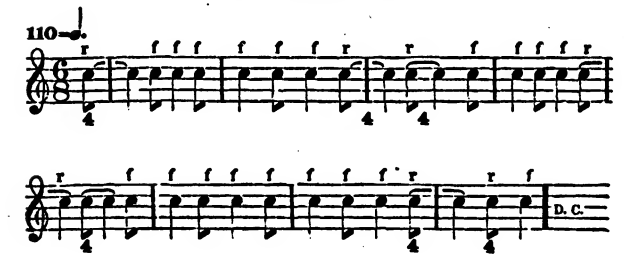


Digitized by Google

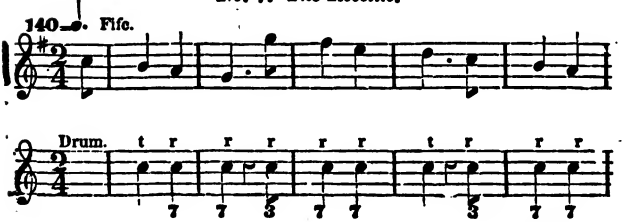
No. 5. Common Time.



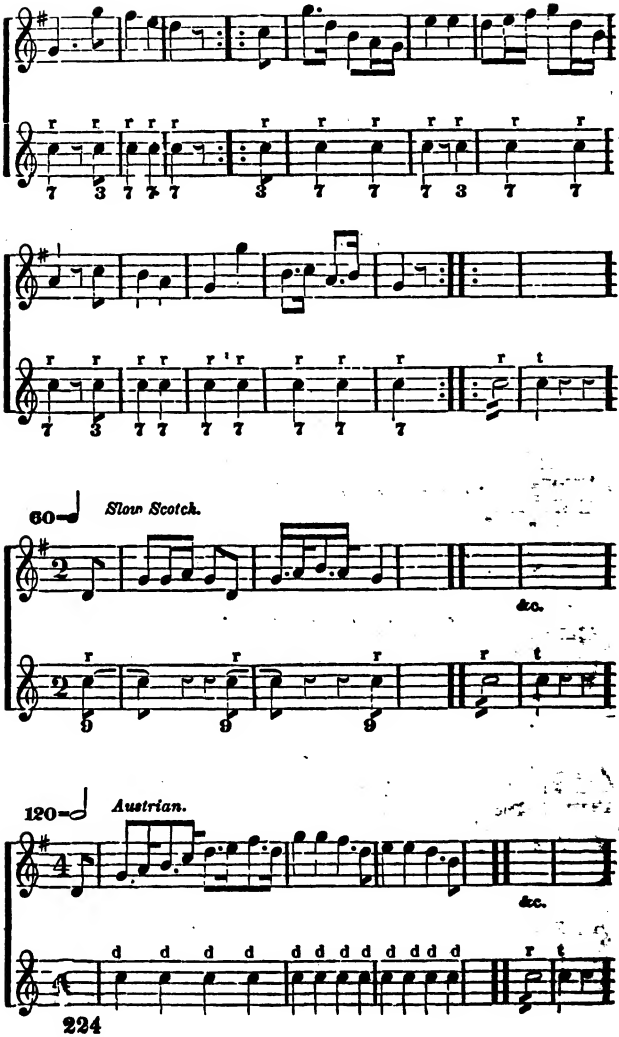
No. 6. Quick Time.



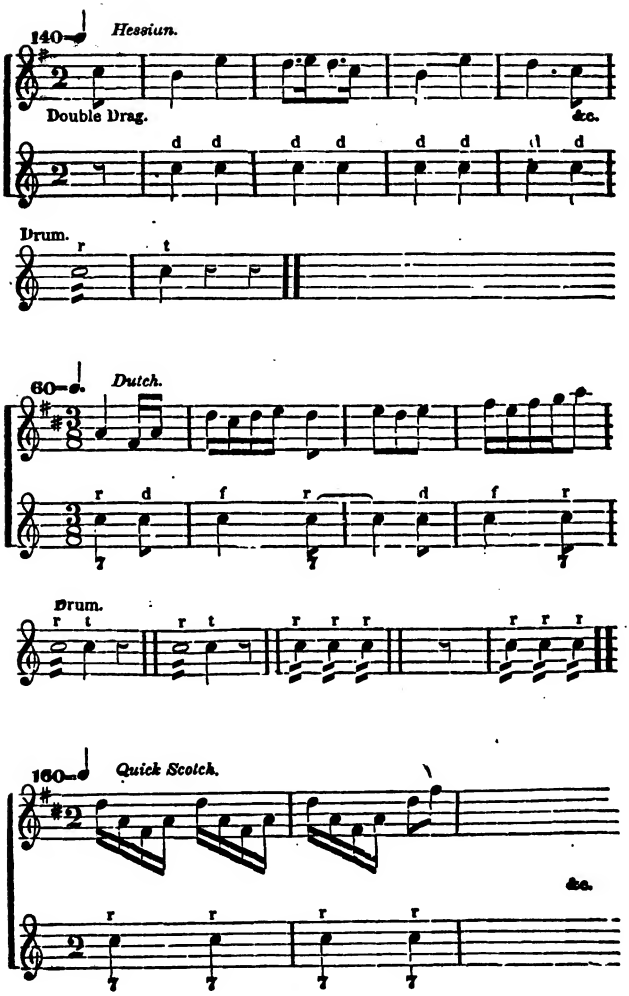
No. 7. The Reveille.



Digitized by Google



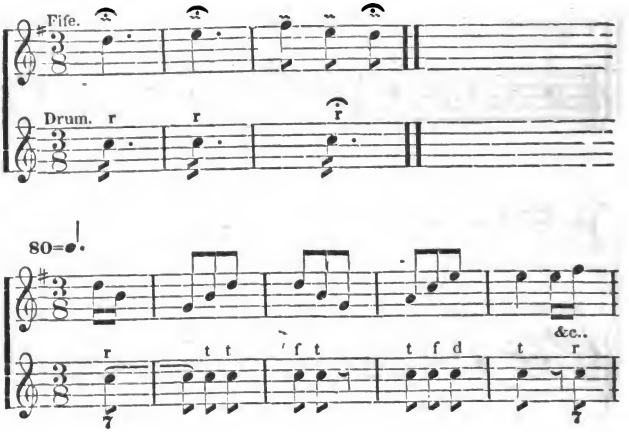
Digitized by Google



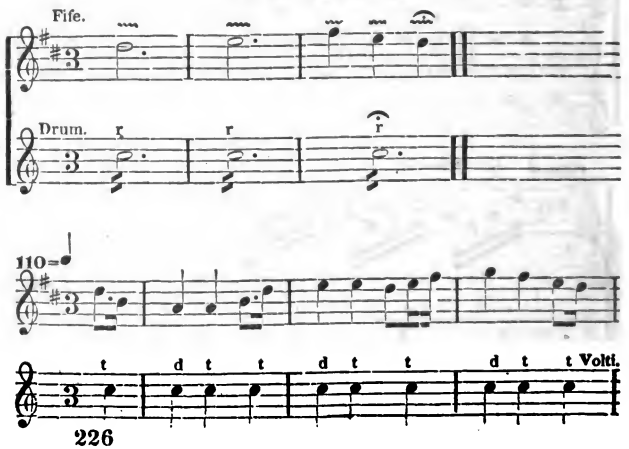
D. C. The first part of the Reveille.

Digitized by Google

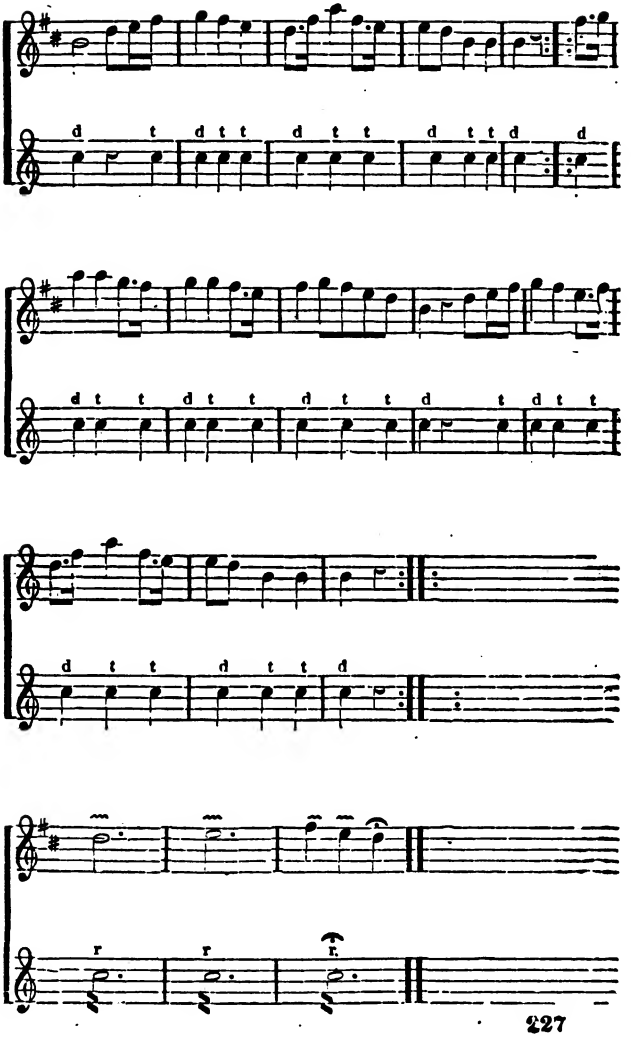
No. 8. *The Troop.*



No. 9. *The Retreat.*

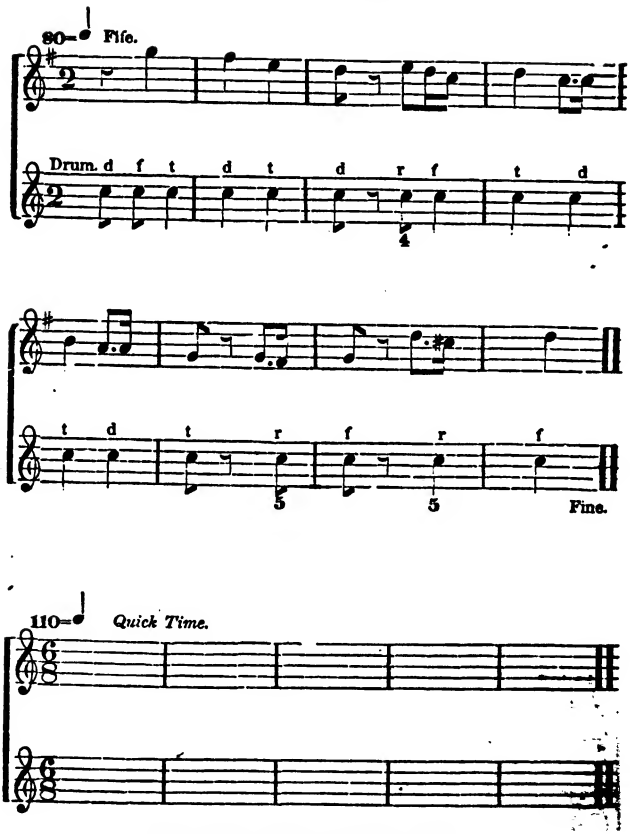


Digitized by Google



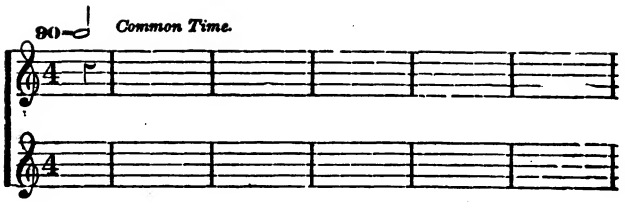
Digitized by Google

No. 10. *The Tattoo.*

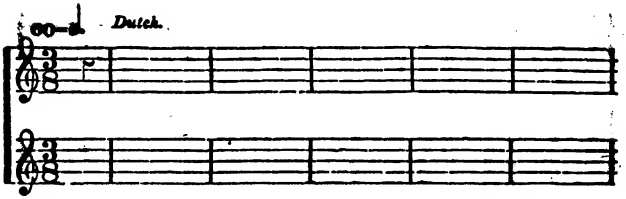


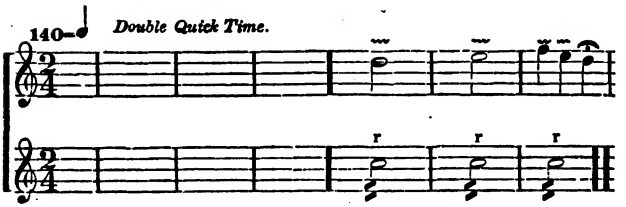
After the quick time begin the doubling.

Digitized by Google



After this repeat the doubling.

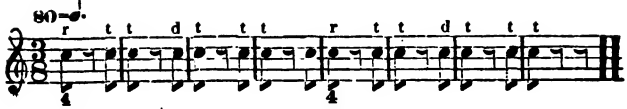




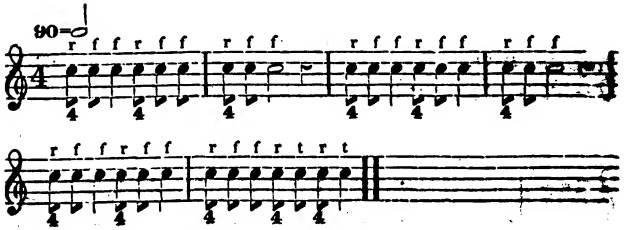
After the three rolls repeat doubling to the fine.

Digitized by Google

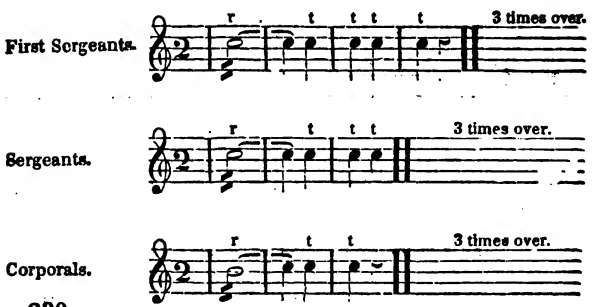
No. 11. *To Recall Detachments.*



No. 12. *Drummer's Call.*

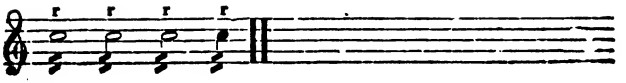


No. 13. *Come for Orders.*

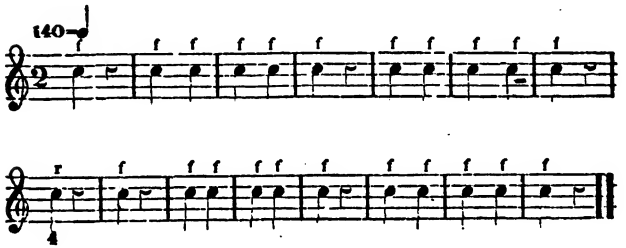


Digitized by Google

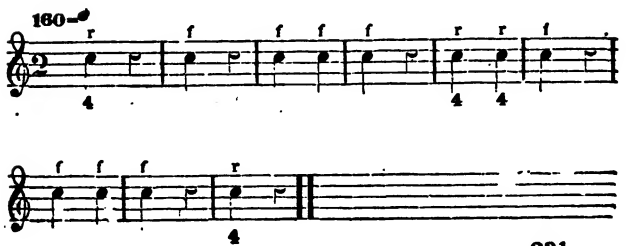
No. 14. *The Roll.*



No. 15. *Double Quick Time.*

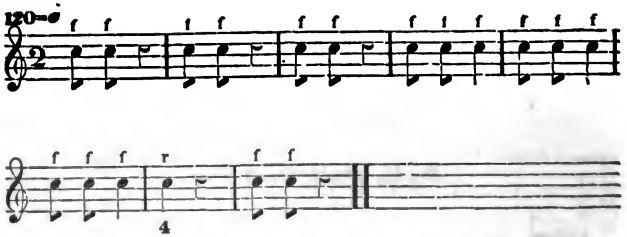


No. 16. *Run.*

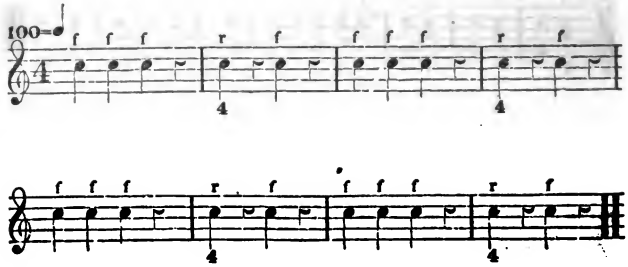


Digitized by Google

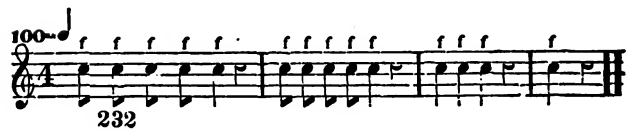
No. 17. *Halt.*



No. 18. *March in Retreat.*



No. 19. *Commence Firing.*

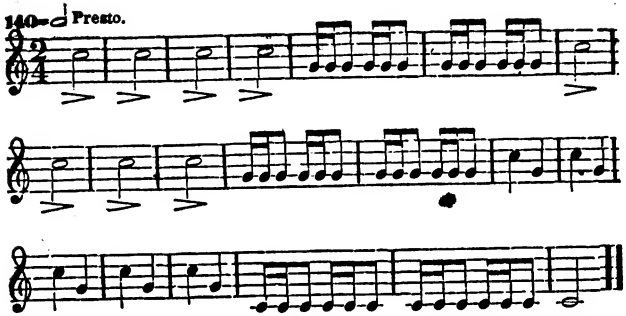


Digitized by Google

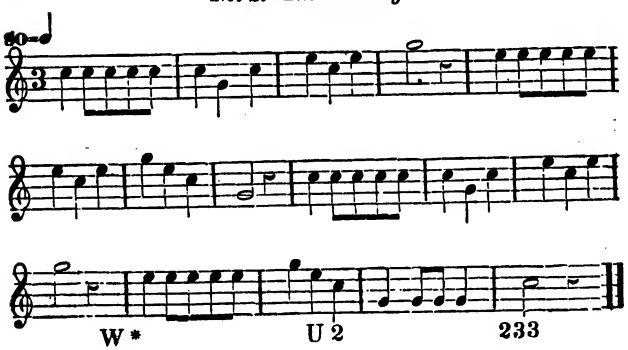
SOUNDS FOR THE BUGLE,

APPLICABLE TO INFANTRY'S MARCH.

No. 1. *The General.*

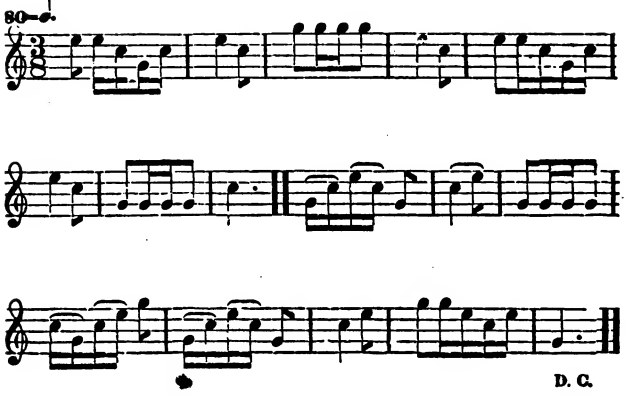


No. 2. *The Assembly.*

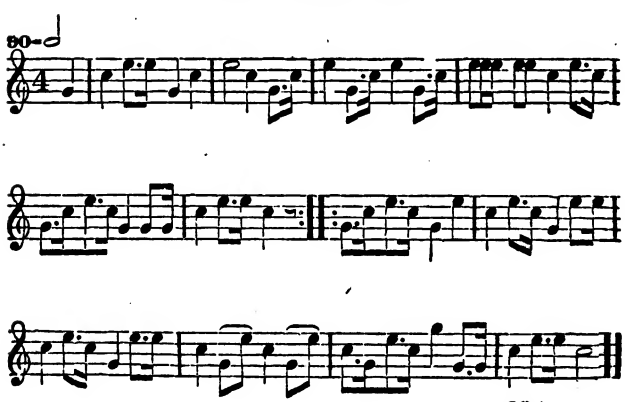


Digitized by Google

No. 3. *To the Colour.*

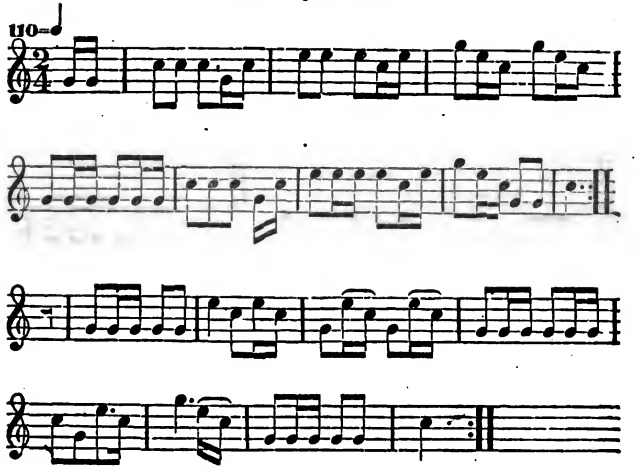


No. 4. *Common Time.*

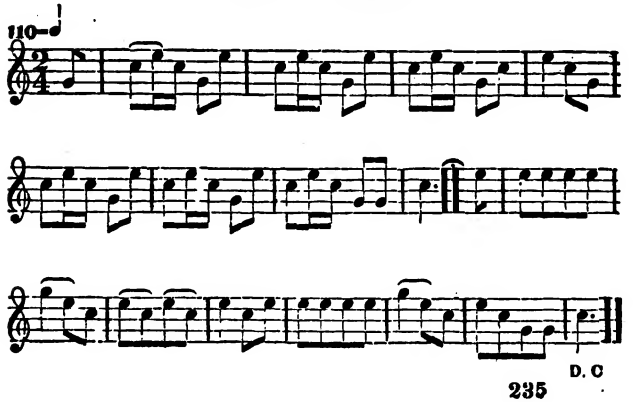


Digitized by Google

No. 5. Quick Time.



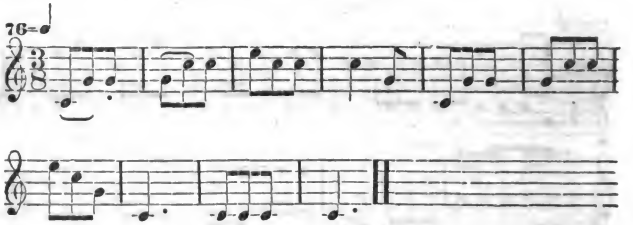
No. 6. The Reveille.



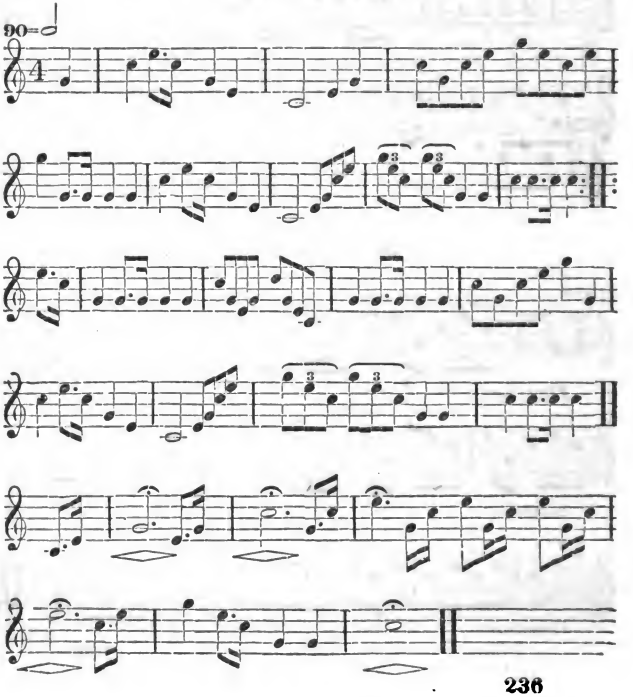
235

Digitized by Google

No. 7. *The Retreat.*

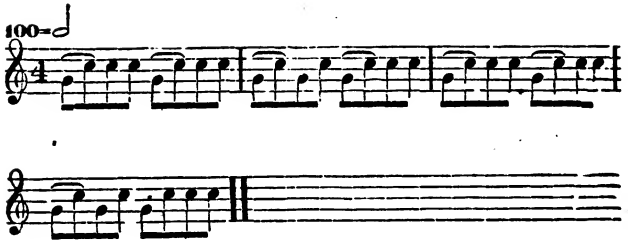


No. 8. *The Tattoo.*

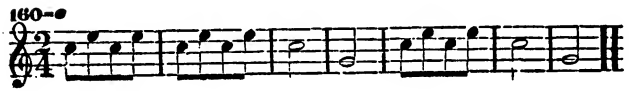


Digitized by Google

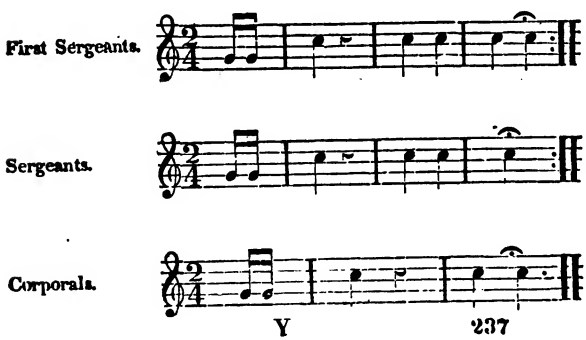
No. 9. *To Recall Detachments.*



No. 10. *Buglers' Call.*

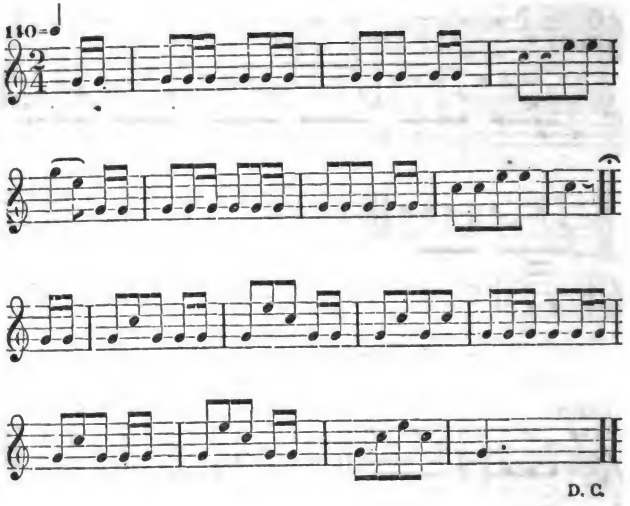


No. 11. *Come for Orders.*

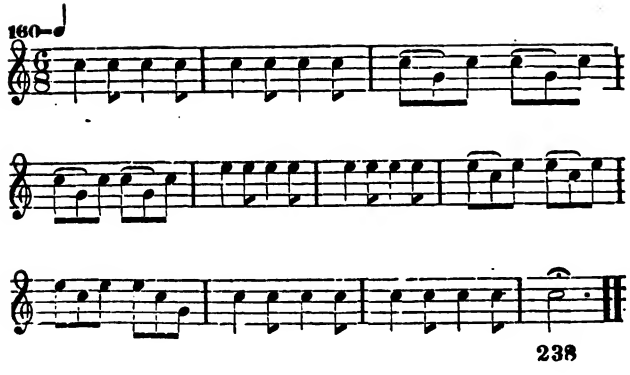


Digitized by Google

No. 12. *Double Quick March.*

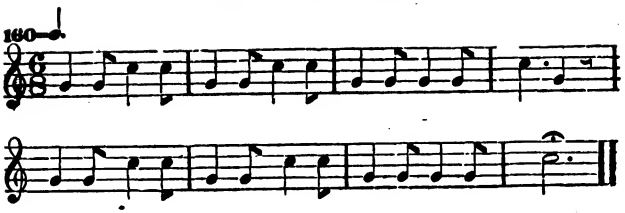


No. 13. *Run.*

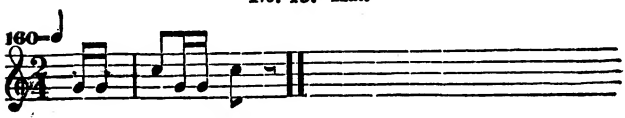


Digitized by Google

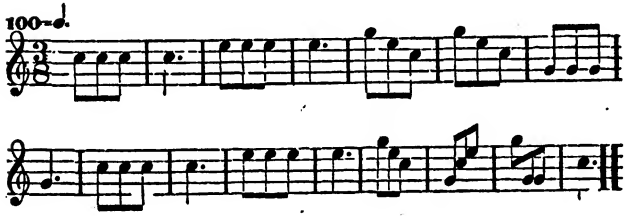
No. 14. *Forward March.*



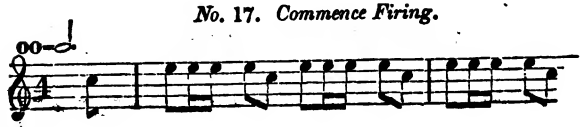
No. 15. *Halt*



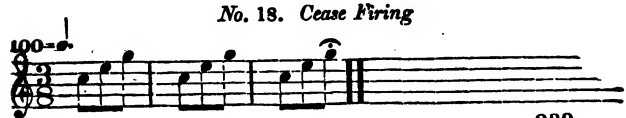
No. 16. *March in Retreat.*



No. 17. *Commence Firing.*

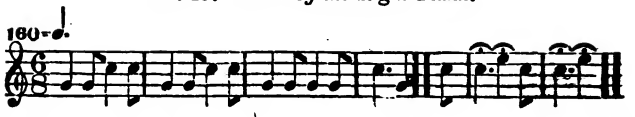


No. 18. *Cease Firing*

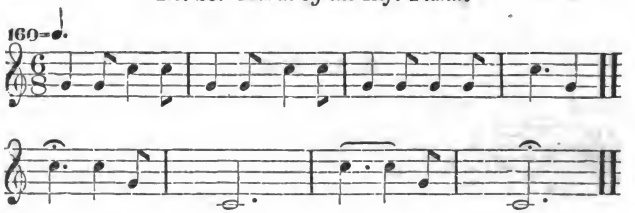


Digitized by Google

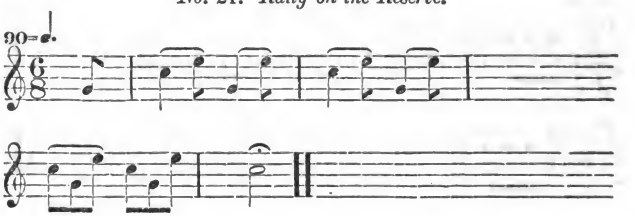
No. 19. *March by the Right Flank.*



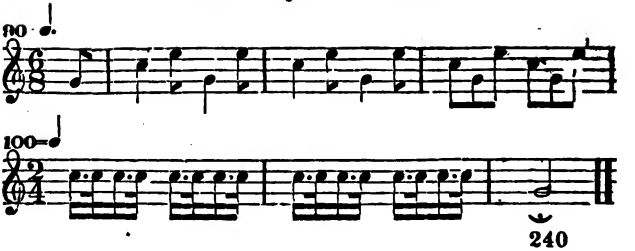
No. 20. *March by the Left Flank.*



No. 21. *Rally on the Reserve.*

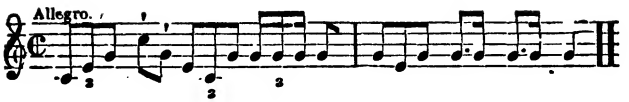


No. 22. *Rally on the Battalion.*

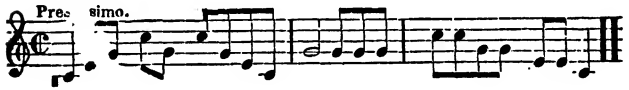


Digitized by Google

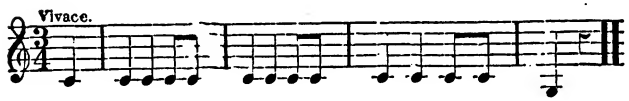
No. 23. *Boots and Sadaus.*



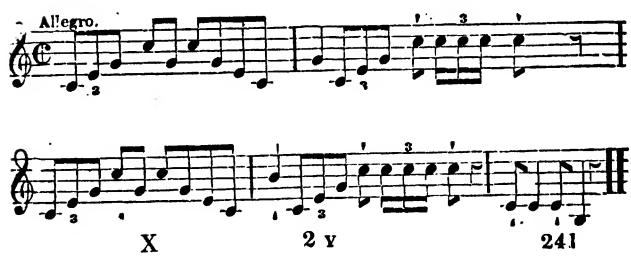
No. 24. *To Horse.*



No. 25. *The Charge.*



No. 26. *Stable Call.*



Digitized by Google

The Roster.

In all duties, whether with or without arms, the tour of duty shall be from the eldest downwards.

Of duties—

The *first* is, detachments of the army or outposts.

The *second*, general officers' guards, according to rank.

The *third*, the ordinary guards, in camp or garrison.

The *fourth*, the pickets.

The *fifth*, general courts martial, and duty without arms or of fatigue.

Officers on the inlying picket are to be considered as liable to be relieved and employed upon other duties. If an officer's tour of duty happen when he is on the inlying picket, he shall immediately be relieved and go upon that duty, and his tour upon the picket credited to him.

If an officer's tour of duty for the picket, general court martial, or fatigue, happen when he is upon any other duty, he shall not make good that picket, court martial, or duty of fatigue, when he comes off, but his tour shall pass; and, in like manner, if he should be upon a general court martial, or duty of fatigue, and his tour of guard or detachment happen, such tour shall be passed to his credit.

After the adjournment *sine die*, of a court martial, the members will return to their respective corps and duties, unless otherwise ordered.

The session of a general court martial, the members of which have been sworn, shall be reckoned a tour of duty though it shall have been adjourned without trying any person. The same rule will apply to courts of inquiry.

When an officer is designated in orders from head quarters for one duty, he is not to be put on any other duty without previous permission from head quarters.

An officer is not to exchange duties with another, without leave of the commanding officer of his regiment or post.

A regiment is not to receive credit for a tour of duty, unless it has marched off the place of parade.

In like manner a guard or detachment which has not marched off the place of parade or rendezvous, is not to be reckoned as having performed a tour of duty; but if it shall have marched off, it shall have credit for a tour, though dismissed immediately afterwards.

Digitized by Google

When a picket is ordered to march to any parade, it is not to be accounted as having performed a tour of duty, unless it shall have marched off that parade.

Roll Calls.

There shall be daily at least five stated roll calls.

The *first*, immediately after *reveille.*

The *second*, immediately before breakfast.

The *third*, immediately before dinner.

The *fourth*, immediately before *retreat.*

The *fifth*, immediately after *tattoo.*

The *first*, *fourth*, and *fifth* roll calls will be made on the company parades by the First Sergeants, superintended by an officer; the *second* and *third* roll calls will be made by the First Sergeant, or by the non-commissioned officers of squads, at their respective messes, and reported by them to the First Sergeants, who will immediately report the result to the Captains, and if at any of the roll calls men are absent without leave, or cannot be found, the Captains will report the names of the absentees to the Adjutant, for the information of the Colonel or commanding officer.

Immediately after *reveille* roll call, the tents or quarters and the space around them, will be put in complete order by the men of the companies, superintended by the chiefs of squads. The same rule will be observed at the guard-house or guard-tent, by the guard or prisoners.

The morning reports of companies, signed by the Captains and First Sergeants, will be handed to the Adjutant before eight o'clock in the morning, and will be consolidated by the Adjutant within the next hour, for the information of the Colonel; and if the consolidation is to be sent to higher authority, it will be signed by the Colonel and the Adjutant.

Daily Details and Duties.

The daily duty must be announced in orders, and tne officers to perform it are to be detailed according to the rules of ne roster.

The number and rank of the officers for daily duty, are o be regulated by the strength and circumstances of the amp or garrison.

Independently of the officers detailed for guard duty the officers for daily duty will be as follows:

Digitized by Google

In large camps there will be a *general officer of the day* for each division; a *field officer of the day* for each brigade, a *captain of the day* for each regiment; and such *general* and *regimental staff officers of the day* as may be necessary to attend to the various details, and to receive and execute orders according to their respective stations. In every regiment and garrison, besides the *officer of the day*, there will be detailed daily, if the strength of the garrison will permit, *a subaltern, four non-commissioned officers, a drummer, and such fatigue parties* as circumstances may require, for the *police* of the regiment or garrison. In small commands, *subalterns* may be detailed for duty as *officers of the day*, and they will also discharge the duties of *officers of police*. The officers thus detailed are to remain in camp or garrison during their tours of duty.

The General of the day is to superintend the regularity and discipline of the camp in every particular; he is to visit the guards of the camp and the outposts; he is to call out and inspect the inlying pickets as often and at such times as he thinks proper; he is to receive all reports in camp, and make immediate communication of any extraordinary circumstance to the General-in-Chief.

The field officer of the day has the immediate superintendence of the camp of the brigade; he is to be present at the mounting and dismounting of all the brigade guards, particularly of the inlying pickets, which are always considered under his command; he is to call them out to inspect them, to order such patroles from them as he may judge necessary to insure the regularity and order of the camp, and in the event of the inlying pickets being ordered to march, he is to march with them.

The Captain or subaltern of the day of each regiment, superintends the cleanliness and regularity of the camp or quarters of the regiment; he attends the parading of all regimental guards, and orders the roll to be called frequently and at unexpected periods, and reports every thing extraordinary to the commanding officer; he is to visit the hospital at various hours, and make a report of its state to the commanding officer of the regiment or garrison.

The Adjutant of the day of the brigade, is to assist the general staff officer of the day, in the various details of it

Digitized by Google

and, in his absence, to perform his duty as such, and attend for orders at head quarters.

The officer of police, under the direction of the officer of the day, is to make a general inspection into the cleanliness of the camp or garrison; to suffer no fires to be made in camp, except in the kitchens; to cause all dirt or filth to be immediately removed, and either burnt or buried; to be present at all distributions of the regiment, and to form and send off all detachments for necessaries. In case the Adjutant is obliged to be absent, the officer of police is to do his duty until his return; for which purpose he must attend at the Adjutant's tent or office, to be ready to receive and distribute any orders that may come for the regiment. *The drummer of the police* must attend constantly at the Adjutant's tent or office, to be ready at all times to communicate the necessary signals; nor must he absent himself on any account, during the twenty-four hours, without leaving another drummer to supply his place until his return; nor then without leave from the Adjutant. In camp, when water is required by the men, application must be made to the officer of police, who will order the drummer to beat the necessary signal, on which, all who want water, must immediately parade with their canteens before the colours, where the officer of police will form and send them off under the care of two non-commissioned officers of the police, who are to be answerable that the whole party is brought back, and that no excesses are committed while it is out. Wood and other necessaries must be sent for and brought to camp in the same manner. Except in cases of necessity, not more than one detachment is to be absent at a time.

Every such party not conducted by a non-commissioned officer shall have a written permission from a field officer, or officer commanding a regiment, or the officer of police, without which it is not to be permitted to pass the chain.

No non-commissioned officer or soldier is to quit camp or garrison without a pass signed by the commanding officer of the regiment or garrison, or by the Adjutant, under the authority of the commanding officer.

No officer is on any account to sleep out of camp or garrison, without permission.

Digitized by Google

*Dress Parade.**

There shall be daily at least one dress parade, which may be at *troop* or *retreat*, as the commanding officer may direct: or at both beats, should he think proper so to order. The parade at *troop* will be termed the *morning parade*, and that at *retreat* the *evening parade*. In either case it will be conducted as follows:

A signal will be beat or sounded half an hour before *troop* or *retreat*, for the music to assemble on the regimental parade. At the same time each company will turn out under arms, on its own parade, for roll call and inspection by its own officers.

Ten minutes after that signal, the *Adjutant's call* will be given, when the companies will be marched (the band playing) to the regimental parade, where they will be formed in their relative positions in the order of battle, arms ordered and at rest: the officers at their post with swords drawn, the Adjutant on the right of the line. The music will be formed in two ranks on the right of the Adjutant, and from the *Adjutant's call* to *troop* or *retreat*, the band will play. The senior officer present will take the command of the parade, and will take post at a suitable distance in front opposite the centre, facing the line.

Ten minutes after the *Adjutant's call*, the Adjutant will order the music to *beat off*, when it will commence on the right, beat in front of the line to the left, and back to its place on the right.

When the music has ceased, the Adjutant will step two paces to the front, face the line, and command—*Attention. Shoulder-arms. Prepare to open ranks. To the rear, open order. March. Right-dress.*

The ranks will be opened according to the system laid down in the Infantry Tactics, the commissioned officers marching to the front, the company officers four paces, field officers six paces, opposite to their positions in the order of battle, where they will halt and dress. The Adjutant seeing the ranks aligned, will command *front*, and march along the front to the centre, face to the right, and pass the line of company officers eight or ten paces, where he will come to the right-about and give the words, *present-arms*, when arms will be presented, officers saluting.

* See note (1.) Appendix, Part IV.

Digitized by Google

Seeing this executed, he will face about to the commanding officer, salute, and report "*the parade is formed.*" The Adjutant will then, on intimation to that effect, take his station on the left of the commanding officer, one pace retired, passing round his rear.

The commanding officer having acknowledged the salute of the line, by touching his hat, will, after the Adjutant has taken his post, draw his sword and command—SHOULDER-ARMS; and add such exercises as he may think proper, concluding with—ORDER-ARMS.

The Adjutant will now pass round the right of the commanding officer, advance upon the line, halt midway between him and the line of company officers, and command—*First Sergeants, to the front and centre. March.* At the words *front and centre*, the sergeants named will shoulder arms as sergeants, march two paces to the front, and face inwards. At the word *march*, they will march to the centre and halt. The Adjutant will then order—*Front-face. Report.* At the last word, each in succession, beginning on the right, will report the result of the roll call previously made on the company parade.*

The Adjutant again commands—*First Sergeants, outward-face. To your posts-march;* when they will resume their places and order arms. The Adjutant will now face to the commanding officer, salute, and give the result of the first sergeants' reports. The commanding officer then directs the orders to be read, when the Adjutant will face about, give the words, *attention to orders*—and then read the orders.

The orders having been read, the Adjutant will face to the commanding officer, salute, and report, when, on an intimation from the commander, he will face again to the line, and announce, *the parade is dismissed.* All the officers will now return their swords, face inwards, and close on the Adjutant, the field officers on the flanks. The Adjutant gives the words—*Front-face. Forward-march;* when they will march forward, the music playing, and when within six paces of the commander, the Adjutant will give the word *halt.* The officers will then salute the commanding officer, by raising the hand to the cap, and there remain until he shall have communicated to them such instructions as he may have to give, or intimates that the ceremony is finished As the officers disperse, the First Sergeants will close the

* Saluting at the same time, by bringing the left hand across the breast to the right shoulder.

Digitized by Google

anks of their respective companies, and march them to the company parades, where they will be dismissed, the band continuing to play until the companies clear the regimental parade.

All company officers and men will be present at *dress parades*, unless especially excused, or on some duty incompatible with such attendance.

Guard Mounting.

Thirty minutes before guard mounting, a call will be sounded for the men warned for duty, to turn out on their company parades for inspection by the First Sergeants, superintended by an officer of each company. Ten minutes after, a second call will be sounded for the duty men to repair to the regimental or garrison parade, conducted by the First Sergeants. Each detachment as it arrives, will take post on the left of the one that preceded it, under the direction of the Adjutant, in open order, arms shouldered, and bayonets fixed; the supernumeraries five paces in the rear of the men of their respective companies. If the guards are intended for the grand parade, they will be marched thither by the senior officer of the details, where they will take post in the order prescribed above, under the direction of the *general staff officer*, or *his assistant, the Adjutant of the day.*

The following regulations respecting mounting guards, are drawn up with reference to the grand parade; with a few obvious variations, they will equally apply to regimental or garrison parade.

The ranks being opened, the officers of guards will take post twelve paces in front of the centre, in one line, according to rank, and with swords drawn: the Sergeants in one rank, four paces in the rear of the officers, and the Corporals in one rank, four paces in the rear of the Sergeants; he whole facing to the front.

The *Adjutant of the day* will dress the lines, count the files, verify the details by reference to the written orders, and tell off the guards, whilst the *general staff officer* appoints the officers and non-commissioned officers to the several guards, and designates the posts which they are to occupy.

The staff officer will then command—*officers and non*

Digitized by Google

commissioned officers. About–face. Inspect your guards. March. The commander of each guard then commands—*Order–arms. Inspection of arms.* The two highest in the rank of each guard will divide the ranks between them, accompanied by the other officers, and inspect accordingly. During the inspection the band will play.

The inspection ended, the officers and non-commissioned officers will take post in their respective guards, as though each guard were a company of a battalion, in open order, under review; at which time, also, the officers of the day will take post in front of the centre of the guards: the old officer of the day on the right of the new officer of the day, one pace retired.

The staff officer will now command—*Parade, rest, troop–beat off:* when the music, beginning on the right, will beat down the line in front of the officers of the guards to the left, and back to its place on the right, where it will cease to play.

The staff officer continues,—*Attention. Shoulder–arms. Close order–march. Present–arms:* at which he will face to the new officer of the day, salute, and report "*the guards are formed.*" The new officer of the day, after acknowledging the salute, will give the necessary instructions to the staff officer, who will cause the same to be executed, the staff officer giving the word of command.

The guard having shouldered arms and performed such exercises as may be required by the officer of the day, the staff officer will again command,—*By guards (or platoon.) Right wheel—march. Pass in review. Column–forward, guide right–march:* when the whole will march past the officer of the day, according to the order of review, conducted by the staff officer, marching on the left of the first division; the Adjutant of the day on the left of the last division.

When the column has passed the officer of the day, the guards will break off under their respective commanders, and take the route to the several posts assigned them, the staff officers breaking off at the same time; the music will cease, and the old officer of the day salute, and give the old or standing orders to the new officer of the day. The supernumeraries at the same time, will be marched by the First Sergeants to their respective company parades and dismissed.

Guards which are assigned to new posts will be conduct-

Digitized by Google

ed to, and established in them by the officer of the day, and the staff officer detached from head quarters for the purpose.

The officer of the day will always be present at guard mounting. No other officer, except a general officer, will interfere with, or give any order on the parade to the staff officer on duty there. The commander of the troops or garrison, though under the rank of General, is of course an exception to this rule.

The regiment that furnishes the Adjutant of the day will also furnish the music for the grand parade.

Officers on all duties under arms are to have their swords drawn, without waiting for any words of command for that purpose.

Relieving Guards and Sentinels.

The guards in camp and garrison will be relieved every twenty-four hours. The guards at the outposts will ordinarily be relieved in the same manner; but this must depend on their distances from camp, or other circumstances which may sometimes require their continuing on duty several days. In such cases they must be previously notified to provide themselves accordingly.

The guards are to move in the greatest order to their respective posts, marching by platoon when the roads will permit.

The officer of the old guard, having his guard paraded, on the approach of the new guard, commands—*present-arms.*

The new guard will march* past the old guard, at *shouldered arms*, officers saluting, and take post three or four paces on its right, and in a line with it, where its officer will command—*present-arms.* The two officers will then approach each other, and the relieving officer take his orders from the relieved. Both officers will then return to their respective guards, and command—*shoulder-arms.*

The officer of the new guard will now direct his Sergeant to make a list of the guard, dividing them into three reliefs, and proceed himself to take possession of the guard-house, or guard-tent, and the articles and prisoners in charge of the guard; he will note every new injury which may have been committed, and, on his report, the relieved officer will be held responsible.

* In quick time.

Digitized by Google

The officer of the old guard will have prepared for the signature of the officer who relieves him, an inventory of the property or articles in charge of the guard, and also a roll of the prisoners with their offences annexed.

The first relief having been designated, the officer of the new guard will order it two paces to the front, when the Corporal of the new guard will take charge of it and go to relieve the sentinels, accompanied by the Corporal of the old guard, who will take command of the old sentinels when the whole are relieved.

If the sentinels are numerous, the Sergeants are to be employed as well as the Corporals, in relieving them.

During the time of relieving the sentinels, and of calling in the small posts, the commanders of the two guards, will, when near the enemy, visit the avenues leading to the post; the old commander giving to the new, all the information which he may possess relative to the position of the enemy.

A relief, with arms supported and formed in two ranks, will march by a flank, conducted by the Corporal on the side of the leading front-rank man.*

The sentinels at the guard-house or guard-tent will be the first relieved and left behind; the one most distant will be next relieved, and the others in succession, as the relief returns to the guard.

When a sentinel sees the relief approach, he will face to it and halt.† At six paces the Corporal will command—*relief–halt:* when the relief will halt and carry arms. The Corporal will then add "No. 1," or "No. 2," or "No. 3," according to the designation of the sentinel—*arms–port.* At this word the two sentinels will *arms port*, and approach each other, when the old sentinel, under the direction of the Corporal, and in his hearing, will whisper the instructions to the new sentinel.

This done, the two sentinels will shoulder arms, and the old sentinel will pass in quick time to his place in rear of the relief, the new sentinel facing the relief. The Corporal will then command—*relief, support–arms. Forward–march:* and the relief proceeds in the same manner until the whole are relieved.

A relief is always to be marched in the greatest order at support-arms; and if an officer approach, the Corporal is to order his men to *carry-arms*, supporting them again when

* The men will be numbered alternately in the front and rear rank, the man on the right of the front rank being No. 1. † With his arms at a shoulder.

Digitized by Google

the officer has passed. The Corporals are to be answerable that the sentinels, when relieving, perform their motions in the greatest spirit and exactness.

The detachments and sentinels from the old guard having rejoined it, it will take up its march, the music of both guards beating a march, except at the out-posts, where the music is prohibited. The old guard will march along the front of the new guard with *shouldered arms:* the new guard at *presented arms;* officers of both guards saluting.

On arriving at the camp or post, the commander of the old guard will, if it consist of detachments of different regiments, send each detachment to its own regiment, under an officer or non-commissioned officer; unless the officer of the day should be present to inspect the old guard, when he will order the men to their several regiments, under their respective officers. In either case, the pieces of the men will be drawn or discharged at a target, before the men are dismissed.

When the old guard has marched off fifty paces, the officer of the new guard will order his guard to stack their arms, or to place them in the arm-racks.

The commanding officer of the guard will then make himself acquainted with the written, general, and particular instructions for his post; next visit his sentinels, to ascertain if the instructions they have received be correct; and question the officers and non-commissioned officers under him relative to the instructions they may respectively have received from the corresponding persons of the old guard

To receive the Officer of the Day and the Grand Rounds.

The General and other officers of the day, will visit the several guards during the day, as often and at such hours as they judge proper.

When the sentry before the guard perceives the officer of the day approach, he will call the guard to turn out, when it will parade, and at the proper time salute him with presented arms.

The officer of the day will examine the guard; see that none are absent; that their arms and accoutrements are in order; that the officers and non-commissioned officers are acquainted with their duty; and that the sentinels are properly posted and have received proper orders.

Digitized by Google

When the officer of the day approaches the sentry, before the guard at night, the latter will challenge, *who comes there?* and the first will answer, *officer of the day.* The sentinel will reply, *stand; turn out the guard, officer of the day!* The guard will be paraded, and the commander of it will direct a sergeant to advance, who will say, *advance officer of the day, with the countersign.* The officer of the day will give the countersign, when the sergeant, turning to the officer of the guard, says, *the countersign is right.* The officer of the guard will then say, *advance officer of the day.* He may also demand the parole if he thinks necessary. The guard will stand at shouldered arms.

The officer of the day wishing to make his rounds, will direct an escort of a non-commissioned officer and two men to accompany him.

When the rounds are challenged by a sentinel, the Sergeant will answer, *grand rounds;* and the sentinel will reply, *stand grand rounds; advance, Sergeant, with the countersign.* Upon which the sergeant advances and gives the countersign. The sentinel will then cry, *advance, rounds;* and stand at a shoulder till they have passed.

When the sentinel before the guard challenges and is answered, *grand rounds;* he will reply, *stand, grand rounds; turn out the guard, grand rounds.* Upon which the guard will be turned out and drawn up in good order, with shouldered arms, the officers taking their posts. The officer commanding the guard, will then order a sergeant and two men to advance towards the rounds and challenge. When the Sergeant of the guard comes within ten paces of the rounds, he will halt and challenge briskly. The Sergeant of the rounds is to answer, *grand rounds.* The Sergeant of the guard replies, *stand, grand rounds; advance, Sergeant, with the countersign.* The Sergeant of the rounds advances alone and giving the countersign returns to his rounds; and the Sergeant of the guard calls to his officer, *the countersign is right;* on which the officer of the guard calls, *advance, rounds.* The officer of the rounds then advances alone, and the guard stands at shouldered arms. The officer of the rounds passes along the front of the guard immediately to the officer, who keeps his post on the right, and gives him the parole. He then examines the guard, orders back his escort, and demanding a new one, proceeds in the same manner to other guards.

All general officers, as well as the commander of the post or garrison, may visit the guards and go the grand rounds and be received in the same manner as prescribed for the officer of the day.

Digitized by Google

Guards—their Use and Duty.

The principal guards are,

1. Outposts and picket guards.
2. Camp and garrison guards.
3. General officers' guards.

The outposts and picket-guards are formed from the line, and composed of cavalry or infantry, or both, according to circumstances. They are posted on the avenues leading to the camp, and in such positions as are most eligible for its security. Their strength is regulated by a variety of considerations, such as proximity to the enemy, and the nature of the position to be guarded.

The duties of the outposts are so various that they will usually require detailed instructions according to circumstances; the following directions will, however, apply generally, and are most strictly to be observed.

All *out-guards* march off without trumpets sounding or drums beating. They pay no compliment of any kind, neither do their sentries take any complimentary notice of officers passing near their posts.

The men on *advanced pickets* are to carry their provisions with them, ready cooked, when circumstances permit. The cavalry to carry sufficient forage for the time they are to be out.

Officers commanding out-guards are to send guides or orderly men to the field officer of the day, or to the staff officer of their own brigades, as circumstances may require, in order to conduct the new guards and to carry such communications as may be necessary. When the army is on a march, they must apprise the staff officer of the brigade of the situation of their posts, as soon as they arrive at them.

Whenever detachments are composed of 200 men or upwards, a Surgeon or Assistant Surgeon is to be sent with them. On particular duties the attendance of a Surgeon or Assistant Surgeon may be requisite with smaller detachments. Detachments of cavalry of fifty or upwards must be attended by a Farrier.

As soon as an officer commanding an outpost or advanced picket arrives on his ground, he must, by a careful reconnoisance, make himself acquainted with not only the space he actually occupies, but the heights within musket shot;

Digitized by Google

the roads and paths leading to or near the post, ascertaining their breadth and practicability for cavalry and cannon, and ensure a ready and constant communication with the adjoining posts and videttes, by signals during the day—by patrols during the night. He should examine all ravines that might cover the approach of an enemy, and all the points from which he is most likely to be attacked. This will prevent all surprises, and should he be assailed during the night, enable him to act with promptness and decision.

An intelligent officer upon an outpost, even without intrenching tools, may materially strengthen his post. A tree felled with judgment, brushwood cut to a certain distance, pointed stakes, about breast high, placed on the point most assailable, may be attended with the greatest advantages, and can be effected with the common hatchet, or axe, with which the soldiers are provided for the purpose of cutting fire-wood.

Unexpected obstacles, within point-blank musket shot of the place attacked, embarrass and discourage an enemy; and an officer who is on the defensive, should multiply them within that distance as much as possible.

Guards are not to presume to molest any persons coming to camp *with provisions*, and are, on no account, to exact or receive any thing for their free passage.

When a *deserter* comes in from the enemy, he is immediately to be sent, under a proper escort, to the officer commanding the outposts, who, after ascertaining from him such facts as relate to his own post, will immediately forward him to head quarters.

The *videttes* or sentinels on outposts are to be placed so as to best observe the approach of the enemy, and at the same time, communicate by signal with each other and with their respective posts. At night, or in thick weather, they will be doubled.

Officers, soldiers, and followers of the camp, are not, on any account, to be suffered to pass the outposts, unless they are on duty, or present a regular permit from head quarters.

Persons bearing a *flag of truce* from the enemy, are to be treated with attention and civility; but, as communications of that nature are frequently designed to gain intelligence, and for reconnoisance, the most strict and efficacious means must be adopted to frustrate such consequences.

Digitized by Google

The camp and quarter guards are for the better security of the camp, as well as for preserving good order and discipline.

Every regiment will furnish a camp and quarter guard. The camp guard to consist of *one Lieutenant, one Sergeant, one Corporal, one drummer, and twenty-seven privates*, and the quarter guard, of *one Corporal and nine privates.*

The camp guard of the front line will be posted four hundred and twelve feet in front of it, and that of the second line, the same distance in the rear of the second line, each opposite to the centre of the regiment.

Each camp guard will post nine sentinels, viz. two before the guard, two on the right, and two on the left. These six sentinels, with those from the other regiments in the line, form a chain in the front and rear of the camp; two sentinels before the colours and arms, and one before the marquee of the commanding officer of the regiment.

To complete the chain of sentinels around the camp, the Adjutant General or staff officer at head quarters, will order two flank guards to be detailed from the line, to consist of a commissioned officer and as many men as may be necessary for that purpose.

The intention of the camp guards being to form a chain of sentinels around the camp, in order to prevent improper persons entering, or soldiers going out of camp, the commanding officers of brigades will add to, or diminish them, so as to answer this purpose.

The quarter guard is to be posted twelve feet in the rear of the line of wagons, and will furnish three sentinels, viz. one at the guard, and one behind the centre of each wing of the regiment.

General officers' guards are to be furnished by their respective commands; that is, for the *General commanding-in-chief*, by the line, each brigade furnishing it by turns; and will consist of such number and description of troops as shall be determined at head quarters.

The guard of a *Major General*, is one subaltern, one Sergeant, one Corporal, and twenty privates, to be furnished by his own division, each brigade furnishing it by turns.

The guard of a *Brigadier General*, is one Sergeant one Corporal, and twelve privates, to be furnished by his own brigade.

Digitized by Google

Besides these guards, there shall be such others as may be found necessary for the protection of supplies in the Commissariat's and Quartermaster's department, and also for the preservation of order at the hospitals.

All guards are to mount at the same hour, which will be regulated by the commanding officer.

The *camp and quarter guards*, are to parade before the centre of the regiment, where they will be formed by the Adjutant; or, in his absence, by the officer of police, and sent off immediately to their respective posts.

The guards of a *Major General* and a *Brigadier General*, are to be formed by the staff officer attached to the brigade, and sent from the brigade parade.

The other guards, including that of the General-in-Chief being composed of detachments from the line, by brigades, each detachment is formed on the brigade parade by the staff officer attached to the brigade, and sent with an Adjutant or other commissioned officer, to the grand parade.

All guards, except those which are honorary, should ordinarily be of force proportioned to the number of sentinels required, allowing three reliefs to each post.

In garrison, the number of guards depends on the extent of the fortress or post to be defended, and the strength of the garrison.

The principal guard will be denominated the *main guard;* and the lesser guards will take the names of the points to be guarded, as the *arsenal guard, port guard, barrier guard.*

Officers commanding guards at the ports, are to cause the bridges to be drawn up or the barriers to be shut, on the approach of any body of armed men, of which they are to give notice to the main guard, and are not to suffer any of them to enter the garrison without leave from the commandant.

It is the duty of officers on all guards, to inspect all reliefs of sentinels, both when they go on, and come off, their posts; to call the rolls frequently, and, by every means in their power, to keep the men under their command in the most perfect state of vigilance and preparation. They will be responsible for the security of the prisoners and property committed to their charge; and it will be their duty to suppress all riots and disorders, and, in case of fire, to give the alarm and be instrumental in extinguishing it. They are

Digitized by Google

also watchfully to superintend the conduct of the non-commissioned officers, taking care that they are correct in the performance of their duty: that they maintain a proper authority, and prevent any species of irregularity among the men. They must particularly ascertain that the Corporals themselves are well informed with respect to the orders they are to deliver to the several sentinels, whom they must frequently visit, to be assured that they know their duty, and have received the proper instructions.

Officers commanding guards, when going to visit their sentinels, are to mention their intention, and the probable time of their absence, to the next officer in command.

The officers are to remain constantly at their guards, except while visiting their sentinels; nor are they to enter any house or place of public amusement.

Neither officers nor soldiers are, on any account, to take off their clothing or accoutrements while they are on guard; but are always to be in their uniform, fully equipped for the service.

No non-commissioned officer or soldier is to quit his guard without leave, which is to be granted only upon particular occasions, and to very few at a time. If water or other necessaries are wanted for the guard, they must be sent for at a time when the sentinels are not relieving, by a non-commissioned officer and some men, with their arms, if at an outpost.

At every relief, the guard must parade for roll call and inspection, and remain formed until the relief returns.

A patrol, consisting of an officer, (if there be more than one on guard,) a non-commissioned officer, and a file of men, will be sent out as often as may be deemed necessary, to see that the sentinels understand their orders, to make observations, gain information, and apprehend suspected persons.

All reliefs and patrols will be conducted with the strictest silence, and on their return the non-commissioned officer will report to the officer of the guard every thing material that has transpired during their absence.

During the day the men may be permitted to rest themselves so much as is consistent with the safety of the guard but, in the night, no man must be suffered to lie down to sleep, on any account, but have his arms constantly in his hands, and be ready to fall in on the least alarm.

Digitized by Google

The officer who mounts the camp guard, must give orders to the sentinels not to suffer any person to pass in or out of camp, except by one of the guards; nor then, till the officer of the guard has examined him.

During the day the sentinels on the outposts must stop every party of men, whether armed or not, until they have been examined by the officer of the guard.

No sentinel will be posted so distant as not to be heard by the guard, either directly or through other sentinels.

A sentinel must take the greatest care not to be surprised. He must keep himself on the alert, observing every thing that takes place within his sight or hearing. He must never quit his arms, but move about briskly and without speaking. He must not suffer himself to be relieved, except by the Corporal of the guard, or some superior of his guard. If a disorder take place, he must call out, *the guard;* and if a fire break out, he must cry, *fire*. If, in either case, the danger be great, he must discharge his firelock before calling out.

A sentinel, placed over the colours or arms, must suffer no person to touch them, except by order of some officer, or a non-commissioned officer of the guard. If placed over prisoners, he must suffer no person, except an officer, or a non-commissioned officer of his guard, to converse with them, nor must he permit the prisoners to leave their places of confinement.

The sentinel at the guard-house or guard-tent, when he sees any body of troops, or an officer entitled to compliment, approach, must call, *turn out the guard.*

The officer of the guard must see that the countersign is duly communicated to the sentinels a little before twilight; to enable him to do which, he must be furnished, by the officer of the day, with the parole and countersign before *retreat.*

Immediately after receiving the countersign, and until *reveille*, the sentinels must challenge all who approach them No sentinel must suffer any person to advance nearer than the point of his bayonet until he has received the countersign, placing himself in the position of *arms port* for that purpose.

A sentinel in challenging, will call out—*who comes there?* If answered—*friend, with the countersign*, he will reply—*advance friend, with the countersign.* If answered—*relief*

Digitized by Google

patrol, or grand rounds, he will reply—*halt, advance, Sergeant*, (or *Corporal*) *and give the countersign*, and satisfy himself that the party is what it represents itself to be. If he have no authority to pass persons with the countersign, or if the persons have not the countersign, he will call —*Corporal of the guard.*

In case one of the guard desert, the officer must immediately change the countersign, and send notice thereof to the officer of the day, who is to communicate the same to the other guards and to head quarters.

Though the regulations dispense with guards turning out as a matter of compliment, after sunset, this is by no means to prevent sentinels, when officers in uniform approach their post, paying them a proper attention, by standing steady, with carried arms, facing to their proper front; nor is this to be discontinued until the evening is so far advanced that the sentinels begin challenging.

When a fire breaks out, or any alarm is raised in a garrison, all guards are to be immediately under arms; the barriers are to be shut, draw-bridges drawn up, and so continue until the fire is extinguished, or the alarm ceases.

The officer of the guard will send to the officer of the day, at guard-mounting, by a non-commissioned officer, a report of his our of service according to the form on the opposite page.

Digitized by Google

Report of a Guard, mounted at ———, on the ———, and relieved on the ———.

Parole.	Lieutenant.	Sergeants.	Corporals.	Musicians.	Privates.	Total.	Aggregate.	Articles in Charge.									
Countersign.																	
Detail - -																	

List of the Guard.

No.	Reliefs, and when posted.			Where Posted.	Remarks.
	1st *Relief*, from 10 to 12, and 4 to 6.	2d *Relief*, from 12 to 2, and 6 to 8.	3d *Relief*, from 2 to 4, & 8 to 10.		
1					This column will contain the remarks of the officer of the guard; such as—the time the guard was visited by the officer of the day; and an account of every material circumstance that has transpired during the tour.
2					
3					
4					
5					

List of Prisoners.

No.	Names	Comp.	Reg't.	Confined.		Charges.	Sentences.	Remarks.
				When.	By whom.			
1								
2								
3								
4								

A. B.
Lieut. of ——— Regiment of ———,
Commanding the Guard.

Digitized by Google

The officer of the day, immediately after being relieved, will add to the guard report such remarks as circumstances require, and present the same at head quarters.

An officer is not to be placed in *charge of a guard*, till he is sufficiently acquainted with his duty. For the purpose of instruction, young officers are to be put on duty as supernumeraries, with senior officers, from whose advice and example they may be expected to obtain a knowledge of their duty.

ORDER OF ENCAMPMENT.

Infantry.—(See PLATE 1.)

The troops are on all occasions to be encamped in the order of battle.

The front of the camp will occupy the same extent of ground, as the troops when drawn up in line, according to their established formation. The intervals between the battalions will be forty-four feet.

The companies will encamp in streets, perpendicularly to the line; one-half of the tents on each side of the streets, facing inwards. The width of the streets will depend on the strength of the companies. The distance between each tent will be two feet; the distance between the tents of one company and those of another, four feet.

Thus, a regiment of six hundred men will occupy a front of six hundred feet each, allowing for each file two feet This front will be divided as follows:—First, deduct forty feet for the main street leading through the centre of the camp to the Colonel's or commanding officer's marquee, there will then remain five hundred and sixty feet, to be divided among the companies on either side of the main street; and if there be ten of them, each company will be allowed a front of fifty-six feet.

The following will be the dimensions of a camp for a regiment of six hundred men:

Front,.....600 feet.
Depth,.....810 feet.

	Feet
From the front of the line of company-tents to the chain-sentinels of the first line,.....	500

Digitized by Google

This space to be subdivided as follows:	*Feet.*
From the front line of company-tents to the stacks of arms, drums, and colours,	20
Thence to the regimental parade,	60
Thence to the sinks of the men,	320
Thence to the front of the officer of guard's tent,	60
Thence to the chain of sentinels,	40
From the first line of company-tents to the front of the company officers' tents,	140
This space to be subdivided as follows:	
From the front of the company officers' tents to the company kitchens,	30
Thence to the front of the company-tents,	110
From the front of the company officers' tents to the front of the tents of the field and staff,	40
Thence to the kitchens of the officers and tents of sutlers,	40
Thence to batmans' tents,	16
Thence to horses and baggage-wagons,	20
Thence to officers' sinks,	30
Thence to the quarter-guard,	12
Thence to the chain of sentinels,	12

The tents of all the officers will face towards the front; those of the Captains will be placed on a prolongation of the line of the right flanks of the companies, and those of the subalterns on a prolongation of the line of the left flanks; he Colonel's or commanding officer's marquee in the centre of the main street; the Lieutenant-Colonel's opposite to the centre of the right wing; the Major's opposite to the centre of the left wing; the Adjutant half-way between the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel; the Surgeon half-way between the Colonel and Major; the Quartermaster on the right of the Lieutenant-Colonel, half-way between his position and the flank; the Assistant-Surgeon on the left of the Major, half-way between his position and the flank.

The non-commissioned staff to be encamped on the prolongation of the lines of tents, and in a line with the compa-

Digitized by Google

ny kitchens, on each side of the main street, facing from the street.

The Sergeants of companies to occupy a tent on the right of their companies, in the front line. The Corporals to be distributed among their respective squads.

The company kitchens will be placed, those of the right wing, on a line with the right of the companies; those of the left wing, on a line with the left of the companies.

The sinks will always be hid from public view, by encircling them with bushes or other blinds; a portion of the earth dug out of them ought every day be thrown in to cover the filth, should the troops remain encamped on the same ground any length of time.

When the army encamps in two lines, the second line will be formed eight hundred feet in rear of the first.

The camp-guards of the second line will be the same distance in the rear that they are in front, in the first line; and also the sinks of the men.

Cavalry.—(See PLATE 2.)

The cavalry will encamp by squadrons, each squadron occupying the same front that it does when drawn up in the order of battle, with the same intervals being preserved between the squadrons.

Two companies constitute a squadron. Each company of a squadron pitches its tents in one row perpendicularly to the front, facing inwards. The horses of each company are picketed in a line parallel to the tents, with their heads towards them. Each horse, so picketed, will require about five feet; the depth of the row will depend on the number of horses in the company. The tents will be pitched at equal distances from each other, so as to allow space between them respectively, for the forage of the horses belonging to the men of the respective tents. The tents of the Sergeants will always be pitched at the head of the row, and on the line of encampment. The distance between the Sergeant's tent and the adjacent tent, will be double the distance between the other tents, so as to allow for the forage for the Sergeants' horses, and those of the men in the next tent, and thus rendering it unnecessary to place the forage of the last tent in the row, on the side of the kitchens, where it might be exposed to fire.

Digitized by Google

Each company of sixty mounted dragoons, will occupy a front of ninety feet, which will be divided as follows:

	Feet.
For pitching a horseman's tent,.....	9
From front poll of tents to pickets,.....	12
From pickets to the edge of the dung,.....	18
Breadth of the dung,.....	6

A squadron of two companies will occupy a front of 180 feet, so that there will be between the dung of each company, a street of 90 feet.

If a company encamp by itself, it will observe the same rule, except that it will be formed in two rows of tents, instead of one.

If there be an odd company in a squadron, or with the regiment, it will encamp in the same manner as is directed for the other companies of the squadron; that is, in one row, and facing towards the company next to it, whether it be on the right or the left, preserving a distance equal to its front when in line.

The horses of the rear-rank are always to be picketed next to their file-leaders.

The horses of company officers are to be picketed in a line with the company horses, on the flank towards the officers' tents.

The non-commissioned staff will encamp in a line with the field and staff.

The horses of the field and staff are to be picketed in the rear of their respective tents.

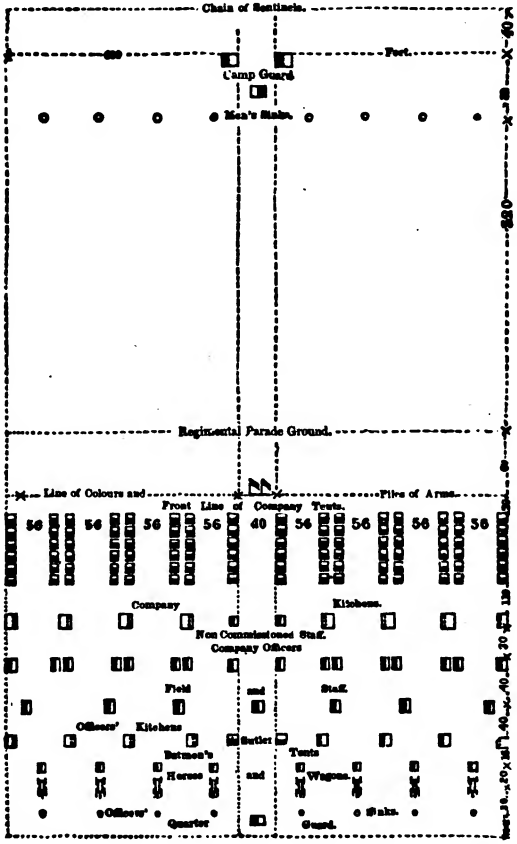
The remainder of the encampment, including guards, baggage, sutlers, kitchens, batmen, and sinks, will conform to that of the infantry.

Artillery.—(See PLATES 1 and 2.)

The artillery will encamp in such positions as may be selected by the commander of the troops to which it may be attached, who will always take into consideration the protection proper to be afforded from the line, as well as the facility with which it may get into position, in case of an attack: but batteries which form a part of the order of battle, will encamp upon the same line with the troops. Mounted artillery will encamp according to the order for the cavalry, and foot-artillery according to the order for the infantry.

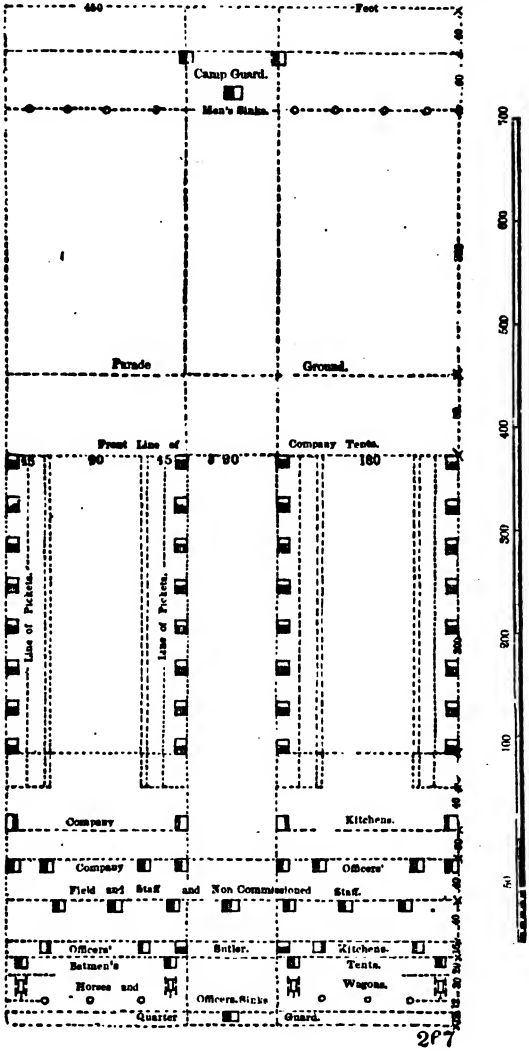
Digitized by Google

ORDER OF ENCAMPMENT FOR A REGIMENT OF INFANTRY



Digitized by Google

ORDER OF ENCAMPMENT FOR TWO SQUADRONS OF CAVALRY



Digitized by Google

HONOURS TO BE PAID BY THE TROOPS.

The President is to be saluted with the highest honours—all standards and colours dropping, officers saluting, drums beating, and trumpets sounding.

The same compliments will be paid to the *Vice President.*

A Major-General commanding in chief, is to be received—by cavalry, with swords drawn, trumpets sounding the march, and all the officers saluting, standards dropping—by infantry, with drums beating the march, colours dropping, officers saluting, and arms presented.

A Major-General is to be received—by cavalry, with swords drawn, trumpets sounding twice the trumpet flourish, and officers saluting—by infantry, with three ruffles, colours dropping, officers saluting, and arms presented.

A Brigadier-General is to be received—by cavalry, with swords drawn, trumpets sounding once the trumpet flourish, and officers saluting—by infantry, with two ruffles, colours dropping, officers saluting, and arms presented.

An Adjutant-General or *Inspector-General*, if under the rank of a general officer, is to be received at a review, or inspection of the troops under arms—by cavalry, with swords drawn, officers saluting—by infantry, officers saluting and arms presented. The same honours to be paid to any field officer, authorized to review and inspect the troops. When the inspecting officer is junior in rank to the officer on the parade, and in the command of the troops to be inspected, no compliments will be paid; he will be received with only swords drawn and arms shouldered.

All guards are to turn out and present arms to *general officers* as often as they pass them, except the personal guards of general officers, which turn out only to the Generals whose guards they are, and to officers of superior rank.

To Colonels, the guards of their own regiments turn out and present arms once a day; after which they turn out with shouldered arms.

To Lieutenant-Colonels and *Majors*, their own guards turn out with shouldered arms, once a day; at other times, with ordered arms.

When the command of a regiment devolves on a *Lieutenant-Colonel* or *Major*, the regimental guards will pay him the same compliment as is ordered for the Colonel.

Digitized by Google

To the Secretary of State, Treasury, War, and Navy Departments, and other members of the Cabinet; to the Chief Justice, the President pro tempore of the Senate, and Speaker of the House of Representatives of the United States, and to Governors, within their respective States and Territories—the same honours will be paid as are specified for a Major-General commanding in chief.

The colours of a regiment passing a guard, are to be saluted with the utmost respect, the trumpets sounding, and the drums beating a march.

When two regiments meet on their march, the regiment inferior in rank is to halt, and form in parade order, and salute the other regiment, which proceeds on its march, with swords drawn and bayonets fixed, trumpets sounding or drums beating, standards or colours flying, until it has cleared the front of the regiment which has halted.

When guards present their arms, the officers, on all occasions, salute with their swords.

When general officers, or persons entitled to a salute, pass in the rear of a guard, the officer is only to make his men stand shouldered, and not to face his guard about, or beat his drum.

When general officers, or persons entitled to a salute, pass guards while in the act of relieving, both guards are to salute, receiving the word of command from the senior officer of the whole.

All guards are to be under arms when armed parties approach their posts; and to parties commanded by commissioned officers, they are to present their arms, drums beating a march, and officers saluting.

Sentinels will present arms to all general and field officers, and to the officer of the day; to all other officers they will carry arms.

No compliments by guards or sentinels will be paid between *retreat* and *reveille*, except as prescribed for *grand rounds*.

Sergeants, with swords drawn, will salute by bringing them to a recover—with muskets, by bringing the left hand across the body, so as to strike the musket near the right shoulder. Corporals out of the ranks will carry their muskets at a shoulder, as Sergeants, and salute in like manner

When a soldier without arms, or with side arms only

Digitized by Google

meets an officer, he will continue to move on, but he is to raise his hand to his cap, looking at the same time in a respectful and soldier-like manner at the officer, who will make a suitable acknowledgment to the compliment thus received.

Salutes.

The *President of the United States* alone is to receive a salute of twenty-one guns.

The national salute is determined by the number of States composing the Union, at the rate of one gun for each State.

The *Vice President* is to receive a salute of seventeen guns.

The *Heads of the great Executive Departments of the National Government;* the *Major-General commanding the army;* the *Governors of States and Territories,* within their respective jurisdictions—fifteen guns.

A *Major-General,* thirteen guns.

A *Brigadier-General,* eleven guns.

A general officer will be saluted but once in a year at each post, and only when notice of his intention to visit the post has been given.

Salutes to individuals are to be fired on their arrival only.

A national salute will be fired at meridian, on the anniversary of the Independence of the United States, at each military post and camp.

Escorts of Honour.

Escorts of honour may be composed of cavalry or infantry, or both, according to circumstances. They are guards of honour, for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops for this purpose will be selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline, and the duty must always be considered as one of high distinction.

The manner of receiving and escorting the personage is as follows:

The escort will be drawn up in line, the centre opposite to the place where the personage presents himself, with an interval between the wings to receive the personage and his retinue. On his appearance, he will be received with the honours due to his rank. When he has taken his place in he line, the whole will be wheeled into platoons or compa

Digitized by Google

nies as the case may be, and take up the march. The same ceremony will be observed, and the same honours paid, on his leaving the escort.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is expected to be received, as for instance, where a court-yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels will be posted from that point to the escort, facing inwards, and the sentinels will successively salute as the personage passes.

An officer will be appointed to attend the personage escorted, to bear such communications as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

Funeral Honours.

On the receipt of official intelligence of the death of the *President of the United States*, at any post or camp, the commanding officer shall, on the following day, cause a gun to be fired at every half-hour, beginning at sunrise and ending at sunset. When posts are contiguous, the firing will take place at the post only commanded by the superior officer.

On the day of the interment of a *Major-General commanding in chief*, a gun will be fired at every half-hour, until the procession moves, beginning at sunrise.

The funeral escort of a *Major-General commanding in chief*, shall consist of a regiment of infantry, a squadron of cavalry, and six pieces of artillery.

That of a *Major-General*, a regiment of infantry, a squadron of cavalry, and four pieces of artillery.

That of a *Brigadier-General*, a regiment of infantry, one company of cavalry, and two pieces of artillery.

That of a *Colonel*, a regiment.

That of a *Lieutenant-Colonel*, six companies.

That of a *Major*, four companies.

That of a *Captain*, one company.

That of a *Subaltern*, half a company.

The funeral escort shall always be commanded by an officer of the same rank with the deceased; or if none such be present, by one of the next inferior grade.

The funeral escort of a non-commissioned staff officer shall consist of sixteen rank and file, commanded by a Sergeant.

Digitized by Google

That of a Sergeant, of fourteen rank and file, commanded by a Sergeant.

That of a Corporal, of twelve rank and file, commanded by a Corporal; and

That of a Private, of eight rank and file, commanded by a Corporal.

The escort will be formed in two ranks, opposite to the quarters or tent of the deceased, with shouldered arms and bayonets fixed; the artillery and cavalry on the right of the infantry.

On the appearance of the corpse, the officer commanding the escort will command—*present-arms;* when the honours due to the deceased will be paid by the drums and trumpets. The music will then play an appropriate air, and the coffin will be taken to the right, where it will be halted. The commander will next order—*Shoulder-arms. By company* (or *platoon*)*-left wheel-march. Column-forward, guide right-march.*

The column will be marched, in common time, to appropriate music; and, on reaching the grave, will take a direction so as that the guides shall be next to the grave. When the centre of the column is opposite the grave, the commander will order—*Column-halt. Right into line-wheel-march.*

The coffin is then brought along the front, and the commander then orders—*Present-arms;* and when the coffin reaches the grave, he adds—*Shoulder-arms. Order-arms. Rest.*

After the funeral service is performed, and the coffin is lowered into the grave, the commander will order—*Attention.. Shoulder-arms. Load at will. Load;*—when three rounds of small arms will be fired by the escort, taking care to elevate the pieces.

This being done, the commander will order—*By company* (or *platoon*), *right wheel-march. Column forward, guide left, quick-march.*

The music will not begin to play until the escort is clear of the enclosure or burying-ground.

COLOUR ESCORT.

When a battalion turns out under arms, and the colour is wanted, one of the flank companies in its turn, or if both be

Digitized by Google

absent, a battalion company, other than that of the colour will be put in march to receive and escort the colour.

The march will be in the following order, in quick time and without music:—the drum-major and field-music, followed by the band; the escort in column, by platoon, right in front, with arms shifted to the right shoulder, and the colour-bearer between the platoons.

Arrived in front of the tent or quarters of the Colonel, the escort will form line, the field-music and band on the right, and arms will be carried.

The moment the escort shall be in line, the colour-bearer preceded by the first lieutenant, and followed by a sergeant of the escort, will go to receive the colour.

When the colour-bearer shall come out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, he will halt before the entrance; the escort will present arms, and the drums will beat *to the colour* for half a minute, when arms will be shouldered and the escort will break into column by platoon; the colour-bearer will place himself between the platoons, and the lieutenant and sergeant will resume their posts.

The escort will march back to the battalion to the sound of music, in quick time, and in the same order as above.

Arrived at the distance of twenty paces from the battalion, the escort will halt, and the music cease; the Colonel will place himself six paces before the centre of the battalion, the colour-bearer will approach the Colonel, by the front, in quick time; when at the distance of ten paces, he will halt; the Colonel will cause arms to be presented, and *to the colour* to be played, which being executed, the colour-bearer will take his place in the front-rank of the colour-guard, and the battalion, by command, will shoulder arms.

The escort, field-music, and band, will return in quick time to their several places in the line of battle, marching by the rear of the battalion.

The colour will be escorted back to the Colonel's tent or quarters, in the above order.

REVIEW.

A battalion being in the order of battle,* the Colonel will command—BATTALION, PREPARE FOR REVIEW. TO THE REAR OPEN ORDER—MARCH

* At shouldered arms.

Digitized by Google

At the word *march*, the field and staff officers dismount the company officers and the colour-rank advance four paces in front of the first rank, and place themselves opposite to their respective places in the order of battle; the staff officers place themselves on the right of the rank of company officers, according to their relative rank, one pace from each other; the music advances through the centre, and forms in two ranks—the band, if there be one, in front, between the colours and the line; the colour-guard replace the colour-rank; the Quartermaster-Sergeant and the Sergeant-Major on the right of the front-rank of the battalion.

When the ranks are aligned, the Colonel will command—FRONT, and place himself eight paces, the Lieutenant-Colonel and Major two paces, in front of the rank of company officers, and opposite to their respective places in the order of battle.

A camp colour is to be originally placed eighty or one hundred paces in front of the centre of the battalion, where the reviewing officer is supposed to take his station; and although he may choose to quit that position, still the colour is to be considered as the point to which all movements and formations are relative.

When the reviewing officer presents himself before the centre, and is fifty or sixty paces distant, the Colonel will command—PRESENT—ARMS. The men present arms, and the officers salute, so as to drop their swords with the last motion of presented arms; the music will play, and all the drums will beat, according to the rank of the reviewing officer. The colours only salute such persons as, from their rank and by regulation, are entitled to that honour.

The Colonel will next command—SHOULDER—ARMS, when the men will shoulder, and the officers recover their swords with the last motion.

The reviewing officer will then go towards the right, the whole remaining perfectly steady, without paying any further compliment, while he passes along the front of the battalion and proceeds round the left flank and along the rear to the right. When the reviewing officer is going round the battalion, the band will play, and will cease when he has returned to the right flank of the battalion.

While the reviewing officer is proceeding to place himself in the front, the Colonel will command—BATTALION,

Digitized by Google

CLOSE ORDER—MARCH, when all persons, except the Colonel, will resume their places in the order of battle; the field and staff officers mounted.

The reviewing officer having taken his position near the camp colour, the Colonel will command—BY COMPANY, RIGHT WHEEL—MARCH. PASS IN REVIEW. COLUMN, FORWARD, GUIDE RIGHT—MARCH. The battalion will break into column of companies, right in front, and the column will be put in motion; the Colonel four paces in front of the Captain of the leading company; the Lieutenant-Colonel on a line with the leading company; the Major on a line with the rear company; the Adjutant on a line with the second company; the Sergeant-Major on a line with the company next to the rear; each six paces from the flank opposite to the reviewing officer; the staff officers in one rank, according to the order of precedency, four paces in rear of the column; the music, preceded by the principal musician, six paces before the Colonel; the pioneers, preceded by a Corporal, four paces before the principal musician; and the Quartermaster-Sergeant two paces from the side opposite to the guides, and in a line with the pioneers.

All other officers and non-commissioned officers will march past in the places prescribed for them in the march of an open column.

The guides and soldiers will keep their heads well to the front in passing in review.

The colour-bearer will remain in the ranks while passing and saluting.

Points will be fixed by the Adjutant for the several wheelings of the divisions; so that their right flanks, in marching past, shall be only four paces distant from the camp colour, where it is supposed the reviewing officer places himself to receive the salute.

The column will march past in common time, with closed ranks.

The music will begin to play just after the leading company has made the second wheel; it will wheel to the left out of the column, and take a position opposite to, and facing, the reviewing officer, and will continue to play until the rear of the column shall have passed him, when it will cease to play and follow in the rear of the battalion.

The officers will salute the reviewing officer when they

Digitized by Google

arrive within six paces of him, and recover their swords when six paces past him, without in the least altering the rate of march. All officers in saluting, will cast their eyes towards the reviewing officer. The Colonel, when he has saluted at the head of the battalion, will place himself near the reviewing officer, and will remain there until the rear has passed, when he will join the battalion.

The colour will salute the reviewing officer when within six paces of him. When the colour salutes, the drums will pay the prescribed compliment.

When the rear of the column has passed the reviewing officer, the Colonel will command—GUIDE LEFT.

The column will proceed on the alignment until it shall have arrived at the point where its head or right is to be placed,* when the Colonel will command—COLUMN, HALT. LEFT INTO LINE WHEEL—MARCH. It will then be wheeled into line, and placed in the order of battle.†

When the line shall have been formed, the Colonel will cause the battalion to perform such exercises and manœuvres as may be required by the reviewing officer.

The review will terminate by bringing the troops into line opposite to the reviewing officer, ranks opened, and the whole saluting as at the beginning.

When two or more battalions are to be reviewed, they will be formed in parade order, with the prescribed intervals, and will perform the same movements that are laid down for a single battalion, observing the additional directions that are given for such movements when applied to the line. The Brigadier and his staff, on foot, will place themselves opposite the centre of the brigade; the Brigadier two paces in front of the rank of Colonels; his aid on his right, one pace retired; and the other brigade staff officers, those having the rank of field officers, in the rank of Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors: and those below that rank, in the rank of company officers.

In passing in review, a Major-General will be four paces in front of the Colonel of the leading battalion of his division; and the Brigadiers will be on the right of the Colonels of the leading battalions of their brigades; staff officers on the left of their Generals.

Upon occasions when the line exceeds two battalions, the reviewing officer may, at his option, cause them to march

* The ground is previously occupied. † See Note (3.) Appendix, Part IV.

Digitized by Google

past in quick time, in order to save time. Upon these occasions the mounted officers only will salute.

A number of companies less than a battalion, will be reviewed as a battalion; and a single company, as if it were with the battalion. In the latter case, the company will pass in column of platoons, according to the order of the reviewing officer.*

The review of cavalry or artillery, mounted, or with pieces, will be conducted on the same principles, allowing for the difference of organization, and the words of command appropriate to the respective arms

INSPECTION.

The inspection of the troops will generally be preceded by a review. The present example embraces a battalion of infantry. The inspecting officer and the field and staff officers will be on foot.

The battalion being in the order of battle, the Colonel will cause it to break into open column of companies, right in front. He will next order the ranks to be opened, when the colour-rank and colour-guard will take post ten paces in front, and the band ten paces in rear of the column.

The Colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command—OFFICERS AND SERGEANTS, TO THE FRONT OF YOUR COMPANIES—MARCH. The officers will form themselves in one rank eight paces, and the non-commissioned officers in one rank, six paces, in advance, along the whole fronts of their respective companies, from right to left, in the order of seniority; the pioneers and music of each company in one rank, two paces behind the non-commissioned officers.

The Colonel will next command—FIELD AND STAFF. TO THE FRONT—MARCH. The commissioned officers thus designated, will form themselves in one rank, six paces in front of the colours, from right to left, in the order of seniority; and the non-commissioned staff, in a similar manner, two paces in rear of the preceding rank. The Colonel, seeing the movement executed, will take post on the right of the Lieutenant-Colonel, and wait the approach of the inspecting officer.

The inspection will commence in front. After inspecting the dress and general appearance of the field and commissioned staff under arms, the Inspector, accompanied by these

* See Note (2.) Appendix, Part IV.

Digitized by Google

officers, will pass down the open column, looking at every rank in front and rear.

The Colonel will now command—ORDER ARMS. REST; when the Inspector will proceed to make a minute inspection of the several ranks or divisions, in succession, commencing in front.

As the Inspector approaches the non-commissioned staff colour-rank, the colour-guard, and the band, the Adjutant will give the necessary orders for the inspection of arms, boxes, and knapsacks. The colours will be planted firm in the ground, to enable the colour-bearers to display the contents of their knapsacks. The non-commissioned staff may be dismissed as soon as inspected; but the colour-rank and colour-guard will remain until the colours are to be escorted to the place from which they were taken.

As the Inspector successively approaches the companies the Captains will command—*attention-company, inspection of arms.* The Inspector will go through the whole company, commencing with the non-commissioned officers. The Captain will then command—*open-boxes;* when they will also be inspected.

The Captain will next command—*Shoulder-arms, close order-march. Order-arms. Stack-arms. To the rear, open order-march. Front-rank, about-face. Unsling-knapsacks. Open-knapsacks.* The arms of the non-commissioned officers will be stacked in the centre of their rank.

The KNAPSACKS will be placed at the feet of the men, the flaps from them, with the great-coats on the flaps, and the knapsacks leaning on the great-coats. In this position the Inspector will examine the contents of the whole, or of as many as he may think necessary, commencing with the non-commissioned officers.

As the Inspector passes the companies, they will successively, under the orders of their respective Captains, repack and resling knapsacks, resume their arms, and file off to their tents or quarters; except the company that is to re escort the colours, which will wait the further orders of the Colonel.

In an extensive column, some of the rearmost companies may, after the inspection of dress and general appearance, be permitted to *stack arms*, until just before the Inspector

Digitized by Google

approaches them, when they will be directed to *take arms*, and resume their positions.

The inspection of the troops being ended, the field and staff will next accompany the inspector to the hospital, magazine, arsenal, quarters, sutler's shop, guard-house, and such other places as he may think proper to inspect. The Captains and subalterns will precede him in his visits to their companies and sections respectively.

The men will be formed in the company quarters in front of their respective bunks, and on the entrance of the Inspector the word *attention* will be given by the senior non-commissioned officer present, when the whole will salute with the hand, without uncovering.

The Inspector will examine the general arrangement of the interior of the quarters, the bunks and bedding, cooking and table utensils, and such other objects as may present themselves; and afterwards the exterior.

The Adjutant will exhibit to the Inspector the regimental books and papers, including those relating to the transactions of the council of administration. The company books and papers will also be exhibited, the whole together, generally at the Adjutant's office, and in presence of all the officers not otherwise particularly employed.

Inspections, similar to those embraced in this article, will be made monthly, and as much oftener as may be deemed necessary by the commanders of regiments and posts. Captains will do the like on every Saturday morning, and Lieutenants of sections on every Wednesday morning, each in regard to his company or section respectively. Surgeons will also make a thorough inspection of their hospitals every Saturday morning.

Besides these inspections, frequent visits will be made daily to the quarters of their men or patients, by company officers and Surgeons; and the Colonel or other commander will make frequent general visits in the course of the month, to the men's quarters, the hospital, guard-house, and the like.

The muster of the troops for payment, will be preceded by an inspection.

The inspection of cavalry and artillery will conform to the principles laid down for the infantry, regard being had to the words of command appropriate to the respective arms.

Digitized by Google

CALLING OUT THE MILITIA FOR THE SERVICE OF THE UNITED STATES.

Whenever detachments of militia are called into the service of the United States, by any officer authorized to make such call, the number of officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates, will be stated in the requisition, and the proportions between them will be the same as is prescribed by the act of Congress. Requisitions will never be made for companies, regiments, or brigades.

Such detachments as are called or received into the service of the United States, will be *mustered* before they shall be considered in service, by an Inspector-General, or some other officer of the regular army, to be designated by the officer requiring such militia aid.

It shall be the duty of the officer designated, to muster and inspect militia detachments, to organize them into companies, battalions, and regiments, and to forward muster rolls of each company, and of the field and staff of each organized regiment, *direct* to the Adjutant-General of the army, Washington; and he will also immediately forward a consolidated return, by regiments and corps, of the force so received into service, for the information of the War Department.

Officers charged with the duty of mustering militia, properly ordered into the service of the United States, preparatory to payment, will take care that the muster rolls contain all the information that may in any way affect their pay. the distance from the places of residence to the place of rendezvous or organization, and the date of arrival, must be stated in each case; the date and place of discharge, and the distance thence to the place of residence; all stoppages for articles furnished by the government, must be noted on the rolls, and in cases of absence at the time of discharge of the company, the cause of absence must be stated. When the necessary information cannot be obtained, the mustering officer will state the cause, otherwise he will be held accountable for the defect.

No general staff officers will be mustered or received into service, except such general officers, with their aides-de-camp, as may be required to complete the organization of brigades or divisions, where the strength of the detachments renders such organization necessary.

Digitized by Google

All supernumerary officers will be rejected, and the organization of each detachment will correspond with the acts of Congress regulating the militia.

Payments will, in all cases, be made by the Paymasters of the regular army, and only upon rolls which shall have previously been submitted to the Paymaster-General, and found by him to be in conformity with law, and the regulations of the department.

MANNER OF ISSUING AND DISTRIBUTING ORDERS.

Orders are either *general* or *special*. General orders, issued from the head quarters of the army, are styled *General Orders*—from other head quarters, they are simply styled *Orders*. They are the orders of the day, and are published as often as circumstances may render it necessary. They announce the orderly hours at head quarters; the time and places of the distribution of supplies; the time and order of march; the hours of the different beats and signals, of guard mounting, and the assembling of detachments; the regulations of police; the strength and composition of guards, and the periods of their relief; the number and grades of Orderlies; the appointing of general courts martial, courts of inquiry, boards of officers, and their sentences and opinions; the commendations, or animadversions which the conduct of the troops may elicit, as well as exhortations suitable to particular occasions; and in general, every occurrence proper to be communicated to the troops or others interested.

Special orders, are such orders as do not relate to the service in general. They have reference to particular objects and individuals only. They need not, therefore, be published to the whole army, or to the whole command of the officer who issues them. Besides the particular individual to whom such orders may be sent direct, they are, however, to be communicated, as a matter of course, to Colonels, or other commanders whom they interest.

Orders are to be numbered—*general orders*, in one series—*special orders*, in another. Each series for an army, army corps, division, or brigade, in the field, will commence and terminate with a campaign. In departments, regiments

Digitized by Google

companies, and garrisons, they will commence and terminate with the year.

The parole, and *countersign*, or *watchword*, are issued from the head quarters of the highest in command. They are in the nature of orders, but are neither general nor special.

The parole is imparted to such officers only, as have a right to visit the guards, and to make the grand rounds; and to the officers commanding guards, by which they are enabled, at night, to recognise the grand rounds. No person under the rank of commissioned officer, is entitled to receive it.

The countersign, or *watchword*, is given to such persons as are entitled to pass and repass during the night, and to the officers, non-commissioned officers, and sentinels of the guards. The object of this word is to prevent improper persons, or those not authorized to pass the chain of sentinels, from either entering or going out of camp or garrison, and to guard against surprise.

The head of the order will indicate the source from which it emanates, as well as the place and date, and the foot of the order will cite the name of the commander who gives the order.

The orderly hour having been fixed at each head quarters, the staff officers will either attend in person, or send their assistants to obtain the orders of the day: the chief of the staff for an army-corps, to general head quarters: the chief of the staff of a division, to army-corps head quarters: the chief of the staff of a brigade, to division head quarters: the Adjutant of a regiment, to brigade head quarters: the First Sergeants of companies, to regimental head quarters

Digitized by Google

ARRESTS AND CONFINEMENTS.

None but commanding officers have power to place officers under arrest, except for offences designated in the 27th Article of War.

It is not obligatory on the commander to place an officer in arrest, on application to that effect from an officer under his command. He will exercise a sound discretion on the subject.

An officer in arrest may, at the discretion of his commanding officer, and on written application, have larger limits assigned him than his tent or quarters.

The arrest of an officer, or confinement of a soldier, will be, as soon as practicable, reported to his immediate commander.

Individuals placed in arrest may be released without being brought before a court martial, by the authority ordering the arrest, or by superior authority.

Individuals placed under guard with written charges, signed by an officer, will not be released except by the direction of the commanding officer.

All prisoners under guard without written charges, will be released by the officers of the day at guard-mounting, unless orders to the contrary should be given by the commanding officer.

An officer under arrest will not wear a sword, or make a visit of etiquette to the commanding officer, or other superior officer, or call on them, unless sent for; and in case of business, he will make known his object in writing.

COURTS MARTIAL.

In drawing up charges, the utmost precision must be observed in specifying the fact to which criminality is attached, and in describing the time when, and the place where, such fact occurred.

A charge is not necessarily to be laid before a court martial in the form in which it has been drawn up by the complainant, the officer who may order the court to assemble being competent to make such alterations in it as he may deem requisite. But after a charge has been approved by the pro-

Digitized by Google

per authority, and ordered to be investigated, neither the judge advocate, nor any other person, is competent to change it, without the consent of such authority.

An officer has no right to demand a court martial, either on himself or on others; the commanding-general, or officers competent to order a court, being the judges of its necessity or propriety. Nor has an officer who may have been placed in arrest, any right to demand a trial, or to persist in considering himself under arrest after he shall have been released by proper authority.

After a prisoner has been arraigned on specific charges, it is irregular for a court martial to admit any additional charge against him, even though he may not have come on his defence. The trial on the charges first preferred must be regularly concluded, when, if necessary, the prisoner may be tried on any further accusation brought against him

A prisoner cannot plead in bar of trial, that he has not been furnished with a copy of the charges, or that the copy furnished him differs from that on which he has been arraigned. It is customary and proper to furnish him with a correct copy, but the omission shall not void, though it may postpone, the trial.

General courts martial may consist of any number of commissioned officers from *five* to *thirteen* inclusively: but they shall not consist of less than *thirteen* when that number can be convened without manifest injury to the service.

Any general commanding an army, or officer having at least the rank of colonel, commanding a separate department, may appoint general courts martial.

In ordering a general court martial it is not necessary to designate the president by name, as the officer highest in rank will preside.

In detailing officers to form a general court martial, it will be sufficient to order as many as can be convened without manifest injury to the service, within the limits mentioned in the 64th Article of War, of which the ordering officers must be the judge.

The greatest number of officers that can be detailed without manifest injury to the service, will, in all cases, be ordered: but on the appointed day of meeting the court may

Digitized by Google

consider itself authorized to organize and act, provided the number does not fall short of five, unless otherwise ordered.

The court, after being duly organized, is to adjourn and meet within the limits prescribed by law; that is, between *eight* in the morning, and *three* in the afternoon.

All members at a general court martial must be duly sworn, vote, and give their opinions, beginning with the youngest in rank.

The seat of a member of a court martial, who is absent from sufficient cause, shall be considered as permanently vacated by him, and filled up accordingly.

Officers assembled to constitute a court martial may meet and adjourn even when all the members are not present, but no other act of theirs can be legal, without the presence of the whole court, except in deciding on the validity of a challenge against a member.

The day and place of meeting of a general court martial having been published in orders, they will not be changed but by the authority ordering the same: and the officers appointed as members, the parties and witnesses must attend accordingly. The judge advocate, at the opening, calls over the names of the members, who arrange themselves on the right or left of the president, according to rank.

The prisoner is then called into court, and however he may have previously been confined, he must then appear without bonds of any kind, unless there be danger of escape, or rescue.

Before the members of a general court martial are sworn, both prosecutor and prisoner shall have the right to challenge.

Peremptory challenges are not allowed at a court martial; the party must, therefore, assign his cause of challenge, which is to be regularly entered on the proceedings. The member objected to then withdraws, and the court being closed, deliberates and decides on the validity of the challenge.

Sufficient causes of challenge are—the expression of an opinion relative to the subject to be investigated; having been a member of a court of inquiry which gave an opinion, or of another court martial, in which the circumstances were

Digitized by Google

investigated, either principally, collaterally, or incidentally —prejudice, malice, or the like.

On the arraignment of a prisoner, he must plead, simply, either guilty or not guilty: but if he shall from obstinacy and deliberate design stand mute, or answer foreign to the purpose, the court will proceed to trial as if he had pleaded not guilty.

It is the duty of the judge advocate to prosecute, in the name of the United States, all persons who may be brought before a general court martial: but as the officer who prefers the charges is supposed to be the best acquainted with the circumstances of the case and may have been aggrieved by the prisoner to be tried, such officer will be permitted to act jointly with the judge advocate.

When more prisoners than one are arraigned on different charges before the same court martial, the members are liable to be challenged, and the court is to be re-sworn at the commencement of each case; and the proceedings are to be made up separately and signed, as if each prisoner had been tried by a distinct court martial.

All preliminary forms having been gone through, the regular course of trial is as follows: The prosecutor calls his witnesses, and produces his written evidence; and may, if he desire it, be examined as a witness in support of the charges which he has himself preferred, in which case his testimony should be given before that of any other witness. He must, during the prosecution, and before the prisoner comes on his defence, produce all the evidence he has to support the charge.

The prosecution being closed, the prisoner then enters on his defence, and adduces his evidence. In all cases where a prisoner produces evidence on his defence, the prosecutor has a right to reply; but he cannot adduce any fresh evidence, unless new matter has been introduced on the defence; in which case he is allowed to controvert it by corresponding proof.

Both prosecutor and prisoner are allowed to take exceptions to the competency of a witness; but these must be stated in open court, and recorded on the proceedings, after which the court decides on their validity.

When no exception is made to a witness. he is to be duly

Digitized by Google

sworn, and then examined in chief by the party which produces him; the opposite party next cross-examines him, and, in case new matter be elicited by this cross-examination, the party calling him may re-examine him as to that new matter; after which the court puts such questions as it may think proper.

The trial being finished, the court is closed, and proceeds to deliberate on its verdict and sentence. Members of courts martial ought then to bear in mind, that they have two distinct duties to perform; the one that of jurors, the other that of judges.

In the first of these capacities, they are bound to find a verdict, according to the evidence which has been produced before them. But this verdict may either be general, declaring the prisoner guilty or not guilty of the whole charge preferred against him, or it may be particular, finding that such and such allegations have been proved, and acquitting the prisoner of the others. They may also, in cases where the offence admits of gradations, acquit of the degree charged, and find the prisoner guilty in a lesser degree. But, they must in all cases exhaust the charge, and declare their opinion on each particular allegation which may be contained in it.

In their other capacity, if the verdict be "guilty," all the members of a court-martial, though a minority may have voted for the acquittal of the prisoner, are bound by their oath, to duly administer justice, by awarding such a punishment as is proportionable to the degree of guilt of which the prisoner has been convicted.

In drawing up the findings and sentences of courts-martial, the utmost precision is to be observed in specifying how far the prisoner is guilty or not guilty of each charge or instance of charge, and in specifying the exact nature and degree of punishment which the court has awarded.

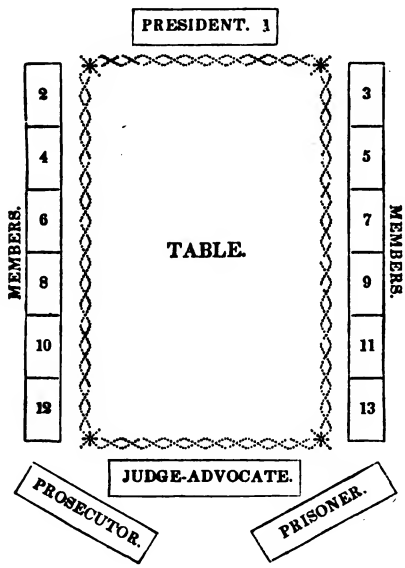
Whenever the proceedings of a court martial are to be revised the revision is to be confined entirely to a reconsideration of the matter already recorded on the proceedings.

Every officer commanding a regiment or corps, has authority to appoint, for his own regiment or corps, courts martial,

Digitized by Google

to consist of three commissioned officers, for the trial and punishment of offences, not capital, and to decide upon their sentences. But such courts have power to try cases only that are not capital; nor does their jurisdiction extend to the trial of commissioned officers. They cannot inflict a fine exceeding one month's pay, nor imprison, nor put to hard labour, any non-commissioned officer or soldier for a longer term than one month.

Manner of sitting at a court martial.



Form of recording the proceedings of a court martial.

Proceedings of a general court-martial, held at Fort Monroe, Va., by virtue of the following order:

288

Digitized by Google

Adjutant-General's Office,
WASHINGTON, *November* 1, 1838.

GENERAL ORDER,
No. 20.

A general court martial, to consist of seven members (a greater number cannot be detailed without manifest injury to the service,) will assemble at Fort Monroe, Va., on the 10th instant, for the trial of such prisoners as may be brought before it. The court will consist of:

1.	Colonel J. B. . . .	1st Regiment of Artillery.
2.	Lt. Colonel W. D. .	6th Regiment of Infantry.
3.	Major W. P. . . .	3d Regiment Artillery.
4.	Captain C. W. . .	2d Regiment Artillery.
5.	Captain T. L. . . .	7th Regiment Infantry.
6.	1st Lieutenant C. S. .	2d Regiment Artillery.
7.	1st Lieutenant S. B. .	3d Regiment Infantry.
	1st Lieutenant M. K. .	1st Regiment Artillery, special judge advocate.

By order, of Major-General J. B.
R. J., Adjutant-General.

NOVEMBER 10th, 1838.

The court met pursuant to the above order.

PRESENT.

Colonel J. B.
Lt. Colonel W. D.
Major M. P.
Captain C. W.
Captain T. L.
1st Lieutenant C. S.
1st Lieutenant S. B.
} Members.

1st Lieutenant M. K., judge-advocate.

The court being duly sworn* in presence of the prisoner,

* The following is the oath administered by the judge-advocate to each member: —— "You A. B. do swear, that you will well and truly try and determine, according to evidence, the matter now before you, between the United States of America, and the prisoner to be tried, and that you will duly administer justice, according to the provisions of "an act establishing rules and articles for the government of the armies of the United States," without partiality, favour, or affection, and if any doubt shall arise, not explained by said articles, according

Digitized by Google

proceeded to the trial of Sergeant A. B., of Captain ——— s company of the —— regiment of ——— who being previ ously asked if he had any objections to the members named in the order, and answering in the negative, was arraigned on the following charge and specification preferred against him by Lieutenant M. K., of the 1st regiment of artillery.

Charge.

DESERTION.

Specification.—In this, that the said Sergeant A. B., of Captain ———'s company, of the —— regiment, of ——, did desert the service of the United States, at fort Columbus, in the harbour of New York, on, or about, the 1st of October 1838, and did remain absent until apprehended and brought back, on, or about, the 10th of the same month.

To which charge and specification the prisoner pleaded, "not guilty."

Lieutenant C. D., of the 1st regiment of artillery, a witness for the prosecution, being duly sworn,* says, on the 1st of October last, Sergeant A. B. &c. &c. &c.

Question by the judge advocate. Did.....?
Answer. I saw the sergeant.....
Question by the prisoner.....?
Answer.....
Question by the court.....?
Answer.....

to your conscience, the best of your understanding, and the custom of war in like cases; and you do further swear, that you will not divulge the sentence of the court until it shall be published by the proper authority; neither will you disclose or discover the vote or opinion of any particular member of the court martial, unless required to give evidence thereof, as a witness, by a court of justice, in due course of law. So help you God."

The following is the oath administered by the president to the judge-advocate: —— "You A. B. do swear, that you will not disclose or discover the vote or opinion of any particular member of the court-martial, unless required to give evidence thereof, as a witness, by a court of justice, in due course of law; nor divulge the sentence of the court to any but the proper authority, until it shall be duly disclosed by the same. So help you God."

* The following is the oath administered by the judge-advocate to the witness: —— "You swear (or affirm, as the case may be) the evidence you shall give in the cause now in hearing, shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth. So help you God."

Digitized by Google

The court adjourned to meet to-morrow morning at ten o clock.

November 11th, 1838.

The court met pursuant to adjournment.

PRESENT.

Colonel J. B.
Lt. Colonel W. D.
Major M. P.
Captain C. W.
Captain T. L.
1st Lieutenant C. S.
1st Lieutenant S. B. } Members.
1st Lieutenant M. K., judge-advocate.

Sergeant M. P., of —— company, —— regiment of ——, a witness for the prosecution, being duly sworn, says:

I was sent, &c. &c.....
Question by judge advocate.....?
Answer.....
Question by prisoner.....?
Answer.....

The evidence on the part of the prosecution being closed, sergeant R. W., of —— regiment of ——, a witness for the prisoner, being duly sworn, says, the prisoner, sergeant A. B. &c. &c. &c.

Question by the prisoner.....?
Answer.....
Question by the judge advocate.....?
Answer.....
Question by the court.....?
Answer.....

The testimony on the part of the prisoner having been eard, he requested the indulgence of the court of one day o prepare his final defence, which was granted.

The court adjourned, to meet again on the 13th instant, at ine o'clock, A. M.

November 13th, 1838.

The court met pursuant to adjournment.

Digitized by Google

PRESENT.

Colonel J. B. Major M. P. Captain T. L. 1st Lieutenant S. B.	Members.	Lieutenant-Colonel W. D. Captain C. W. 1st Lieutenant C. S.

1st Lieutenant M. K., judge advocate.

The prisoner being asked if he were ready to proceed, made the following

DEFENCE.

MR. PRESIDENT, AND
GENTLEMEN OF THE COURT:

* * * * * *
* * * * * * *
* * * * * * *

A. B., *Sergeant.*

The court being cleared, and the whole of the proceedings read over to the court by the judge advocate, the following finding and sentence were pronounced.

The court, after mature deliberation on the testimony adduced, find the prisoner, Sergeant A. B., guilty of the specification and guilty of the charge, and sentence him to be reduced to the station of a private sentinel, to serve at hard labour with a ball and chain for the period of two months, and to undergo a stoppage of one-half his monthly pay for the remainder of his term of enlistment.

The court adjourned *sine die.*

J. B., *Col. 1st reg't art'y, President.*

M. K., *Judge Advocate.*

Usual manner of approving the proceedings of a court martial.

ADJUTANT GENERAL'S OFFICE,
WASHINGTON, *Nov.* 20, 1838.

GENERAL ORDER,
No. 25.

By a general court martial, of which Colonel J. B., of the first regiment of artillery, is president, was tried Sergeant

Digitized by Google

A. B., of — company of the — regiment of — on the following charge and specification:

[*Here give the charge and specification.*]

To which charge and specification the prisoner pleaded *not guilty.*

"The court, after mature deliberation," &c. &c., [*insert the whole of the finding and sentence.*]

The commanding general approves the finding and sentence of the general court martial, and orders the sentence to be carried into effect.

The general court martial, of which Colonel B. is president, is hereby dissolved.

By order of Major-General J. B.

R. J., *Adjutant General.*

DUTIES OF QUARTERMASTERS.

It is the duty of quartermasters to provide quarters, hospitals, and transportation for the army, and transportation for all military stores, provisions, camp and garrison equipage, and artillery; to direct the survey, and superintend the opening and repairing of roads, and the constructing and repairing of bridges, which may be necessary to the movements of any part of the army. To provide good and sufficient storehouses for all military supplies and provisions. To purchase all fuel, straw, forage, and stationary, required for the army, and have them transported to the posts or places where they may be wanted, and issued to those entitled to them. To purchase all horses, oxen, mules, and harness; and all wagons, carts, and boats and other vessels, with their proper equipments, for the transportation of the army, and for garrison purposes; to have the custody of the same, and be responsible that they be not used for private purposes; but that they be employed or used exclusively in the public service. To provide materials, and direct and superintend the construction and repairing of quarters, barracks, hospitals, storehouses, stables, and other necessary and authorized buildings for the accommodation of the army, and the security of the public property. To select, under the orders of the generals, or other commanding officers, sites for encampment, and to assign to the different corps the ground they are

Digitized by Google

to occupy. To have the general direction of foraging and working parties, when the army, or detachments of it are in the field. To direct the movements, and be responsible for the prompt and safe transmission of all supplies required for the service of any part of the army in the field; and either send them direct to the army, or place them in such convenient depôts as the general commanding the troops may direct. Finally, to make themselves acquainted with the military resources of the country and the means and facilities of transportation, particularly of the districts on the frontiers; with the most eligible points for concentrating troops and collecting supplies, whether in relation to offensive or defensive operations; and with the relative expense of concentrating at particular positions, and the advantages of those positions.

DUTIES OF COMMISSARIES OF SUBSISTENCE.

Commissaries of subsistence are accountable for the safekeeping of all provisions entrusted to their charge; and, to this end, they will make requisitions on the quartermaster's department for good and sufficient storehouses. They will examine frequently into the state of the stores, to prevent damage and waste, and make out and transmit to the proper accounting officers, through the commissary general of subsistence, the necessary returns and accounts. When provisions have been inspected and delivered agreeably to the terms of the contract, they will give to the contractor a receipt therefor, together with one of the certificates of the inspector, stating, at length, the quantity and quality of the articles delivered: a duplicate of the receipt and certificate will be immediately forwarded to the commissary-general of subsistence.

Should the failure of contractors, or other causes, render it necessary that provisions should be purchased, the commissary will purchase provisions of the best quality, corresponding as nearly as possible with those specified by contract, and will forward to the commissary-general of subsistence, a copy of the "bill of purchase," with a statement of the cause of purchase endorsed thereon.

Should there be any surplus stores at the post, it will be the duty of the commissary to report the fact to the commissary-general of subsistence, and to state the probable price

Digitized by Google

which can be obtained for them, with suggestions as to the best means of disposing of them.

A suitable non-commissioned officer or soldier will be detailed by the commanding officer, to assist the commissary in the discharge of his duties.

The following are the component parts of the ration:—Three-fourths of a pound of pork, or bacon; or one and one-fourth pounds of fresh or salt beef; eighteen ounces of bread or flour, or twelve ounces of hard bread, or one and one-fourth pounds of corn-meal;—and at the rate of four pounds of soap; one and a half pounds of candles; two quarts of salt; four quarts of vinegar; eight quarts of peas or beans, (or, in lieu thereof,) ten pounds of rice; four pounds of coffee, and eight pounds of sugar, to the hundred rations.

It will be the duty of commissaries to issue to the troops on consolidated returns signed by the commanding officer of the post, regiment, or brigade. Issues to the hospital will be made on returns signed by the surgeon, or assistant surgeon.

An extra issue of fifteen pounds of candles per month may be made to the principal guard of each camp and garrison, on the order of the commanding officer.

At all places where fresh beef can be procured for issue, the commissary will purchase by contract, giving, if practicable, due public notice for proposals; the lowest responsible bid will be accepted, and a written contract will be entered into for the delivery of the beef at the post, at such times as may be most conducive to the health and comfort of the troops, not exceeding three times a week.

Should subsistence stores become damaged, or unfit for issue, the commissary having them in charge will report the fact to the commanding officer, who will institute a board of survey, to be composed of not less than two officers, or respectable citizens may be associated with the officers for that purpose, who will act under oath. All stores found damaged and unfit for issue, from causes other than neglect of the commissary, will be condemned and sold. Those which may be found damaged by neglect of the commissary, will be charged to his account.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX, PART IV.

(1.) On all parades of ceremony, such as Reviews, Guard-mounting, at *Troop* or *Retreat* parades, instead of the word "*Rest*," which allows the men to move or change the position of their bodies, the command will be, "PARADE-REST!" At the last word of this command, the soldier will carry the right foot six inches in rear of the left heel, the left knee slightly bent, the body upright upon the right leg; the musket resting against the hollow of the right shoulder, the hands crossed in front, the backs of them outward, and the left hand uppermost. At the word "ATTENTION!" the soldier will resume the correct position at ordered arms. In the positions here indicated, the soldier will remain silent and motionless: and it is enjoined upon all officers to cause the commands above given, on the part of the soldier, to be executed with great briskness and spirit.

(2.) If several brigades are to be reviewed together, or in one line, this further difference will be observed: the reviewing personage, joined by the General of the division, on the right of his division, will proceed down the line, parallel to its front, and when near the Brigadiers respectively, will be saluted by their brigades in succession. The music of each, after the prescribed salute, will play while the reviewing personage is in front, or in rear of it, and only then.

The battalions will take, in marching, intervals between them of forty paces.

In marching in review, with several battalions in common time, the music of each succeeding battalion will commence to play when the music of the preceding one has ceased, in order to follow its battalion. When marching in quick time, the music will begin to play when the rear company of the preceding battalion has passed the reviewing officer.

The reviewing officer will acknowledge the salute, by raising, or taking off his cap, or hat, when the commander of the troops salutes him; and also, when the colours pass. The remainder of the time occupied by the passage of the troops he will be covered.

(3.) If, however, instructions have been previously given to march the troops past in *quick* time also, the colonel will, instead of halting the column, and wheeling it into line, as directed, give the command, COLUMN. QUICK-TIME. MARCH. At which command, the column will change the *time* of marching, and pass by the reviewing officer, either at *shouldered*, or at *support arms;* and no salute will be offered by either officers or men. The music will have kept its position opposite the reviewing officer, and will commence playing at the same time as is directed when the battalion passes in common time; and as the column approaches, will place itself in front of, and march off with the column, and continue to play until the battalion is halted on its original ground of formation.

Digitized by Google

No. 1.

Morning Report of Captain *Company ( )* *Regiment of*

PRESENT.																						ABSENT.						Present & Absent.			*Alterations since last Report.*						
For Duty.							Sick.				On Extra, or Daily Duty.				In Arrest. or Confinement.						Detached Service.		Furlough		Without Leave.												
Captain.	1st Lieutenant.	2d Lieutenant.	Sergeants.	Corporals.	Musicians.	Privates.	Commissioned Officers.	Non-Commissioned Officers.	Musicians.	Privates.	Commissioned Officers.	Non-Commissioned Officers.	Musicians.	Privates.	Commissioned Officers.	Non-Commissioned Officers.	Musicians.	Privates.	Commissioned Officers.	Non-Commissioned Officers, Musicians and Privates.	Commissioned Officers.	Non-Commissioned Officers, Musicians and Privates.	Commissioned Officers.	Non-Commissioned Officers, Musicians and Privates.			Total.	Aggregate.	Aggregate last Report	Joined by Enlistment.	" by Transfer.	" from Desertion.	Resigned.	Transferred.	Died.	Deserted.

Station : ——
Date : ——
(Signed) C. D.
First Sergeant.

(Signed) A. B.
Com'd'g the Company.

Note.—The names of the absentees, both officers and soldiers, will be given on the back of the Report

Digitized by Google

No 2

Muster-Roll of Captain Company ( ) of the Army of the commanded by Colonel from the day of 183 , when last mustered, to the day of 183 .

No.	NAMES. Present and Absent. (Privates in alphabetical order.)	Rank.	ENLISTED. When	Where	By whom	Period	LAST PAID. By Paymaster	To what Time.	$12 extra pay to re-enlisted soldiers. Paid $	Due $	CLOTHING. Due the Soldier. $	cts.	Due the U. S. $	cts.	Names of commissioned, non-commissioned officers, musicians and privates, present.	REMARKS.
																In this column will be inserted, opposite the names of the respective absent officers and soldiers, the reason for, and time of, absence; also, the day on which an officer joins the company, assumes or is relieved from the command; the date of all transfers, discharges, furloughs, deaths, desertions, apprehensions, and when the station of the company is changed, the days of departure and arrival. All stoppages, except for clothing, for which see the proper head, will be stated in dollars & cents, opposite the name of the soldier.

298

[98]

Digitized by Google

RECAPITULATION.	Captain.	1st Lieut.	2d Lieut.	Sergeants.	Corporals.	Musicians.	Privates.	Total.	Aggregate.	Total last muster.	No. of recruits required.
Present, For duty,											
Present, Extra duty,											
Present, Sick,											
Present, In arrest or confinement,											
Absent, Detached service,											
Absent, Furlough,											
Absent, In arrest or confinement,											
Strength present and absent,											
Alterations and casualties since last muster. No. joined, By enlistment,											
No. joined, By transfer,											
No. joined, From desertion,											
No. disch'd, Expiration service,											
No. disch'd, For disability,											
No. transferred,											
No. died,											
No. deserted,											

I certify, on honour, that this Muster-Roll exhibits the true state of Captain Company ( ) of the Regiment of for the period herein mentioned; that the "Remarks" set opposite the name of each officer and soldier are accurate and just; and that the Recapitulation exhibits, in every particular, the true state of the Company.

Date: —— (Signed) A. B.
Station: —— Com'd'g the Company.

I certify, on honour, that I have carefully examined this Muster-Roll, that I have mustered and minutely inspected the Company, and that its condition is found to be as expressed in my remarks hereunto annexed.

Discipline: —— (Signed) C. D.
Instruction: —— Inspecting and Mus-
Military appearance: —— tering Officer.
Arms: ——
Accoutrements: ——
Clothing: ——

Digitized by Google

No. 3.

Pay Roll of Captain *Company ( ) of the* *Regiment of* *from the*
day of 183 , *when last paid, to the* *day of* 183 .

No.	NAMES.	Period paid for.		Pay per month.	Amount of pay.		Retained pay.		$12 extra pay, due for re-enlisting.	Clothing.		Amount.		Amount of stoppage.		Balance paid.		Received payment of	WITNESS.
		Months.	Days.	$	$	cts.	$	cts.	$	$	cts.	$	cts.	$	cts.	$	cts.		

Digitized by Google

No. 4.

Requisition for Ordnance and Ordnance Stores for (such) Company, Regiment, or post (as the case may be) for the year 183 .

	6 pd'r gun-carriages.	Cannon powder, pds.	Slow match, pounds.	Shot-gages, sets.	Muskets complete.	Cartridge-boxes.	&c.	&c.	&c.			REMARKS.
On hand 31 Dec. 183 . . .	2	200	5	—	50	100						
Received per requisition of Jan. 183	1	800	20	—	75	—						
Required for 183	3	900	50	1	100	106						

[Here follow the explanations showing the necessity for the issue.]

Station : ——
Date : ——

(*Signed*) *A. B.*
Com'd'g. ——

Approved,
(*Signed*) *C. D.*
Gen'l com'd'g.

2C 2A 301

Digitized by Google

No. 5.

PROVISION RETURN

For Captain *Company* *Regiment of*

for *days, commencing* *and ending*

Number of Men.	Number of Women.*	TOTAL	Number of days drawn for.	Rations of Flour.	Rations of Meal.	Rations of Bacon.	Rations of fresh Beef.	Rations of Pork.	Rations of Rice.	Rations of Beans.	Rations of Peas.	Rations of Salt.	Rations of Soap.	Rations of Candles.	Rations of Vinegar.	Rations of Coffee.	Rations of Sugar.

The Assistant Commissary of Subsistence will issue agreeably to the above returns.

(Signed) A. B.

Com'd'g.

* Three women are allowed to a company as laundresses.

Digitized by Google

No. 6.

ESTIMATE

Of Clothing, Camp, and Garrison equipage for Company ( ), Regiment of , for the year commencing the 1st of November, , and ending the 31st of October,

| Designation of Companies, &c. | Organization. | Actual strength. | | CLOTHING. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | EQUIPAGE. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

RECOMMENDATIONS.

COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS,

In the Year One Thousand Eight Hundred and Forty-five.

Resolve authorizing the Adjutant-General to purchase "COOPER'S TACTICS."

Resolved, That the Adjutant-General be and he is hereby authorized and required to contract for a sufficent number of "Cooper's Tactics for the Regulation of the Militia," to supply each field, staff, and company officer of the Volunteer Militia of the State, with one copy, such copy to be considered and held to be public property, and to be delivered to his successor in office; the expense thereof to be defrayed out of the funds now in the hands of the Adjutant-General.

House of Representatives, March 13th, 1845.

(Passed,) SAML. H. WALLY, JR.
Speaker.

In Senate, March 14th, 1845.

(Passed,) LEVI LINCOLN.
President.

March 14th, 1845.

Approved, GEO. N. BRIGGS.

Secretary's Office, March 29th, 1845.

A true copy. (Attest,) JOHN G. PALFRY,
Secretary of the Commonwealth.

STATE OF NEW YORK,
Head Quarters, Albany, July 25, 1843.

General Orders,

The Adjutant-General is hereby authorized to procure for the use of the Militia of this State, so many copies of "COOPER'S TACTICS," as he shall think proper, not exceeding one thousand copies.

WM. C. BOUCK, Gov.

The State has heretofore purchased 4000 copies of the same work.

Digitized by Google

RECOMMENDATIONS.

The following note from General Cadwalader, clearly indicates the merits of the work.

PHILADELPHIA, *May* 9, 1836.

SIR—Permit me to thank you for your kindness in sending me a copy of the work just published by you, entitled "Tactics and Regulations for the Militia," and in compliance with your desire I have given it an examination, which, although a cursory one, has satisfied me that the book is well adapted to its purposes: the course of instruction is concise, simple, and judiciously arranged, comprising all that is essential in the systems of Tactics for Infantry, Light Infantry and Rifle, Cavalry and Artillery. The fourth part consists of abstracts from the Regulations, as to the precedence of Regiments and Corps, routine of duties in Garrison and Camps, signals, orders of encampment for each arm, Honours to be paid by Troops, Forms of Review and Inspection, calling out the Militia for the service of the United States, and the manner of issuing and distributing orders. The whole work is bound in one volume of duodecimo size, and will be found a valuable assistant to officers of volunteers and militia, to whom such a Treatise has long been a desideratum. The names of the authors must at once stamp the character of the work—when known to be prepared and arranged by Captain Cooper, Aid-de-Camp, under the supervision of Major General Macomb, Commander-in-chief of the Army. It has been published under the inspection of an accomplished Officer of the Army, stationed in this city.

Respectfully, your obedient servant,
(Signed) T. CADWALADER.

To MR. R. P. DESILVER,
No. 255 Market Street, Philadelphia.

From Major-General Patterson

PHILADELPHIA, 14*th May*, 1836.

R. P. DESILVER, Esq.

Dear Sir—I have examined the concise system of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers of the United States prepared by General Macomb and Captain Cooper.

The system is correctly laid down and clearly explained; and every officer of volunteers or militia in the Union ought to have a copy. cordially recommend it to the officers of the First Division.

With much respect,
Your obedient servant,
(Signed) R. PATTERSON

Digitized by Google

Extract of a letter from Col. A. J. Pleasanton.

I have examined with attention this work, and with great pleasure I bear testimony to its happy adaptation to the purpose for which it has been designed. One of the great defects of our militia system has been, heretofore, the want of proper books for elementary instruction. This treatise, by supplying to the several corps of Cavalry, Artillery, Infantry, and Riflemen, the necessary knowledge for their respective services, will conduce, in a great degree, to the efficiency of volunteer and militia troops. I recommend it heartily to all officers of the volunteers or militia, believing that Captain Cooper has furnished a great desideratum to his fellow-citizens in this work.

I am respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
(Signed) A. J. PLEASANTON.

R. P. DESILVER.

Extract of a note from an Officer of the U. S. Army to Col. Hickman, of Baltimore.

I, with much pleasure, state to you, that I consider the work compiled by Captain Cooper, of the U. S. Army, as one of the most valuable works for volunteers and militia that has ever been published—it is plain, concise, and contains all that can be desired for an officer of volunteers or militia. The addition which Capt. C. has made to the Tactics, giving our regulations for proper police in camp and garrison, and the mode of forming parades and guard mounting, is indeed excellent, and will be of great service to our citizen soldiers. The work is compiled for Infantry, Cavalry and Artillery, each treated of separately. The work is cheap, indeed, and I have no doubt that it will be eagerly sought after by officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates of the different corps, for whose particular benefit it was got up.

Extract of a letter from Gen. B. J. Tappan, addressed to C. A. Harris, Esq. acting Secretary of War, under date of 16th July.

FRANKLIN, TENN.

Dear Sir—Your favour of the 3d ultimo, together with a copy of a System of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers of the United States, was duly received. I have examined the work, and am very much pleased with it. I have no doubt but a ready sale could be had in this state for a number of copies. A general system of Tactics, in a concise form, has been wanted, and I think the work now published will give general satisfaction.

Digitized by Google.

From Lt. Col. Worth, U. S. Army, formerly Comdt. of the corps of Cadets, and Instructor of Tactics, at the Military Academy, West Point.

WATERVLIET, *Oct.* 26, 1837.

I have examined, with great pleasure, your excellent compilation, and although late, return my thanks for the copy you were good enough to send me.

Containing, as it does, all the essential manœuvres for *marching* and *fighting*—the essence of fixed regulations and forms—the whole admirably arranged, it presents, even to the finished tactician and thoroughly read officer, a work of convenient and acceptable reference, always, from its compendious form, accessible.

To the militia, the grand national and constitutional arm of defence, I venture the opinion, that the work will be invaluable. A wise policy, either of the national or state authorities, would seem to suggest the expediency of placing the work, at the state's expense, in the hands of every individual in commission. Few of those gentlemen have the leisure, and perhaps a less number the taste or inducement, to go through the same course of study, deemed by the masters indispensable to aid in directing to accurate results the efforts of the experienced and veteran officer. An attentive and spirited examination, however, of the matter thus accurately and briefly presented, will enable the militia officer, whom the common necessity shall call to the common defence, to bring his corps into line with instructed regulars, without any marked distinction, other than such as the want of time and opportunity will readily account for.

For one, I return my sincere thanks for the industry which, guided by experience and study, has thus placed within the reach of all the plain path of duty.

W. J. WORTH, Lieut. Colonel.

Capt. SAML. COOPER, &c. &c. &c.

From Maj. Gen. Ryan, of Arkansas Militia, and formerly an officer of U. S. Army.

WASHINGTON, *Nov.* 10, 1837.

I have experienced much satisfaction in the examination of your work, entitled "Tactics and Regulations for the Militia." It is a work which, in my opinion, will be invaluable to that arm of our national defence, and should be in the hands of every military man.

It contains all the necessary manœuvres for the different corps of the service, with regulations for duties in camp and garrison, and the forms of parades, reviews, and inspections; the whole so admirably arranged, and in so compendious a form, as to be perfectly easy and comprehensible to all. A work of this description has long been wanted, and, as a uniform system of discipline is highly essential to

Digitized by Google

the efficiency of all military bodies. I sincerely hope that the work in question will be adopted for the militia and volunteers of every state in the Union, and each officer furnished with a copy.

S. V. R. RYAN,
Maj. Gen. Arkansas Militia.

CAPT. COOPER.

From Capt. Hitchcock, U. S. Army, formerly Comdt. of the corps of Cadets, and Instructor of Tactics, at the Military Academy, West Point.

ST. LOUIS, MO. *Nov.* 20, 1837.

Very many militia officers have, at different times, desired me to refer them to some book on the subject of tactics; and, since the publication of your work, I have invariably referred them to "A Concise System of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers of the United States," as being admirably adapted to give every necessary information without being overloaded with details, scarcely useful to the theorist, and embarrassing to the practical man. It is unquestionably the most valuable book for general use in this country, if not in any country, embracing every principle—except in the evolutions of the line not treated of, and every explanation necessary for the comprehension of every man of ordinary capacity; giving, in one small volume, all the useful matter of several volumes inaccessible to general readers, and at the same time, strictly in accordance with the authorities.

E. A. HITCHCOCK, Capt

CAPT. COOPER,
Washington.

From Maj. Baker, U. S. Army.

ALLEGHENY ARSENAL, *Nov.* 20, 1837.

Having devoted some time to the perusal and examination of your "Tactics and Regulations for the Militia," I take the liberty to express my humble opinion of its merits, as a system of instruction, for troops of every arm of our *national force.*

The arrangement you have adopted, and the perspicuousness of explanation to which you have adhered throughout the work, renders it perfectly clear and comprehensible to those even, whose previous studies have not familiarized them with the subject of military manœuvres.

I have shown the book to volunteers, officers of rank and intelligence: and they all commend it, and anticipate great improvement in their commands upon the introduction of this system.

R. L. BAKER,
Maj. U. S. Army

CAPT. S. COOPER.

Digitized by Google

From Brigadier Gen. Brady, U. S. Army

HEAD QUARTERS, 7th MILITARY DEPT

DETROIT, *Nov.* 23, 1837.

I cheerfully comply with your request, and give you my opinion of the system of Instructions and Regulations prepared by yourself for the use of the militia and volunteers. In comparing it with other systems that have been in force in the army, and among the volunteers and militia, I hesitate not in saying the preference ought to be given to your book. Here the words of command and explanation are perfectly intelligible to the most common understanding; and what is of not less importance, the work is very much condensed compared to other works of the kind. The less a citizen soldier has to learn, to make him a good soldier, the better he will like it.

H. BRADY.

CAPT. COOPER.

From Col. Smith, of Michigan Militia, and late a Captain of U. S. Army.

MONROE, (Mich). *Nov.* 24, 1837.

I, last winter, obtained at Washington a copy of the "Concise System of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers of the United States," &c., prepared and arranged by you. My object in procuring it was, to put its merits to the test in the regiment of militia commanded by me, (the 2d regiment Michigan militia,) so far as it might be found applicable to the Infantry arm of service.

I have diligently perused it in all its parts; and it is but justice to the work to say that I never have seen a better compound of our *army tactics*, in every arm of service, as well as regulations, embracing all that can possibly apply to the militia. Indeed, it is difficult to imagine a compilation, combining in a greater degree, all requisite information, with compactness, clearness, and economy. All who know any thing of the militia of the United States, are aware that some work of this kind, embracing, as yours does, all recent revisions and improvements, is absolutely necessary. Without the action of Congress, each state will adopt some system, good or bad, and the consequence will be what it always has been, an entire absence of *general system*, with which the militia of different states may acquaint themselves; and thus be fitted, in case of necessity, for serving with the troops of any other state or of the United States.

I most sincerely hope that the matter will be brought before Congress, who alone can remedy the evil under which the militia is now labouring; and trust your excellent work may be pressed on their attention, with a view to the purchase of a large number of copies, not only for the volunteers who may be invited into the service of the general government, but for the militia of the different states. Much would thus be done towards securing uniformity and *sufficiency* in the

Digitized by Google

militia: toward which, however excellent may be our little army, the country must ultimately look for defence against foreign invasion or domestic difficulties.

HENRY SMITH.

CAPT. COOPER.

From Maj. E. Kirby, U. S. Army.

BROWNSVILLE, *Nov.* 26, 1837.

Having, during the last year, and on previous occasions, witnesse the want of preparation and instruction with which militia enters upon active service, I cannot refrain from urging you to take measures to make the merits of your compend of tactics and regulations more generally known.

The frequency with which volunteers and militia are called upon to act in conjunction with the regular forces of the United States, renders it all important that a system of instruction, brief, clear, and conformable to the regulations governing the regular troops, should be readily accessible to them. Your work possesses these requisites in an eminent degree, and with the addition of an appendix, containing the Articles of War, and a short treatise on Courts Martial, explanatory of the ordinary forms of proceeding, would be all that is required, and should be in the hands of every militia officer in the United States.

E. KIRBY.

CAPT. COOPER.

From Gen. Atkinson, U. S. Army.

JEFFERSON BARRACKS, *Dec.* 8. 1837.

I have received your letter of the 9th ultimo, in reference to your book of Tactics and Regulations for the use of the volunteers and militia of the U. States.

I have examined it with some care, and consider it a work of great merit, and well adapted to the instruction of the troops for which it was compiled. I think it should be adopted by the Government for the use of the militia, being concise, and yet comprehending all the necessary principles of instruction and a well digested code of regulations.

That the work may meet with the encouragement it merits, is the wish &c.

H. ATKINSON.
Brig. Gen. U. S. Army

CAPT. S. COOPER.

Digitized by Google

From Gen. Clinch, late of the Army.

St. Mary. Ga. Dec. 16, 1837.

Your system of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers of the U. S. has been received, and read with deep attention and interest. I consider it admirably adapted to the purposes for which it was intended. Such a system has long been wanted, and I consider it highly creditable to your industy and talents, and every way worthy the attention and patronage of Congress.

D. L. CLINCH

Capt. Cooper.

From Maj. L. Whiting, U. S. Army.

Washington, *Dec.* 22, 1837.

I have examined, with much satisfaction, your "Tactics and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers," and most sincerely congratulate you on the success of your labours.

You have embraced, in a compendious and convenient form, all of tactics and of the regulations necessary to enable the militia and volunteers to unite with regular troops, in the duties of the field, camp, and garrison, without any perceptible difference, except in that precision of movement and motion which can only be obtained by time and practice.

A work of this kind has long been wanted: and it appears to me, that wisdom and sound policy call for legislative enactment, to place it in the hands of every militia officer in our country.

I think, also, that it might be advantageously substituted for the first volume of Military Tactics, by Major General Scott, in the hands of the serjeants of the army; containing, as it does, in addition to the school of the soldier and of the company, the regulations relative to camp and garrison duties, parades, reviews, and inspections, with which it is important they should be familiar.

Hoping the work may meet with the patronage it so richly merits, I am, &c.,

L. WHITING,
Maj. U. S. Army.

Capt. Cooper.

From Col. Cutler, U. S. Army.

New York, *Dec.* 28, 1837.

I have examined your "Concise System of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia of the United States," with such attention as I have been able to bestow upon it. It appears to me sufficiently comprehensive, judiciously arranged, and well adapted to the purpose for which it is intended.

E. CUTLER.
Col. 4th Infantry

Capt. Cooper.

Digitized by Google

PHILADELPHIA, *Jan.* 1, 1838.

My dear Sir—I would not think it necessary for me to add to the many testimonials you have received from officers of high information and experience in favour of your work upon Tactics and Regulations for the militia of the United States, did I not seem to be called upon to do so, from the fact of my having become especially familiar with it, by the aid I rendered in its publication in this city. Having watched, during that period, with much attention, every line of the work, I came to the conclusion that it would be difficult, perhaps impossible, to render one for the purposes designed, based in all respects upon the established rules and regulations of the service, more perfect and useful; and, while I think every military man in the country owes you his obligations for having turned your talent and industry to so good an account, I trust that the work will meet with the patronage it so richly deserves.

I remain most respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
ÆNEAS MACKAY,
Major U. S. Army

CAPT. SAML. COOPER,
Washington, D. C.

Extract of a letter from Gen. Keim, of Reading, Pa., to Col. Wm. Amies, of Philadelphia.

Janucry 29, 1838.

My dear Sir—It gives me pleasure to join with my friends in the encomiums they bestow upon Capt. Cooper's Tactics.

The work has been perused by me with care; and I find it embraces all the evolutions that are classed among the elite movements of a well-disciplined army, and also embraces the most choice and select mode of performing the manual, as well as the school of the soldier.

We are greatly in want of such a system in our state; and most certainly this work is the best that, as an elementary one, could possibly be procured.

Let my name be used in its approval wherever you may know that this opinion will be of any advantage in its distribution.

Respectfully,
Your friend,
GEORGE M. KEIM.

To WM. AMIES, ESQ.

Gen. M'Duffee, of South Carolina, was so much pleased with this work, that immediately on its publication, he purchased five hundred copies, and distributed them throughout the State: in addition, he so warmly spoke of its merits that the Legislature of the State have authorised the purchase of five thousand copies.

Digitized by Google

From Gen. Wm. T. Rogers.

SENATE CHAMBER,
HARRISBURG, PA., *March* 19. 1838.

Sir—I acknowledge the receipt of your letter, accompanied with a copy of Capt. Cooper's Tactics and Regulations for the Militia; comprehending the exercises and movements of Cavalry, Artillery, Infantry, and Riflemen—detailing Camp duty, and the forms of review and inspections as established in the United States Army, under the supervision of Major General Macomb.

Upon a hasty examination of the work, I was so well satisfied that it ought to be placed without delay into the hands of the Military Officers of this State, that I introduced the 10th section into the Militia Bill, reported at the present Session.

I am pleased to say, that it has passed the Senate, been concurred in by the House of Representatives, received the Signature of the Executive, and become a Law. From an estimate I have made, I think it will require rising 10,000 copies of the work to furnish the requisite supply.

Confident that this concise system will be the means of inculcating and imparting valuable information to many of those who are associated with the Military, I hope you will be able to supply the order of the Adjutant General with as little delay as possible, in anticipation of our annual spring parades in May.

From a practical knowledge of Printing, I cannot withhold my commendation of the handsome edition you have published, printed with a fair type upon paper of good quality; and from the number of plates representing the Soldier's various evolutions, together with the review inspection and music plates, it is certainly among the cheapest works printed.

Very respectfully,
Your obd't servant,
[SIGNED] W. T. ROGERS,
Chairman Senate Military Committee.

PENNSYLVANIA MILITIA AND VOLUNTEERS.

Extract from the Militia Law passed 1838.

SEC. 10. The Adjutant General of this Commonwealth is hereby authorized and required to contract for a sufficient number of Cooper's Tactics and Regulations of the Militia, and to supply each field, staff and company officer of militia or volunteers of this Commonwealth with one copy, and the expense thereof to be paid upon his order, out of any unappropriated money in the State Treasury. And it shall be the duty of the several Brigade Inspectors to take receipts

Digitized by Google

from the said officers with a condition that they shall be delivered over to their successors in office, or returned to the Inspectors of their respective brigades at the expiration of their commissions.

Sec. 13. That the State Treasurer is authorized and hereby required to pay, upon the certificate of the Adjutant General, to the commanding officer of any regiment or battalion of Volunteers, any sum of money not exceeding one hundred dollars for a regiment or battalion: Provided said regiment or battalion shall at any time encamp for any number of days not less than three in one year, and the sum so appropriated, to be paid for the transportation of tents and other actual expenses of said encampment.

In pursuance of the 10th section, the Adjutant General of Pennsylvania has subscribed for 10,000 copies of Cooper's Tactics, for distribution, in obedience to the requirements of said section.

Newport Barracks, Ky
May 29th, 1846.

Dear Sir:—Your favor of this date, covering a copy of the tactics prepared by Captain Cooper, U. S. A., has been received.

I entertain a high opinion of this work, and recommend it as being the *best* work of the kind in this country.

For volunteers and militia it is, in my humble opinion, better than *our system, which it so closely resembles.*

I beg to assure you that I submit my opinion with diffidence, as it has been requested, and let it go for what it is worth.

I am, Sir, with great respect,
N. C. MACRAE, *Capt. U. S. A.*

To J. F. Desilver, Esq.
Cincinnati, Ohio.

From Col. Albert C. Ramsay, commanding 11th Reg't. U.S. Infantry.

Philadelphia, *March* 13, 1847.

To Mr. Frank Desilver,

Dear Sir—I received your letter of the 9th instant, in relation to Cooper's "System of Instructions and Regulations for the Militia and Volunteers of the United States." Since then, I have seen the last edition of the work, which is much enlarged and improved. I have no hesitation in recommending to the officers of the army the book as almost invaluable, and from which, for years, I have derived the greatest assistance; I now use it daily, and would not be without it. As the last edition of the army regulations cannot now be procured by the officers of the army, Cooper's work, to a great extent, supplies the deficiency, and this fact alone ought to induce every officer to procure a copy.

Very respectfully, your ob't. serv't. ALBERT C. RAMSAY,
Col. 11th Reg. U. S. Infantry.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google